CITROËN

C5 AIRCROSS

Owner's Manual

nothing
moves us
like citroën

Download on the App Store

GET IT ON Google Play

WELCOME

Thank you for choosing Citroën C5 Aircross.
This **Owner's Manual** contains the key information and recommendations you will need to be able to explore your vehicle in complete safety.
We strongly recommend familiarising yourself with it, as well as the Service Booklet.
Your vehicle will be fitted with only some of the equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it was sold.
The descriptions and illustrations are for guidance only.
Automobiles CITROËN reserves the right to modify the technical specifications, equipment and accessories without having to update this document.
If ownership of your vehicle is transferred, please ensure this **Owner's Manual** is passed on to the new owner.

OBTAIN THE OWNER'S MANUAL

ONLINE

View or download the Owner's Manual at the following address:
http://service.citroen.com/ACddb/
Scan this QR Code for direct access.
Select:
– the language,
– the vehicle and body style,
– the issue period of the Owner's Manual corresponding to the date of 1st registration of the vehicle.

PRINTED VERSION

Order the Owner's Manual in paper format from a CITROËN dealer.

INTRODUCTION.....5 1
GETTING TO KNOW YOUR VEHICLE.....10 2
DASHBOARD INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROL 69 3
INFOTAINMENT SYSTEM.....99 4
STARTING & OPERATING.....123 5
ADVANCED DRIVING ASSISTANCE SYSTEMS (ADAS).....164 6
IN CASE OF EMERGENCY 218 7
MAINTENANCE AND VEHICLE CARE 238 8
TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.....261 9
CUSTOMER INFORMATION 270 10
INDEX.....281 11

CONTENTS

Introduction..... 5
Link to Company App and Website..... 5
How To Use This Manual..... 5
Propulsion Types..... 6
Vehicle Modifications-Alterations..... 8
Getting to know your vehicle.....10
Keys..... 10
Vehicle Security System..... 15
Doors..... 18
Windows..... 23
Mirrors..... 25
Head Restraints..... 26
Seats..... 27
Seat Belts..... 32
Airbag System..... 35
Child Restraints..... 39
Steering Wheel..... 48
Ignition Switch..... 49
Wipers and Washers..... 50
Memory settings..... 52
Exterior Lights..... 52
Interior Lights..... 61
Sunroof..... 62
Interior Storage - Interior Features..... 63
Dashboard Instruments And Control 69
Instrument Panel 69
Steering Wheel Cluster Controls..... 70
Lateral Control Bar..... 71
Central Control Bar..... 71
Information displayed on the instrument panel 71
Instrument Cluster 72
All-electric driving mode..... 77
Warning Lights, Indicators, and Messages 78
Climate Controls..... 89
Touch screen..... 95
Head-Up Display..... 97
Infotainment System..... 99
Introduction..... 99
Cybersecurity..... 104
Multimedia System..... 106
3rd Party Apps..... 121
Starting & Operating..... 123
Starting and Stopping The Engine..... 123
Stop & Start Automatic Function..... 125
Excess Exhaust Emissions Driver Warning System (EEEDWS)..... 127
e-Auto mode (Hybrid 48 V)..... 127
Steering Wheel Lock..... 128
Energy economy mode..... 128
Audible Pedestrian Warning System..... 128
Brakes..... 129
Transmission..... 133
Drive Modes..... 139
Engine Exhaust..... 141
Fuel 142
Charging..... 144
Vehicle Loading..... 158
Trailer Towing..... 159
Driving Tips..... 161
Advanced Driving Assistance Systems (ADAS)..... 164
Introduction to Assistance Systems..... 164
Detection Sensors..... 166
Speed Control Assistance System..... 168
Collision Avoidance Assistance System..... 178
Vehicle Stability Assistance..... 185
Braking Performance Assistance Systems.... 186
Visibility Enhancement Assistance System.. 186
Lane Assistance System..... 188
Parking and Reverse Operations Assistance System..... 198
Driver's Attention Assistance System..... 205
Offroad and Low-Range Operations Assistance System..... 208
Utility Assistance Features..... 209
In Case of Emergency 218
Hazard Warning Lights 218
Assist And SOS 218
Warning Triangle 220
Jacking the Vehicle and Wheel Changing 221
Tire Repair Kit 226
Jump Starting 229
Towing 235
Maintenance and Vehicle Care 238
Introduction To Maintenance And Vehicle Care..... 238
Scheduled Servicing 239
Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts 241
Engine Compartment 242
Vehicle Maintenance 248
Fuses 251
Bulb Replacement 251
Tires and Wheels 252
Vehicle Storage 255
Bodywork-Exterior Care 256
Interior Care 257
Technical Specifications.....261
Vehicle Identification..... 261
Vehicle Data..... 262
Fluids and Lubricants 269

Wheels and Tires..... 269
Customer Information 270
Declaration of Conformity 270
Fuel Consumption And CO Emissions 271
Disposal Prescriptions 272
REACH 272
Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy 272

INTRODUCTION

Link to Company App and Website

Installation of the app with the following QR code:

Download on the App Store

GET IT ON Google Play

Access to Additional Videos

https://shorturl.at/EVOSi

How To Use This Manual

- This manual describes all options and features available for this model. **Some descriptions, including those for display and menu functions, may not apply to your vehicle due to model variant, country specifications, special equipment or accessories.**
- The table of contents at the beginning of this manual and within each section shows where the information is located.
- The index will enable you to search for specific information.
- This Owner's Manual depicts left-hand drive vehicles. Operation is similar for right-hand drive vehicles.
- The Owner's Manual uses the engine identifier code. The corresponding sales designation and engineering code can be found in the section "Technical data".
- Directional data, e.g. left or right, or front or back, always relate to the direction of travel.
- Displays may not support your specific language.
- Display messages and interior labeling are written in **bold** letters.

Symbols Key

WARNING

For any work on the vehicle, contact a qualified workshop that has the required technical information, skills and equipment, all of which a dealer is able to provide.

NOTE

Information concerning personal data

Electronic control units are installed in the vehicle. Some of these are required for the correct operation of the vehicle, some others assist while driving (driving or manoeuvring aids), while others provide comfort or infotainment functions.
For more information on the data recorded in the vehicle and its possible processing outside the vehicle, refer to the "Customer Information".

Safety warning

Additional information

Environmental protection feature

Left-hand drive vehicle

Right-hand drive vehicle

Location of the equipment / button described using a black area.

Safety Messages

DANGER

Text marked **Danger** provides information on risk of fatal injury. Disregarding this information may endanger life.

WARNING

Text marked **Warning** provides information on risk of accident or injury. Disregarding this information may lead to injury.

CAUTION

Text marked **Caution** provides information on possible damage to the vehicle.

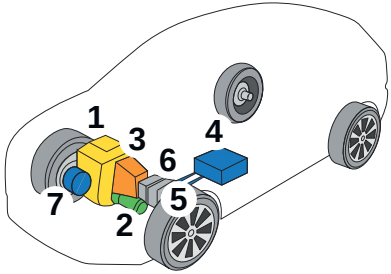
Disregarding this information may lead to vehicle damage.

Propulsion Types

Internal Combustion Engine (ICE)

An ICE vehicle is propelled by an Internal Combustion Engine, diesel or petrol, only.

Hybrid 48 V Vehicle (MHEV)



1 Petrol engine

2 Electric motor

3 6-speed electric dual-clutch automatic gearbox (e-DCS6)

4 48 V traction battery

5 12 V accessory battery

6 DC/DC converter

7 Belt starter

The Hybrid 48 V technology requires no connection to charge the traction battery.

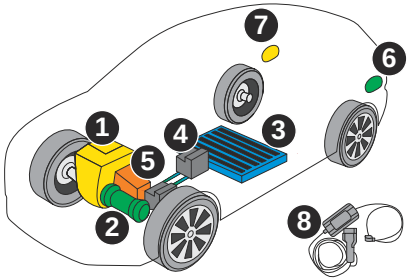
The **Hybrid system** does not operate continuously, but is activated according to the state of the vehicle, the state of charge of the traction battery, the thermal comfort of the passenger compartment (switching on the heating or air conditioning), the driving conditions (acceleration, deceleration, braking, engine start-up) and the road conditions (uphill, downhill):

- The vehicle always starts with the petrol engine to ensure the efficiency of the catalytic converter and the availability of the brake assist.
- In normal driving, the petrol engine and electric motor work together or separately to optimize fuel consumption and electrical energy or to charge the traction battery.
- During the acceleration phases, the electric motor provides an additional boost to reach the torque needed as fast as possible and to improve the acceleration at low speed.
- During the deceleration phases, the electric motor charges the traction battery, using the inertia of the vehicle.
- The driving in all-electric is possible for parking maneuvering, for 20 mph (30 km/h) speed zones in city, on urban and country

roads with smooth driving and on motorways in slight deceleration or downhill.

The electric motor is integrated into the automatic gearbox.
The DC/DC converter provides the link between the 12 V accessory power supply and the 48 V traction power supply.
The belt starter restarts the petrol engine after driving in all-electric.

Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)



1 Petrol engine

2 Electric motor

3 Traction battery

4 12 V accessories batteries

5 7-speed electric dual-clutch automatic gearbox (e-DCS7)

6 Charging flap

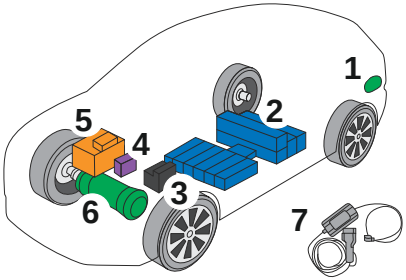
7 Fuel filler flap

8 Domestic charging cable

The **PHEV** technology combines two sources of energy: that of the petrol engine and that of the electric motor, which drive the front wheels (traction).

The engine and the motor can operate alternately or simultaneously, according to the driving mode selected and the driving conditions.
The electric power alone provides the mobility of the vehicle in **Electric** mode, and in **Hybrid** mode in case of moderate demand. It assists the petrol engine during starting and acceleration phases.
The electric power is supplied by a rechargeable traction battery.

Battery Electric Vehicle (BEV)



1 Charging flap

2 Traction battery

3 Accessory battery

4 Heat pump

5 On-board charger

6 Electric motor

7 Charging cable

The charging connectors **1** enable **3** types of charging:

- Domestic charging in mode 2 using a domestic socket and associated charging cable **(7)**.
- Accelerated charging in mode 3 using an accelerated charging unit (**Wallbox**).
- Superfast charging in mode 4 using a fast public charger.

The 400 V traction battery **2** uses Lithium-Ion technology. It stores and supplies the energy required for the operation of the electric motor, air conditioning and heating. Its charge level is represented by an indicator and a reserve power warning light on the instrument panel.

The 12 V accessory battery **3** powers the vehicle's conventional electrical system. It is recharged automatically by the traction battery via the on-board charger.

The heat pump **4** provides passenger compartment heating and regulates traction battery and on-board charger cooling.

The on-board charger **5** manages the domestic charging (mode 2) and accelerated charging (mode 3) of the traction battery as well as the recharging of the 12 V accessory battery.

The electric motor **6** provides propulsion in accordance with the selected driving mode and driving conditions. It recovers energy during vehicle braking and deceleration phases.

Vehicle Modifications-Alterations

WARNING

Do not remove the labels attached in different places on the vehicle. They include safety warnings as well as identification information for the vehicle.

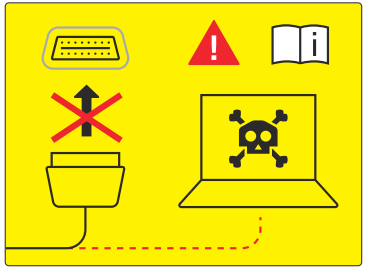
WARNING

Depending on country regulations, certain safety equipment may be mandatory: high visibility safety vests, warning triangles, breathalysers, spare bulbs, spare fuses, fire extinguisher, first aid kit, mud flaps at the rear of the vehicle, etc.

CAUTION

Installing electrical accessories

The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories not approved by the Manufacturer may cause excessive current consumption and faults and failures with the electrical system of your vehicle.
Contact a dealer for information on the range of approved accessories.



As a safety measure, access to the **diagnostic socket**, used for the vehicle's electronic systems, is reserved strictly for authorized dealers or qualified workshops, equipped with the special tools required (risk of malfunctions of the vehicle's electronic systems that could cause breakdowns or serious accidents). The Manufacturer cannot be held responsible if this advice is not followed.

Any modification or adaptation not intended or authorized by the Manufacturer or carried out without meeting the technical requirements defined by the Manufacturer will result in the suspension of the commercial warranty.

CAUTION

Installation of accessory radio communication transmitters

Before installing a radio communication transmitter with an external aerial, you must without fail contact a dealer for the specification of transmitters which can be fitted (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the UN ECE Regulation 10.

Accessories Purchased by the Owner

If after buying the car, you decide to install electrical accessories that require a permanent electrical supply (e.g. radio, satellite anti-theft system, etc.) or accessories that in any case burden the electrical supply, contact a STELLANTIS dealer, whose personnel will check whether the electrical system of the car is able to withstand the load required, or whether it needs to be integrated with a more powerful conventional battery.

WARNING

Take care when fitting additional spoilers, alloy wheel rims or non-standard wheel hubs: they could reduce the ventilation of the brakes and affect efficiency under sharp, repeated braking or on long descents.

Make sure that nothing obstructs the pedal stroke (mats, etc.).

Electric Devices Installation

Electrical and electronic devices installed after buying the car in the context of after-sales service must carry the following label: The Manufacturer authorizes the installation of transceivers provided that installation is carried out at a specialized center, in a workmanlike fashion and in compliance with manufacturer's specifications.

WARNING

Traffic police may not allow the car on the road if devices have been installed which modify the features of the car.

This may also cause invalidation of warranty in relation to faults caused by the change either directly or indirectly related to it.
The Manufacturer all not be liable for damage caused by the installation of accessories either not supplied or recommended by the Manufacturer and/or not installed in compliance with the provided instructions.

Radio Transmitting Equipment Installation

Radio transmitter equipment (car mobile phones, CB radios, amateur radio etc.) cannot be used inside the car unless a separate aerial is mounted on the roof.

GETTING TO KNOW YOUR VEHICLE

Keys

⚠ CAUTION

The electronic components inside the key may be damaged if the key is subjected to strong shocks. In order to ensure complete efficiency of the electronic devices inside the key, it should never be exposed to direct sunlight.

Radio Remote Control Function

Locking the vehicle

Unlocking - Opening/Closing the tailgate

Unlocking the vehicle

The remote control can be used to perform the following remote functions (depending on version):

- Unlocking/Locking/Deadlocking the vehicle.
- Unlocking - Opening/Closing- Locking the tailgate.
- Folding/Unfolding the door mirrors.
- Activating/Deactivating the alarm.
- Locating the vehicle.
- Closing the windows.
- Closing the sunroof.
- Activating the vehicle's electronic immobilizer.

Back-up procedures allow the vehicle to be locked/unlocked in the event of a failure of the remote control, the central locking, the battery, etc. ⇨ 15.

Built-in key

The key contains a mechanical back-up that allows the following operations in case the remote control and the electronic key functions stop working:

- Activation/Deactivation of the manual child lock.
- Activation/Deactivation of the front passenger airbag.
- Back-up Unlocking/Locking of the doors.

- Pull and hold the button (**1**) to eject or to put back in place the key (**2**).

WARNING

Once the built-in key is ejected, always keep it with you to be able to carry out the corresponding back-up procedures.

Unlocking the vehicle

Selective unlocking (driver's door, tailgate) is configured in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

Complete unlocking

- If the selective unlocking is deactivated, press the unlocking button.

Selective unlocking

Driver's door

- Press the unlocking button.

The driver's door and the fuel filler flap are unlocked (Petrol or Hybrid).
The driver's door and the charging flap are unlocked (Rechargeable hybrid or Electric).

- Press it **again** to unlock the other doors and the tailgate.

The charging nozzle can be unplugged on the second press.
Complete or selective unlocking, and alarm deactivation (depending on version), is confirmed by the flashing of the direction indicators and the lighting of the daytime running lights.

Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold.

Selective unlocking and opening of the tailgate

By default, selective unlocking of the tailgate is deactivated and its motorized operation is activated.

- With a motorized tailgate: press and hold this button to unlock the tailgate and trigger the motorized opening of the tailgate.
- With a non-motorized tailgate: press and hold this button to unlock the tailgate and partially open the tailgate.

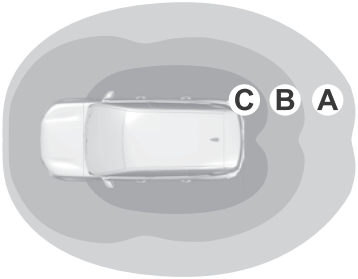
When selective unlocking of the tailgate is activated, the doors and the fuel filler flap remain locked.
After a selective unlocking of the tailgate, if the vehicle has not been fully unlocked, the tailgate will automatically relock after closing.
If selective unlocking of the tailgate is deactivated, pressing the button unlocks the whole vehicle.

NOTE

If motorised operation of the tailgate is deactivated, pressing the button partially opens the tailgate.
To lock the vehicle, it is necessary to close the tailgate again.

Passive Entry

(Depending on version)
This is a Keyless Entry and Start system.
It enables automatic vehicle locking/unlocking simply by detecting the electronic key.
As long as the driver has the electronic key on their person, the vehicle unlocks as they approach and locks when they walk away.
Key recognition zones:



Zone A: welcome lighting on approaching the vehicle (between 2 and 5 meters from the vehicle).

Zone B: automatic locking on moving away from the vehicle (about 2 meters from the vehicle).

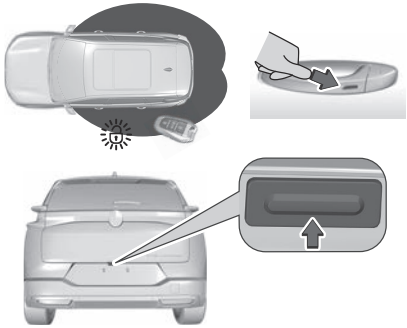
Zone C: automatic unlocking on approaching the vehicle (between 1 and 2 meters from the vehicle).

Automatic functions are configured in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

NOTE

If the electronic key remains around the vehicle (zones **A**, **B** or **C**) for more than 15 minutes without action, the automatic functions are deactivated. To unlock or lock the vehicle, use the remote control or press the driver's door handle.
If using the door handle does not lock/ unlock the vehicle, bring the electronic key closer and repeat the desired action.

Unlocking the vehicle



Complete Unlocking

The vehicle (doors and tailgate) unlocks:

- Either automatically as the driver approaches in zone **C**, if the automatic functions are activated.
- Or by gently pressing the driver's door handle or the button on the tailgate.

Unlocking, and alarm deactivation (depending on version), is confirmed by the flashing of the direction indicators and lighting of the daytime running lights.
Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold.

Selective Unlocking

Selective unlocking (driver's door, tailgate) is configured in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

It operates:

- Either automatically when approaching the driver's door, if the automatic functions are activated.
- Or by gently pressing the driver's door handle.

The driver's door and the fuel filler flap are unlocked (ICE/MHEV).
The driver's door and the charging flap are unlocked (PHEV/BEV).

- Once inside the vehicle, with the driver's door closed, to unlock all accesses, press the central locking button twice or pull the opening control on any door.

Selective Unlocking of the Tailgate

The tailgate unlocks automatically as you approach the rear of the vehicle.

- Press the tailgate control to open the tailgate.

The doors remain locked.
After a selective unlocking of the tailgate, if the vehicle has not been fully unlocked, the tailgate will automatically relock after closing.

Locking

Depending on version, the activation/ deactivation of the lock audible signal is configured in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

Ignition off, with the doors and tailgate closed, the vehicle locks:

- Either automatically, upon leaving zone **B**, if the automatic functions are activated.
- Or by gently pressing the driver's door handle.

Locking is confirmed by the lighting of the direction indicators, and by a double audible signal when the vehicle is locked upon walking away.
It is not possible to lock the vehicle if the electronic key is left inside the vehicle.

Deadlocking

WARNING

Deadlocking renders the interior door controls inoperative. It also disables the central locking button.
The horn remains operational.

Never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

1. Ignition off, press the locking button.
2. Press the locking button again within 3 seconds to deadlock the vehicle (confirmed by the temporary lighting of the direction indicators).

For vehicles equipped with the Proximity Keyless Entry and Start system, a double audible signal indicates that the vehicle is not deadlocked.

Advice

NOTE

If one of the doors or the trunk is still open or if the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Start system has been left inside the vehicle, central locking will not take place.

NOTE

If the vehicle is unlocked but the doors or tailgate are not subsequently opened, the vehicle will automatically lock itself again after about 30 seconds. If fitted to the vehicle, the alarm is automatically reactivated (if previously activated).

NOTE

Motorised tailgate

After closing completely, the vehicle will lock automatically even if the electronic key is outside the recognition areas.

NOTE

Automatic folding/unfolding of the door mirrors is configured in the touch screen.

For more information on **Mirrors**, refer to the corresponding section.

WARNING

As a safety measure, never leave the vehicle, even for a short time, without taking the Keyless Entry and Start system's electronic key with you.
Be aware of the risk of theft of the vehicle if the key is present in one of the defined areas while the vehicle is unlocked.

WARNING

In order to preserve the battery in the electronic key and the vehicle's battery:

- The unlocking on approach function (zone C) automatically switches to hibernation mode after several days (approximately one week), without being used. To unlock the vehicle, use the remote control or press on the driver's door handle. The next time the vehicle is started, the automatic unlocking and locking functions will be reactivated.
- If the welcome lighting is triggered several times in succession without the vehicle subsequently being started, it will be deactivated.
- All "hands-free" functions switch to hibernation mode after 21 days without being used. To restore these functions, unlock the vehicle using the remote control and start the engine. The door mirrors unfold only when the ignition is switched on.

NOTE

Electrical interference

The electronic key may not work if it is close to an electronic device (e.g. mobile telephone (switched on or on standby), laptop computer, strong magnetic fields). If this occurs, move the electronic key away from the electronic device.

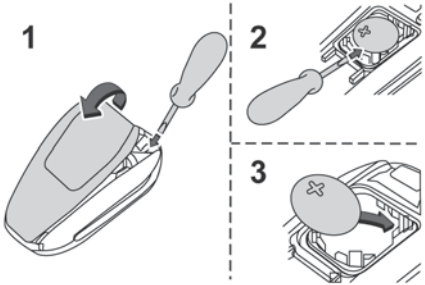
Battery Replacement

Replace the battery as soon as the system no longer operates properly or the range is reduced.

In the event of a discharged battery, illuminates and a warning message is displayed in the Instrument cluster. 72

Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.

Battery type: CR2032 volts.



1. Unclip the cover by inserting a small screwdriver in the slot and lift the cover.
2. Remove the flat battery from its housing.
3. Put the new battery in place, respecting the polarity. Start by inserting it into the contacts located in the corner, then clip the cover onto the unit.
4. Reinitialise the remote control.

For more information on **Reinitialising the remote control**, refer to the corresponding section.

Do not throw remote control batteries away, as they contain metals that are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved disposal point.

WARNING

This equipment contains a button type battery.
Do not swallow the battery. Risk of chemical burns! Swallowing the battery can cause serious internal burning in only 2 hours and can be fatal.
If batteries have been swallowed or inserted into a part of the body, seek immediate medical advice.
Keep new and used batteries out of the reach of children.
If the battery compartment does not close properly, stop using the product and keep it out of the reach of children.

WARNING

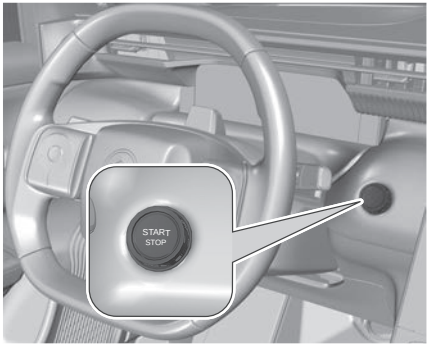
Risk of explosion if the battery is replaced with an incorrect type!
Replace the battery with the same type.

WARNING

Risk of explosion or leaking of inflammable liquid or gas!
Do not use in/store in/place in an environment where the temperature is extremely high or where the pressure is extremely low due to very high altitude.
Do not try to burn, crush or cut a used battery.

Resynchronisation of the Remote Control

With Keyless Entry and Start :



1. Enter the vehicle and keep the key in hand.

2. Press the Start/Stop button without depressing the pedals.
3. Immediately press any button on the key for a few seconds.
4. Press the Start/Stop button again.

The remote control is now fully operational again.

Emergency Key

Lost keys, remote control, electronic key

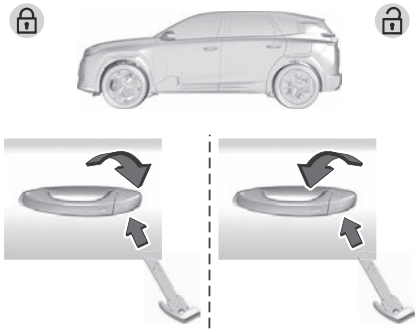
Go to a dealer with the vehicle's registration certificate, your personal identification documents and if possible, the label bearing the key code.
The dealer will be able to retrieve the key code and the transponder code, enabling a new key to be ordered.

Complete unlocking/locking of the vehicle with the key

Use this procedure in the following situations:

- Remote control battery discharged.
- Remote control malfunction.
- Vehicle battery discharged.
- Vehicle in an area subject to strong electromagnetic interference.

In the first case, change the remote control battery.
In the second case, reinitialize the remote control.
Refer to the corresponding sections.



1. Insert the key in the notch of the lock cover and remove the lock cover.
2. Insert the key into the door lock.
3. Turn the key towards the front or the rear to unlock or lock the vehicle.

NOTE

If the vehicle is fitted with an alarm, it will not be activated when locking with the key.
If the alarm is activated, the siren sounds when the door is opened; switch on the ignition to stop it.

Central locking not functioning

Use these procedures in the following cases:

- Central locking malfunction.
- Battery disconnected or discharged.

WARNING

In the event of a malfunction of the central locking system, the battery must be disconnected to ensure that the vehicle is locked fully.

Front left-hand door

- Insert the key into the lock and turn it towards the front or rear of the vehicle to lock or unlock the door.

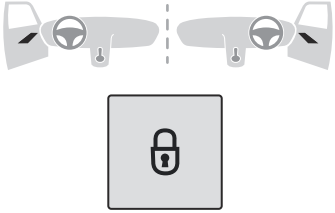
Other doors

Unlocking

- Pull the interior door opening control.

Vehicle Security System

Central Locking System



- Press this button to lock/unlock the vehicle (doors and tailgate) from inside the passenger compartment.

The indicator light comes on to confirm the central locking of the vehicle.

WARNING

Central locking does not take place if any of the doors are open.

NOTE

When locking/deadlocking from the outside

When the vehicle is locked or deadlocked from the outside, the indicator lamp flashes and the button is deactivated.

- After normal locking, pull one of the interior door controls to unlock the vehicle.
- After deadlocking, you must use the remote control, the "Keyless Entry and Start" system or the built-in key to unlock the vehicle.

Automatic Relocking After Driving Off

The doors and tailgate lock automatically while driving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)).
To deactivate/reactivate this function (activated by default):

- Press the button until a confirmation message appears.

NOTE

Transporting long or voluminous objects

Press the central locking control to drive with the boot open and the doors locked. Otherwise, every time the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), the sound of the locks rebounding will be heard and an alert will be displayed.

Automatic Relock after Unlocking

This feature automatically relocks the vehicle a short time after unlocking with the remote control or electronic key, provided the vehicle has not been opened.

Anti-Theft Alarm System

The alarm provides a loud audible deterrent against theft and break-ins by monitoring :

- The doors and tailgate for unauthorized opening.
- The passenger compartment for movement.
- The vehicle's attitude for attempts to lift or move it.

Triggering of the Alarm

This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for 30 seconds.
Depending on the country of sale, some monitoring functions remain active until the alarm has been triggered eleven times consecutively.

When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control or the **Passive Entry** system, rapid flashing of the red indicator light in the button informs you that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, this flashing stops.

Automatic activation

(Depending on destination)
The system is activated automatically 2 minutes after the last door or the trunk is closed.
To avoid triggering the alarm on entering the vehicle, first press the unlocking button on the remote control or unlock the vehicle using the "Keyless Entry and Start" system.

Activation

- Switch off the ignition and exit the vehicle.
- Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the remote control or by pressing on the driver's door handle.

The monitoring system is also activated when the driver moves away from the vehicle.
When the monitoring system is active, the red indicator light in the button flashes once per second and the direction indicators come on for about 2 seconds.
The exterior perimeter monitoring is activated after 5 seconds and the interior volumetric monitoring after 45 seconds.

WARNING

Door, trunk or hood

If an opening is not properly closed, the vehicle is not locked, but the exterior perimeter monitoring will be activated after 45 seconds, at the same time as the interior volumetric monitoring.

WARNING

Sunroof

If the sunroof remains open, the vehicle is locked with exterior perimeter monitoring activated but without interior volumetric or anti-tilt monitoring.

NOTE

Central glasses holder

Make sure that the glasses holder, located in the roof console, is closed before getting out of the vehicle and activating the alarm.

Failure of the remote control

To deactivate the monitoring functions:

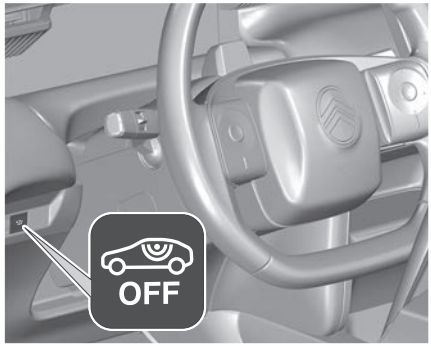
1. Unlock the vehicle using the key in the front left-hand door lock.
2. Open the door; the alarm is triggered.
3. Switch on the ignition; the alarm stops.

The indicator light in the button goes off.

Deactivating the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

Deactivate the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring to avoid the unwanted triggering of the alarm, in some cases such as:

- Presence of an occupant or a pet.
- Slightly open window.
- Washing the vehicle.
- Changing a wheel.
- Towing the vehicle.
- Transport on a ship or ferry.



1. Switch off the ignition and within 10 seconds press the alarm button until its red indicator light is on steady.
2. Get out of the vehicle.
3. Immediately lock the vehicle using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Start system. Only the exterior perimeter monitoring is activated; the button's red indicator light flashes once every second.

NOTE

To take effect, this deactivation must be carried out after each time the ignition is switched off.

Reactivating the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

1. Deactivate the exterior perimeter monitoring by unlocking the vehicle using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Start system.
   The indicator light in the button goes off.
2. Reactivate all monitoring by locking the vehicle using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Start system.

The red indicator light in the button once again flashes every second.

Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

Lock the vehicle using the key (built-in the remote control) in the front left-hand door lock.

Self-protection function

The system checks whether any of its components are out of service.
The alarm is triggered if the battery, the central control or the siren wiring is put out of service or damaged.

⚠ CAUTION

Work on the alarm system

Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not hang clothing or objects from a head restraint or a coat hook.
Do not blind the intrusion sensor by covering it or placing objects over it (e.g glasses case).

Fault

When the ignition is switched on, the steady lighting of the red indicator light in the button indicates a system fault for a few seconds.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Automatic activation

(Depending on version)
The system is activated automatically 2 minutes after the last door or the tailgate is closed.

- To avoid triggering the alarm on entering the vehicle, first press the unlocking button on the remote control or unlock the vehicle using the "Keyless Entry and Start" system.

Fault

When the ignition is switched on, the fixed lighting of the red indicator lamp in the button indicates a system fault.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Immobilizer

⚠ CAUTION

Immobilizer

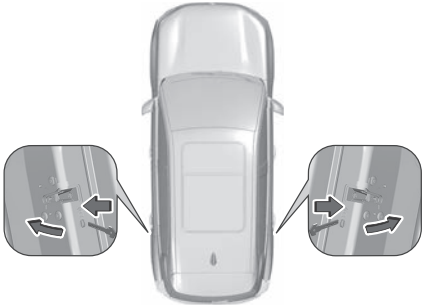
Do not modify the electronic vehicle immobilizer, as this might result in faults.

The keys contain a special code, which must be recognized by the vehicle before starting is possible.
If the system faults, indicated by the display of a message, the engine will not start. Contact a dealer.

Doors

Rear Doors Child Locks

The system prevents a rear door from being opened using its interior handle.
The control is located on the edge of each rear door (indicated by a marking on the bodywork).



1. Open the doors.
2. For the rear doors, check that the child lock is not on.
3. Gently insert the key into the latch located in the door lock, then turn the latch an eighth of a turn towards the outside of the door.
4. Close the doors and check from the outside that the vehicle is locked.

Tailgate

⚠ WARNING

Check that there is enough space to allow for the movement of the tailgate.
The tailgate is not designed to hold a bicycle carrier.

⚠ WARNING

In the event of a malfunction or if you experience difficulty opening or closing

the tailgate, have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop without delay, to avoid the issue deteriorating and prevent any risk of the tailgate dropping, potentially causing serious injury.

DANGER

Do not drive with the tailgate open or ajar, e.g. when transporting bulky objects, since toxic exhaust gases, which cannot be seen or smelled, could enter the vehicle.
This can cause unconsciousness and even death.

Manual Operation

Opening the tailgate

- With the vehicle unlocked or with the electronic key in the recognition zone, press the central tailgate control.
- Raise the tailgate.

NOTE

When selective unlocking is activated, the electronic key must be close to the rear of the vehicle.

WARNING

Check that there is enough space to allow for the movement of the tailgate.

The tailgate is not designed to hold a bicycle carrier.

Closing the tailgate

- Lower the tailgate using the interior grips.
- Release the grips and press down on the outside of the tailgate to close it.

WARNING

In the event of a malfunction or if you experience difficulty opening or closing the tailgate, have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop without delay, to avoid the issue deteriorating and prevent any risk of the tailgate dropping, potentially causing serious injury.

Resumption of the motorized function

The motorized tailgate function can be activated manually.

- With the tailgate open: vigorously move the tailgate a little in the closing direction to activate motorized closing.
- With the tailgate partly open: vigorously move the tailgate a little in the opening direction to activate motorized opening.

Without resumption of the motorized function

- Move the tailgate as slowly and smoothly as possible.

Assistance from the gas struts is no longer available when opening and closing the motorized tailgate manually. Resistance to opening and closing is therefore quite normal.

NOTE

In case of the motor overheating

Repeatedly opening and closing the motorised liftgate can cause overheating of its electric motor, after which opening and closing will not be possible.
Allow at least 10 minutes for the electric motor to cool down before operating the liftgate again.
If you are unable to wait, operate it manually.

Manual closing of the motorized tailgate in case of failure

This operation is **only necessary in the case of failure or deinitialisation/loss of the tailgate motor.**

If the failure originates from the battery, it is recommended to recharge it or change it with the tailgate **closed.**

In this situation, a significant force may be needed to close the tailgate.

- Close it gently without slamming, as slowly as possible, by pushing at the center of the tailgate.

WARNING

Do not lower the tailgate by pushing at one of its sides - risk of damage!

NOTE

In wintry conditions

To avoid any operating problems, remove the snow or wait until the ice melts before requesting motorised opening of the liftgate.

NOTE

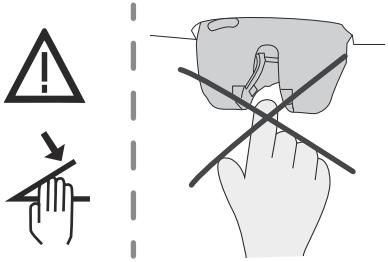
When washing

When washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash, do not forget to lock and move away from the vehicle to prevent any risk of unwanted opening.

Power Tailgate

WARNING

Check that there is enough space to allow for the movement of the power tailgate.



WARNING

Never insert a finger in the locking system of the motorised liftgate - risk of serious injury!

WARNING

To avoid the risk of injury through pinching or trapping, before and during operation of the motorised liftgate:

- ensure that there is no-one close to the rear of the vehicle.
- monitor the activity of the rear passengers, particularly any children.

Bicycle carrier/Towing device

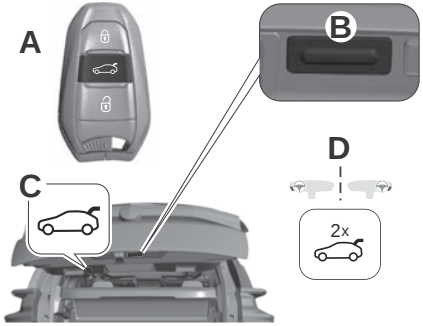
The motorized tailgate is not designed to support a bicycle carrier.
When installing a bicycle carrier on the towing device with connection of the cable to the trailer socket, the remote controls for the motorized operation of the tailgate will be automatically deactivated.
However, it is still possible to use the two controls located on the motorized tailgate.

WARNING

If using a towing device or bicycle carrier not recommended by the Manufacturer, it is essential to deactivate the motorized operation of the tailgate.

Motorized Operation

The power tailgate can be operated by:



There are several ways of operating the tailgate:

A. Using the Keyless Entry and Start system's electronic key

B. Using the exterior tailgate control

C. Using the interior tailgate control

D. Using the control on the dashboard

The motorized operation of the tailgate is configured in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

NOTE

If motorised operation is not activated, the request to open with this function release the liftgate (partially-open position).

Opening

- A long press on the central button **A** of the electronic key.

or

- A short press on the exterior tailgate control **B** (with the electronic key on your person, if the vehicle or the tailgate is locked).

or

- Two consecutive presses on the control **D** of the dashboard.

NOTE

The liftgate opens, either completely by default, or to the position memorised beforehand.
If motorised operation is not activated, these actions release the liftgate (partially-open position).
When the vehicle is locked, the request to open the liftgate with one of the controls **A** or **B** unlocks the vehicle, or only the liftgate if selective unlocking is activated, prior to the opening of the liftgate.

Closing

- A long press on the central button A of the electronic key.
  or
- A short press on the interior tailgate control **C.**

  or
- Two consecutive presses on the control **D** of the dashboard.

NOTE

It is possible to interrupt the operation of the tailgate at any point.
Pressing one of these controls again interrupts the movement that is underway.
Following the interruption of a movement, pressing one of these controls again reverses the movement.
If the tailgate is left open for an extended period of time, the tailgate may need to be closed manually to reset power tailgate functionality.

Hands-free function (Hands-Free Tailgate Access)

With the electronic key on your person, this function allows the motorized tailgate to be opened, closed or stopped with a "**kicking**" movement under the rear bumper.

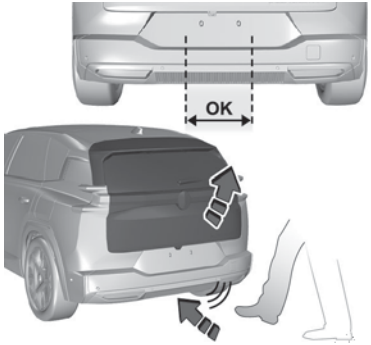
The "Hands-free Trunk Opening" function is configured in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

WARNING

Ensure that you are steady on your feet before performing the "kicking" movement.

NOTE

The function is not available when the vehicle is connected (depending on version).



- Position yourself behind the vehicle by the number plate and perform a "**kicking**" movement in the **"OK"** detection zone.

The "**kicking**" movement must be given forwards, smoothly, not too fast and with a vertical movement from low to high. Raise the foot sufficiently and remove it immediately.

Acknowledgment of the "**kicking**" movement is confirmed by the lighting of the direction indicators.

WARNING

"Sideward kicking" movements do not work. If the "kicking" movement has not been detected, wait at least 2 seconds before repeating the movement.
Do not perform repetitive "kicking" movements.

NOTE

The function is not available when the charging cable is connected. (BEV)

If the motorized tailgate does not operate, check that:

- The function is activated.
- The electronic key is on your person, outside the vehicle in the rear recognition area.
- The kicking movement was performed in the detection zone, close enough to the bumper.
- The foot was removed from the bumper quickly enough.

NOTE

When the vehicle is locked, the request to open the tailgate with this function unlocks the vehicle, or only the tailgate if selective unlocking is activated, prior to the opening of the tailgate.
Closing the tailgate with the Hands-Free Tailgate Operation function enables you to lock the vehicle.

Recommendations on the hands-free function (Hands-Free Tailgate Access)

If it does not work, check that the electronic key is not exposed to a source of electromagnetic interference (e.g. smartphone).
The function may be deactivated or affected if there is rain or snow.

The function may not work correctly with a 2 prosthetic leg.
In some circumstances, the tailgate may open or close by itself, particularly when:

- hitching up or removing a trailer.
- operating a towing device.
- fitting or removing a bicycle carrier.
- loading or unloading bicycles on/from a bicycle carrier.
- depositing or lifting something behind the vehicle.
- an animal approaches the rear bumper.
- washing the vehicle.
- maintenance is performed on the vehicle.
- accessing the spare wheel.

To avoid such operating problems, keep the electronic key away from the recognition zone or deactivate the hands-free function.

WARNING

Take care not to pass the charging cable under the bumper when connecting or disconnecting it, as this may inadvertently open the tailgate.

WARNING

If the trailer connector of the coupling device is connected, it shall not be possible to open or close it with hands-free access.
An audible beep will sound to confirm that the opening of the tailgate is rejected.

In this case, use methods **B** and **C** to open/close the tailgate.

Memorizing an opening position

To limit the opening angle of the motorized tailgate:

- move the tailgate to the desired position manually or by pressing the button.
- press button **C** or the exterior control **B** for more than 3 seconds (memorization is confirmed by a brief audible signal).

A new memorization operation cancels the previous one.

NOTE

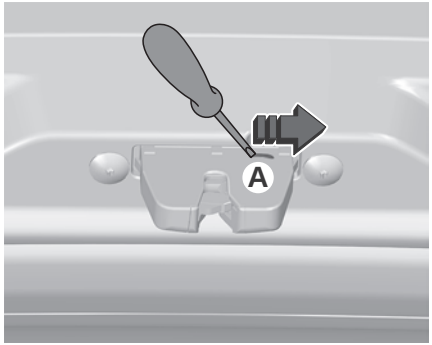
Memorising is not available until the height of opening is more than or equal to 1 metre between the low position and the high position of the liftgate.

Back-up release

To manually unlock the tailgate in the event of a battery or central locking failure.

Unlocking

- Fold the rear seats to gain access to the lock from inside the tailgate.



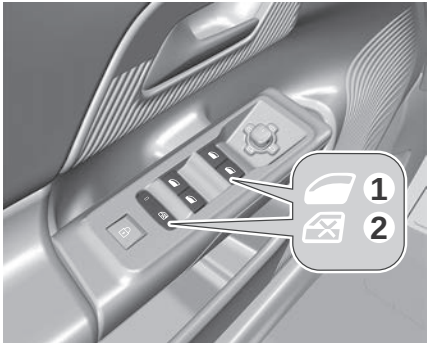
- Insert a small screwdriver into hole **A** of the lock to unlock the tailgate.
- Move the latch to the left.

Locking after closing

If the fault persists after closing again, the tailgate will remain locked.

Windows

Power Windows



1. Window switches
2. Rear Windows Controls disable switch.

Manual Operation

- To open/close the window, press/pull the switch without passing the point of resistance. The window stops as soon as the switch is released.

Automatic Operation

- To open/close the window, press/pull the switch past its resistance point: the window opens/closes completely when the switch is released.

Operating the switch again stops the movement of the window.

NOTE

The electric window controls remain operational for approximately 45 seconds after switching off the ignition.
After that time, the controls are disabled. To reactivate them, switch the ignition on again.

Anti-pinch

If the window meets an obstacle while rising, it stops and immediately partially lowers again.

NOTE

Overtaking of the anti-pinch. After triggering the anti-pinch, check that there are no obstacles blocking the movement of the window.

Try to close the window again.
If the window closing is interrupted by the anti-pinch 3 times in a row (max. 10 seconds between each action), the anti-pinch function becomes inoperable.
Without this protection, the window can only be closed manually - risk of injury!

NOTE

Reinitializing the electric windows

After reconnecting the battery, or in the event of abnormal window movement, the anti-pinch function must be reinitialized.

Reinitializing the electric windows

After reconnecting the battery, or in the event of abnormal window movement, the anti-pinch function must be reinitialized.
For each window:

1. Pull the control until the window is fully closed.
2. Release the control, then pull it again for at least one second.

WARNING

If an electric window meets an obstacle during operation, the movement of the window must be reversed. To do this, press the relevant control.
When the driver operates the passengers' electric window controls, it is important to ensure that nothing can prevent the window from closing properly.
It is important to ensure that passengers use the electric windows correctly.
Pay particular attention to children when operating the windows.
Be aware of passengers and/or other persons present when closing windows remotely using the electronic key.
Do not put your head or arms through the open windows when the vehicle is moving - risk of serious injury!

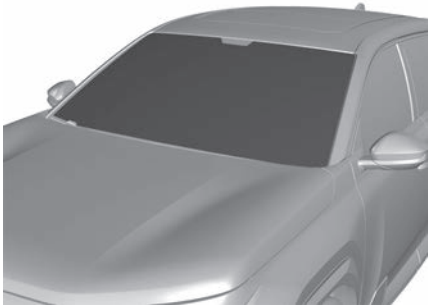
Deactivating the rear controls for the rear windows

- Press the Rear Windows Controls Disable Switch to disable the rear seats window controls.

With ignition ON or the engine running, the LED in the button will illuminate when the rear windows are disabled.

Windshield

Heated windshield

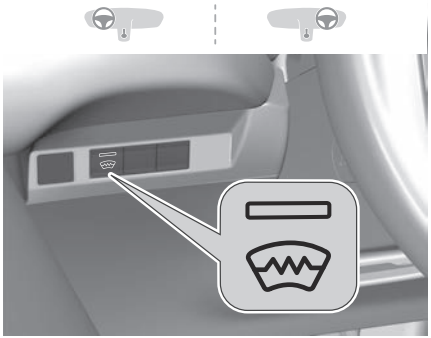


In cold weather, this function heats the entire windshield and complements the Automatic Visibility program to speed up the evacuation of elements that interfere with visibility (e.g. dew, mist, frost, snow), located on either side of the windshield.
It can be used both before setting off and while driving.

NOTE

This function only works when the outside temperature is below +5°C

Switching on/off



- With the engine running, press this button to activate/deactivate the function (confirmed by an indicator light).

The period of operation depends on the outside temperature.
The function switches off automatically to prevent excessive power consumption.

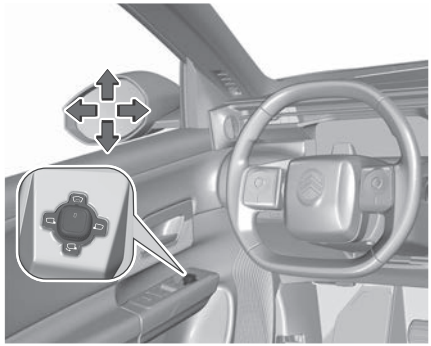
Mirrors

Power Outside Mirrors

WARNING

As a safety measure, the mirrors should be adjusted to reduce the "blind spots".
The objects that you see in the mirrors are in fact closer than they appear. Take this into account in order to correctly judge the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

Electric Adjustment



1. Turn the control to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.
2. Tilt the control in any of the four directions to adjust.
3. Return the control to its central position.

Manual folding

The mirrors can be folded manually (parking obstruction, narrow garage, etc.).

- Turn the mirror towards the vehicle.

Electric folding

Depending on equipment, the door mirrors can be folded electrically.

1. From the inside, with the ignition on, turn the control to the rear mirror folding position.
2. Lock the vehicle from the outside.

NOTE

If the mirrors are folded using the interior control, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked.

Electric unfolding

- From outside: unlock the vehicle.
- From inside: with the ignition on, turn the control to either the left of right position.

NOTE

The automatic folding/unfolding of the door mirrors is configured in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

Before using an automatic car wash, fold the mirrors.

Automatic tilting in reverse gear

Depending on version, this function allows you to automatically tilt the mirrors downwards to assist with parking manoeuvres in reverse gear.
With the engine running, on engaging reverse gear, the mirror glasses tilt downwards.
They each return to their original positions:

- A few seconds after coming out of reverse gear.
- Once the vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).
- When the engine is switched off.

It can be activated/deactivated in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

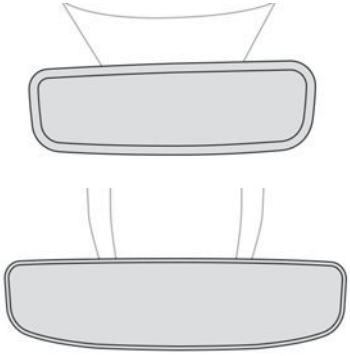
NOTE

The inclination of the mirrors is different between the two sides. It is more important on the passenger side to show more of the ground.

Demisting/Defrosting

The demisting/defrosting of the door mirrors works with the demisting/ defrosting of the rear screen.

Inside rearview mirror



The electrochrome system uses a sensor that detects the level of exterior brightness and that coming from the rear of the vehicle, in order to automatically and gradually switch between day and night usage.

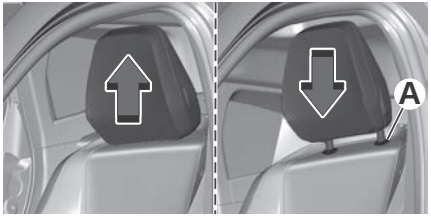
NOTE

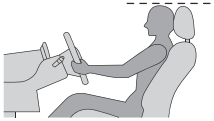
To ensure optimum visibility while maneuvering, the mirror automatically brightens when reverse gear is engaged.
The system is inoperative if the load in the trunk exceeds the height of the load space cover or if the load space cover has items placed on it.

Head Restraints

Front Head Restraints

Adjusting the height





Upwards:

- Pull the head restraint up to the desired position; you can feel the head restraint clicking into position.

Downwards:

- Depending on equipment, press lug **A** and then, while still pressing, lower the head restraint.

NOTE

The head restraint is correctly adjusted when its upper edge is level with the top of the head.

Removing a head restraint

1. Pull the head restraint fully up.
2. Depending on version, press lug **A** to release the head restraint and raise it fully.
3. Stow the head restraint securely.

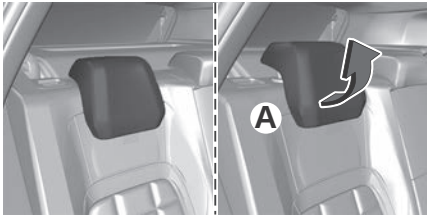
Refitting a head restraint

1. Insert the head restraint rods into the guides in the corresponding seat backrest.
2. Push the head restraint fully down.
3. Press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and push it down.
4. Adjust the height of the head restraint.

WARNING

Never drive with the head restraints removed; they should be in place and adjusted for the occupant of the seat.

Rear Head Restraints



They have two positions:

- A **high position**, for when the seat is in use:
  - Pull the head restraint fully up.
- A **low position**, for stowing, when the seat is not in use:
  - Press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and push it down.

The rear head restraints can be removed.

Removing a head restraint

1. Release the backrest using the release grip.
2. Tilt the backrest slightly forwards.
3. Pull the head restraint fully up.
4. Press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and remove it completely.

WARNING

Never drive with passengers seated at the rear when the head restraints are removed; the head restraints should be in place and in the high position.
The head restraint for the centre seat and those for the outer seats are not interchangeable.

Seats

Front Seat Position

DANGER

Do not sit closer than 25 cm to the steering wheel, to allow safe airbag deployment.

WARNING

For safety reasons, front seat adjustments must only be made while the vehicle is stationary.

WARNING

Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is no person or object that might prevent the full travel of the seat.
There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or of jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

Before taking to the road and to make the most of the ergonomic layout of the instruments and controls, carry out these adjustments in the following order:

- Head restraint height;
- Seat backrest angle;
- Seat cushion height;
- Longitudinal seat position;
- Steering wheel height and reach;
- Rear view mirror and door mirrors.

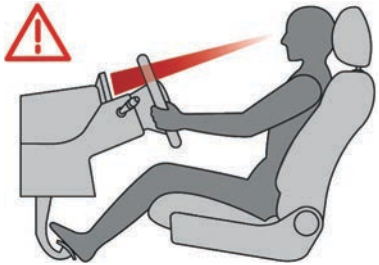
NOTE

Once these adjustments have been made, check that the instrument panel can be viewed correctly from your driving position.

Correct seating position

Adopting a good driving position contributes to improving driver comfort and protection.
It also optimises interior and exterior visibility as well as access to controls.
Certain seat adjustments described in this section depend on the trim level and the country in which the vehicle is sold.

Driver's side



- Sit fully back in the seat with your pelvis, back and shoulders in contact with the seat backrest.
- Adjust the seat cushion height so that your eyes are level with the centre of the windscreen.
- The head should be at a minimum distance of 10 cm from the roof.
- Adjust the longitudinal position of the seat so that you can fully depress the pedals with legs slightly flexed.
- The distance between the knees and the dashboard should be at least 10 cm, for easy access to the dashboard controls.
- Adjust the backrest angle to as vertical a position as possible; never tilt it more than 25°.
- Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is level with the top of the head.
- Adjust the length of the seat cushion to support your thighs.
- Adjust the lumbar support so that it conforms to the shape of the spine.
- Adjust the steering wheel reach so that it is at least 25 cm from the sternum and you can hold it with your arms slightly bent.
- Adjust the steering wheel height so that it does not obstruct the information displayed on the instrument panel.

WARNING

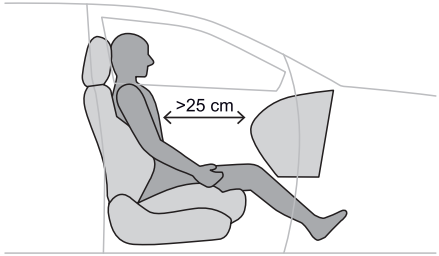
As a safety precaution, adjust the seats only when the vehicle is stationary.

NOTE

Electrically-adjustable seats

Switch the ignition on to enable the adjustments to be made.

Passenger's side



- Sit fully back in the seat with the pelvis, back and shoulders in contact with the seat backrest.
- Adjust the longitudinal position of the seat so that you are at a distance of at least 25 cm from the dashboard.
- Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is level with the top of the head.

Before moving off

1. Adjust the interior and exterior door mirrors to reduce blind spots.
2. Fasten the seat belt: place the diagonal belt in the middle of the shoulder and adjust the lap belt so that it is tightened across the pelvis.
3. Ensure that all passengers have fastened their seat belts correctly.

NOTE

Electric door mirrors

Switch the ignition on to enable the adjustments to be made.

When driving

Maintain a good driving position and hold the steering wheel with both hands at the 'quarter to three' position, so that you can easily and quickly reach the controls behind and near the steering wheel.

WARNING

Never adjust the seats or steering wheel when driving. Always keep your feet on the floor.

Manual Front Seats

Adopting a good driving position contributes to improving driver comfort and protection. It also optimizes interior and exterior visibility as well as access to controls.
Some seat adjustments described in this section depend on the trim level and the country in which the vehicle is sold.

WARNING

As a safety precaution, adjust the seats only when the vehicle is stationary.

Power Front Seats

NOTE

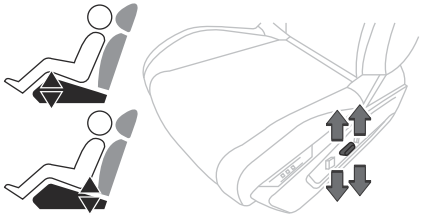
Electrically-adjustable seats

Switch the ignition on to enable the adjustments to be made.

Longitudinal

- Push the control forwards or backwards to slide the seat.

Cushion height and angle



- Tilt the rear of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required height.
- Tilt the front of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required angle.

Backrest angle

- Tilt the control forwards or rearwards.

Seat cushion angle

- Press and hold the front or rear of the button to raise or lower the front part of the seat cushion.

Lumbar

The control allows independent adjustment of the depth and vertical position of the lumbar support.

- Press and hold the front or rear of the control to increase or reduce the lumbar support.
- Press and hold the top or bottom of the control to raise or lower the lumbar support area.

Adaptive bolsters

This function provides better lateral and lumbar support for the driver and front passenger. The position is set by inflating/deflating the adaptive bolster using the corresponding page in the touch screen.
It is possible to store the position setting and also to recall the stored position later.

Settings

- Press the center button of the lumbar adjustment controls.

or

- Press the **Seats** application.

- Select the **Bolster** tab.
- Select the driver or passenger seat.

By default, the initial setting is in the middle position.

- Press buttons "**+**" or "**-**", or move the slider to the desired setting.
- Slide to the left/right for quick and easy deflation/inflation of the adaptive bolster.

The modifications are taken into account immediately and are visible on the animation of the corresponding seat in the page.

NOTE

The setting can be reduced to the minimum ("**1**"), but the function is not completely disabled.

The settings for this function can be stored with the buttons **M/2/1** or with the electronic key.

For more information on **Driver memory setting**, refer to the corresponding section.

Fault

In the event of a fault, a message is displayed in the touch screen.

The message may be displayed when opening the **Bolster** tab or during setting the position.

Go to a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Lounge Mode

The vehicle can switch to Lounge Mode only when it is plugged in.
The Lounge Mode allows the access to the different comfort functions (Heated seats, Ventilated seats, Massage Seats) and the Infotainment system.

Heated Seats

Activation/Deactivation

There are multiple ways to access the Heated Seats controls:

- Using the related widgets on the home page.
- Using the **Seats and Steering Wheel** tab of the **Climate Control** app.
- Using the **Heating and Ventilation** tab of the **Seats** app.

Changing Settings

- Select an intensity from the three preset levels: "**1**" (Low), "**2**" (Normal) or "**3**" (High).
- The heating settings are memorized only for the driver's seat when the ignition is switched off.

Additionally, the seat application can be opened directly using the button located on the side of the seat.

Do not use the function when the seat is not occupied.
Reduce the heating intensity as soon as possible.
When the seat and passenger compartment have reached a satisfactory temperature, switch the function off; reducing electrical consumption in turn decreases energy consumption.

WARNING

Prolonged use of heated seats is not recommended for people with sensitive skin. There is a risk of burns for people whose perception of heat is impaired (e.g. illness, taking medication).
To keep the heated pad intact and to prevent a short circuit:

- Do not place heavy or sharp objects on the seat.
- Do not kneel or stand on the seat.
- Do not spill liquids onto the seat.
- Never use the heating function if the seat is damp.
- Do not place wet tissues on heated seats.
- Do not clean heated seats with liquids.

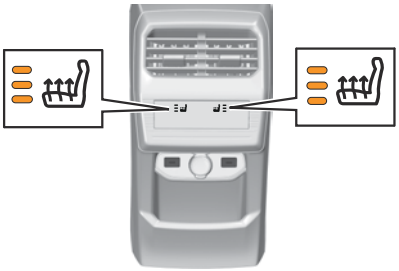
- Do not clean the seat with water or unapproved cleaning solutions.

NOTE

When the temperature exceeds 68°F (20°C), the heating functions remain OFF and cannot be activated.

Rear Seats

Heating of the rear seats can be controlled via buttons on the central console between the front seats.



- Press the button corresponding to the seat.
- Each press changes the heating level. The corresponding number of indicator lights come on.
- To switch off the heating, press the button until all of the indicator lights are off.

Ventilated Seats

Activation/Deactivation

There are multiple ways to access the Ventilated Seats controls:

- Using the related widgets on the home page.
- Using the **Seats and Steering Wheel** tab of the **Climate Control** app.
- Using the **Heating and Ventilation** tab of the **Seats** app.

Changing settings

- In the **Heating Functions** or **Ventilated Seats** page, select the relevant seat.
- Select an intensity from the three preset levels: "**1**" (Low), "**2**" (Normal) or "**3**" (High).

Massage Seats

System with a choice of type of massage and adjustment of its intensity.

This system operates with the engine running, as well as in "**Lounge**" mode.

Activation/Deactivation

- In the **Seats** touch screen application, select the **Massage** tab.
- If the settings are suitable, press to activate/deactivate the function in the **Seats** application.

If no action is taken, the display returns to its initial state.

Changing settings

- In the **Massage** page, select the seat concerned.
- Select a massage intensity from the three preset levels: "**1**" (Low), "**2**" (Normal) or "**3**" (High).
- Select another type of massage from those offered.

The modifications are taken into account immediately and memorized when the ignition is switched off.
Once activated, the system starts a one hour massage cycle, made up of sequences of 6 minutes of massage followed by 3 minutes at rest.
The system stops automatically at the end of the cycle.

Rear Seat Position

The rear seats can be reclined for added comfort.

1. Unlock the reclining backrest by using the switch on the panel next to the seat.
2. Lean against the backrest to set the desired angle.
3. Release the switch.

Rear Armrest

The center portion of the rear seats can be folded down to function as an armrest, and features two cup-holders and a cell phone storage space.

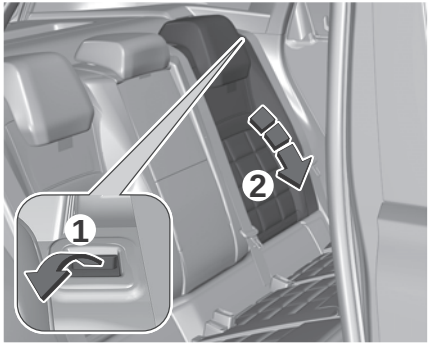
Folding the backrests

WARNING

Manoeuvring the backrests should only be done when the vehicle is stationary.

First steps:

1. Lower the head restraints.
2. If necessary, move the front seats forward.
3. Check that no person or object might interfere with the folding of the backrests (e.g. clothing, luggage).
4. Check that the seat belts are free, not engaged in the buckles. Release them so that the backrest can be moved.
5. Press the backrest release grip **1.**
6. Guide the backrest **2** down to the horizontal position.

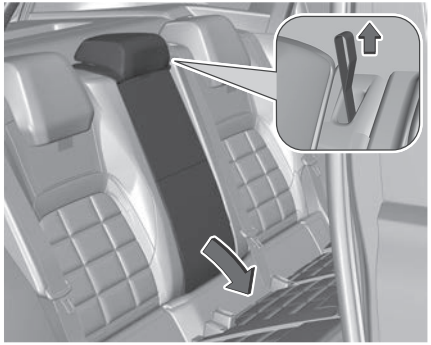


NOTE

When the backrest is released, the red indicator in the release grip is visible.

Central backrest

The central section of the backrest may be folded down independently of the side sections.



1. Check in advance that the rear armrest is not folded down and that the central head restraint is not raised.
2. From inside the passenger compartment or from the tailgate, pull on the strap to release.
3. Fold the backrest onto the seat cushion.
4. When repositioning, lift up the backrest fully until it locks.

Seat Belts

WARNING

Fasten seat belt before each trip.
In the event of an accident, people not wearing seat belts endanger their fellow occupants and themselves.

Inertia reel

The seat belts are equipped with an inertia reel which allows the strap length to adjust automatically to the shape of the user. The seat belt returns to its storage automatically when it is not used.
The inertia reels are fitted with a device which automatically locks the strap in the event of a collision, emergency braking or if the vehicle rolls over. It can be released by pulling the strap firmly and then releasing it so that it reels in slightly

Pyrotechnic pretensioning

This system improves safety in the event of a frontal or side impact. Depending on the severity of the impact, the pyrotechnic pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants.
The pyrotechnic pretensioning seat belts are enabled when the ignition is on.
If the pretensioners are deployed, the following warning light will illuminate:

Force limiting system

This system reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, thus improving their protection.

Progressive force limiting system

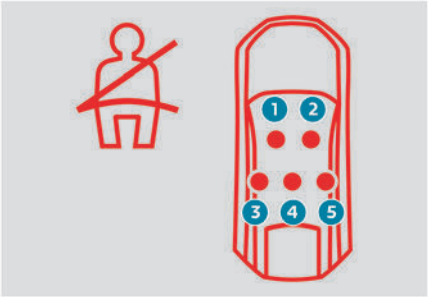
This system reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, taking their stature into account, thus improving their protection.

⚠ WARNING

In the event of an impact

Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impacts, the pyrotechnic device may trigger before and independently of airbag deployment. Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.
In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on.
Following an impact, have the seat belt system checked, and if necessary replaced, by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Seat Belt Warning System



Seat belts not fastened/unfastened identification indicator lights

The red indicator lights (1 to 5) on the instrument panel indicate the location of the seat belts which are not fastened or have been unfastened.

Not fastened/unfastened warning light

It comes on in red on the instrument panel as soon as the system detects that a seat belt is not fastened or has been unfastened.

In this case, the vehicle symbol containing the belt indicator lights for each seat also illuminates red.

Front seat belt not fastened alert

When the ignition is switched on, if the driver or front passenger has not fastened their seat belt, the corresponding indicator light (**1** or **2**) comes on in red.

At a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h), the warning light and the corresponding indicator light flash red, accompanied by an audible signal for around 2 minutes. After this time has elapsed, the indicator light remains on fixed in red until the seat belt is fastened.

Rear seat belt not fastened alert

When the ignition is switched on, if one of the rear passengers has not fastened their seat belt, the corresponding indicator light (**3, 4** or **5**) comes on in red for 1 minute.

Seat belt unfastened alert

After the ignition is switched on, if the driver or a passenger unfastens their seat belt, the corresponding indicator light (**1**, **2**, **3, 4** or **5**) comes on in red.

At a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h), the warning light and the corresponding indicator light flash, accompanied by an audible signal for around 2 minutes. After this time has elapsed, the indicator light remains on until the seat belt has been fastened again.

With the ignition on, if the driver or a passenger fastens their seat belt, the corresponding indicator light (**1, 2**, **3**, **4** or **5**) comes on in green on the instrument panel.

With the ignition on, if one of the front or rear passenger seats is detected as being unoccupied, the corresponding indicator light (**2**,**3**, **4** or **5**) comes on in grey on the instrument panel.

When there are no longer any not fastened/unfastened alerts, the warning light goes off and the green or grey indicator lights remain on for around 30 seconds, then go off.

Advice

⚠ WARNING

The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all fastened before setting off. Wherever seated in the vehicle, you must always fasten the seat belt, even for short journeys. Do not invert the seat belt buckles, as they will not fulfil their role properly.
To ensure the proper functioning of the belt buckles, make sure that there are no foreign bodies present (e.g. a coin) before fastening. Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly.
After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

⚠ WARNING

Installation

The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible over the pelvis.
The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.
At the front, adjusting the position of the seat belt may require the seat height to be adjusted.
In order to be effective, a seat belt must:

- Be tightened as close to the body as possible.
- Be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it is not twisted.
- Only be used to secure one person.
- Not show signs of tearing or fraying.
- Not be changed or modified, in order to avoid affecting its performance.

⚠ WARNING

Using the seatbelt when pregnant

The lap seat belt must be positioned as low as possible across the pelvis to prevent pressure on the abdomen.

⚠ WARNING

Recommendations for children.

Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than 1.5 metres.
Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one child.
Never carry a child on your lap.

For more information on **Child seats**, refer to the corresponding section.

WARNING

Maintenance

In accordance with current safety regulations, for all work on your vehicle's seat belts, contact a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a dealer is able to provide.
Have the seat belts checked regularly by a dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.
Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by dealers.

Airbag System

System designed to help improve the safety of the occupants sitting in the front seats and the rear outer seats, in the event of a violent collision. The airbags supplement the action of the seat belts equipped with a force limiting system.
Electronic detectors record and analyze the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

- In the event of violent impact, the airbags deploy instantly and help better protect the occupants of the vehicle; immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly in order not to hinder the visibility or the possible exit of the occupants.
- In the event of a slight impact, a rear impact and under certain rollover conditions, the airbags may not deploy; only the seat belt helps to protect you in these situations.

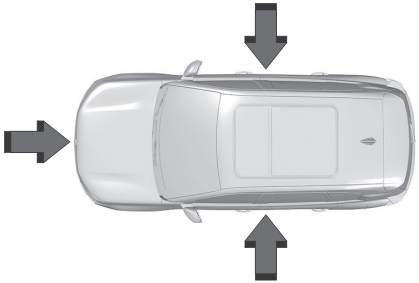
The seriousness of the impact depends on the nature of the obstacle and the speed of the vehicle at the moment of collision.

WARNING

The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.

This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.

Impact detection zones



A. Front impact zone

B. Side impact zone

NOTE

When one or more airbags are deployed, the detonation of the pyrotechnic charge incorporated in the system makes a noise and releases a small quantity of smoke. This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience irritation.
The detonation noise associated with the deployment of one or more airbags may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

WARNING

For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the safety recommendations below. Adopt a normal and upright sitting position. Fasten your seat belt and position it correctly.

Do not place anything between the occupants and the airbags (e.g. child, animal, object), do not fix or attach anything near or in the path of the airbags, as this could cause injuries when they are deployed.
Never modify the original definition of the vehicle, particularly in the area directly around the airbags. Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms cannot be ruled out when an airbag is deployed. The bag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time, discharging

the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.
After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen, have the airbag systems checked.
All work must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

⚠ WARNING

The airbag system deploys in an explosive manner, repairs must be performed by skilled personnel only.

⚠ WARNING

Adding accessories that change the vehicle frame, bumper system, height, front end or side sheet metal, may keep the airbag system from working properly. The operation of the airbag system can also be affected by changing any parts of the front seats, seat belts, airbag sensing and diagnostic module, steering wheel, instrument panel, inner door seals including the speakers, any of the airbag modules, ceiling or pillar trim, front sensors, side impact sensors or airbag wiring.

⚠ WARNING

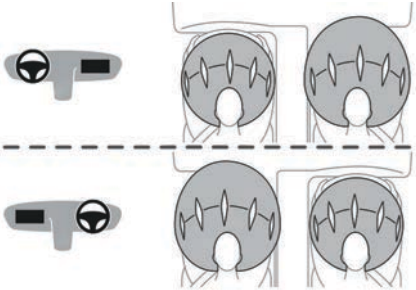
Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions.

⚠ WARNING

Do not place anything between the occupants and the airbags (e.g. child, animal, object), do not affix or attach anything near to or in the exit path of the airbags, as this could cause injuries when they are deployed.
Do not affix or attach anything to:

- The steering wheel and dashboard.
- The seat backrests (e.g. clothing).
- The roof.

Front Airbags System



This system protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious front impact, limiting the risk of head and chest injury.
The driver's airbag is fitted in the center of the steering wheel; the front passenger airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.

Deployment

They deploy, except the front passenger airbag if it is deactivated[1], in the event of a serious front impact to all or part of the front impact zone **A**.
The front airbag inflates between the thorax and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the steering wheel, driver's side, and the dashboard, passenger's side, to cushion their forward movement.

Side Airbags System

This system protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious side impact, limiting the risk of injury to the chest, between the hip and the shoulder.
Each lateral airbag is fitted in the seat backrest frame, on the door side.

[1] For more information on Deactivating the front passenger airbag, refer to the corresponding section.

⚠ WARNING

Lateral airbags

Use only approved seat covers compatible with the deployment of these airbags. For information on the range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, contact a dealer.
Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backrests (e.g. clothing) as this could cause injuries to the chest or arm when the airbag is deployed.
Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.
The vehicle's front door panels include side impact sensors.
A damaged door or any unauthorized or incorrectly executed work (modification or repair) on the front doors or their interior trim could compromise the operation of these sensors - risk of malfunction of the lateral airbags! All work must be carried out only by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Deployment

The lateral airbags are deployed on one side in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**.

The lateral airbag inflates between the chest of the vehicle's occupant and the corresponding door panel.

Curtain Airbags System

System contributing towards greater protection for the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear center passenger) in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the side of the head.
Each curtain airbag is built into the pillars and the upper passenger compartment area.

Deployment

It deploys simultaneously with the corresponding lateral airbag in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**.

The curtain airbag inflates between the front and rear occupants of the vehicle and the corresponding windows.

⚠ WARNING

Curtain airbags.

Do not fix or attach anything to the roof, as this could cause head injuries when the curtain airbag is deployed.
Do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, as these help to secure the curtain airbags.

Airbag System Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, the following warning lights illuminate on the instrument panel:

The airbags may not deploy in the event of a serious impact.

Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

⚠ WARNING

In the event of a minor impact or bump at the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbags may not be deployed.
In the event of a rear or front collision, none of the lateral airbags are deployed.

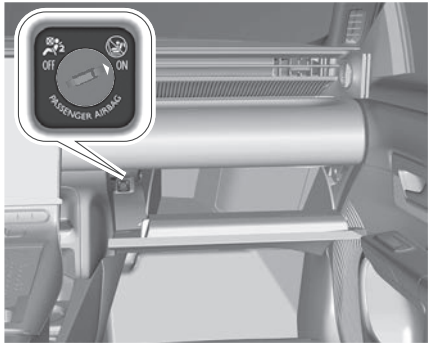
Front Passenger Airbag Deactivation

The Front Passenger Airbag must be set in accordance with the type of Child Restraint System used. Follow the Child Restraints Installation Table. ⇨ 39

The side airbag and curtain airbag systems, the belt pretensioners and all driver airbag systems will remain active. The front passenger airbag system can be deactivated via a key-operated switch on the passenger side of the dashboard.

⚠ WARNING

Deactivate passenger airbag only in combination with the use of a child restraint system, subject to the instructions and restrictions in the table.
Otherwise, there is a risk of fatal injury for a person occupying a seat with a deactivated front passenger airbag.

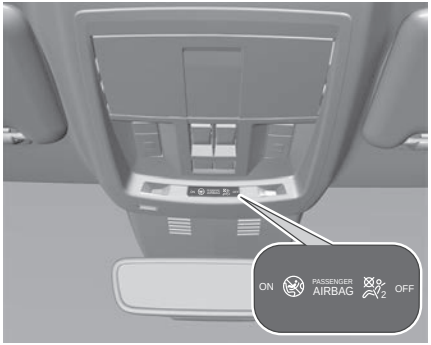


Use the ignition key to choose the position:

OFF front passenger airbag is deactivated and will not inflate in the event of a collision. Control indicator illuminates continuously in the center console.

ON front passenger airbag is active.

Activate/Deactivate the airbag **only when the vehicle is stopped with the ignition off.**



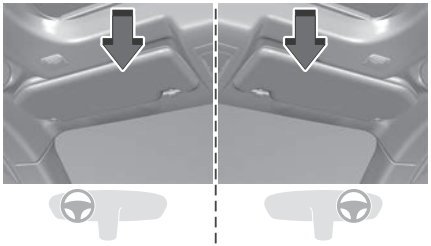
After the ignition is turned on:

- If the control indicator **ON** illuminates for approx. 60 seconds, the front passenger airbag system will inflate in the event of a collision.
- If the control indicator **OFF** illuminates, the front passenger airbag system is deactivated. It stays on while the airbag is deactivated.

Consult a workshop immediately :

- If neither of the two control indicators are illuminated.
- If both control indicators are illuminated at the same time, there is a system failure. The status of the system cannot be determined. No person is allowed to occupy the front passenger seat.

Warning label - Front passenger airbag



You must comply with the following instruction, as reminded by the warning label on both sides of the passenger sun visor:

DANGER

NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

EN: NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.
DE: Montieren Sie auf einem Sitz mit AKTIVIERTEM Front-Airbag NIEMALS einen Kindersitz oder eine Babyschale entgegen der Fahrtrichtung, das Kind könnte schwere oder sogar tödliche Verletzungen erleiden.
FR: NE JAMAIS installer de système de retenue pour enfants faisant face vers l'arrière sur un siège protégé par un COUSSIN GONFLABLE frontal ACTIVÉ. Cela peut provoquer la MORT de l'ENFANT ou le BLESSER GRAVEMENT.
ES: NO INSTALAR NUNCA un sistema de retención para niños de espaldas al sentido de la marcha en un asiento protegido mediante un AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO, ya que podría causar lesiones GRAVES o incluso la MUERTE del niño.
IT: NON installare MAI seggiolini per bambini posizionati in senso contrario a quello di marcia su un sedile protetto da un AIRBAG frontale ATTIVATO. Ciò potrebbe provocare la MORTE o FERITE GRAVI al bambino.

Child Restraints

General Recommendations

WARNING

When carrying children in the vehicle, you must install them in a suitable seat. **Never carry a child on your lap.**

WARNING

An incorrectly installed child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's safety in the event of an accident. Make sure to comply with the instructions hereinafter and the ones provided with the child seat.

NOTE

The regulations on carrying children are specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:

- In accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 years old or less than 1.5 meters tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their size or weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings.
- **Children aged 15 months or less must travel in the "rearward facing" position, whether in the front or rear of the vehicle.**

  The use of "rearward facing" seats is recommended for children until the age of 3.
- **Statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats.**

WARNING

Do not affix anything on the child restraint systems and do not cover them with any other materials. A child restraint system which has been subjected to stress in an accident must be replaced.

NOTE

Seatbelts

Ensure that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat, as this could destabilize it.
When installing a child seat on a rear seat, ensure that the seat does not interfere with the operation of the seatbelt on the rear center seat.
Ensure that the seatbelt is properly positioned and tighten it or the child seat harness keeping the slack relative to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.

WARNING

Headrests

Remove the head restraint before installing a child seat with a backrest or a Top Tether system on a passenger seat.
Ensure that the head restraint is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

WARNING

Additional protections

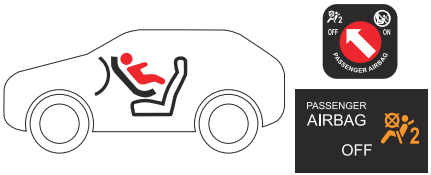
Allow children to enter and exit the vehicle only on the side facing away from the traffic.
To prevent accidental opening of the doors and rear windows, use the "Child lock".
Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.
To protect young children from the sun's rays, fit side blinds on the rear windows.
As a safety measure, do not leave:

- A child alone and unsupervised inside a vehicle.
- A child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed.
- The keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

Child Restraint Installation on a Front Seat

WARNING

The front passenger airbag must be deactivated before installing a rearward-facing child seat. Otherwise, the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag is deployed.



WARNING

The front passenger airbag must be activated when installing a forward-facing child seat.

NOTE

Adjust the front passenger seat to the **highest and fully back longitudinal position, with the backrest straightened.**

Child Restraint Installation on a Rear Seat

Forward-facing or rearward-facing

- Move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the forward-facing or rearward-facing child seat itself do not touch the vehicle's front seat.
- Check that the backrest of the forward-facing child seat is as close as possible to

the backrest of the vehicle's rear seat, and ideally in contact with it.

Center rear seat

A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the center rear passenger seat.

Seat-specific Recommendations

WARNING

Installing a booster seat

The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.
Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs.
Use a booster seat with a backrest, equipped with a belt guide at shoulder level.

WARNING

Installing a Child Seat with support leg.

Ensure that the Support Leg is in firm and steady contact with the floor.

Never install a seat with support leg on the center rear passenger seat.

WARNING

When the child restraint system is not used, secure it with the seat belt or with the ISOFIX anchorages, or remove it from the vehicle. Do not leave it unsecured inside the passenger compartment. In this way, in the event of sudden braking or an accident, it will not cause injuries to the occupants.

WARNING

The head restraint must always be present in the vehicle and fitted if the seat is used by an adult passenger or a child sitting in a restraint system without backrest.

WARNING

After installing a child restraint system in the vehicle, do not move the seat forwards or back as it could loosen the attachments. Remove the child restraint system to adjust the seat position. Install the child restraint system again once the seat has been adjusted.

Seat Belt Installation

Child restraint systems can be fastened by using a seat belt.
When installing a child seat using the seat belt, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly on the vehicle seat.

ISOFIX Anchorage Connectors

Specific vehicle ISOFIX child restraint system positions are marked in the Child Restraints Installation Table.

The rear outer seats feature ISOFIX compliant mountings.

These mountings comprise of a set of rings **A**, located between the vehicle seat backrest and cushion.

These rings are located behind zips.

The 2 latches on **ISOFIX child seats** are secured to them.

ISOFIX brackets are indicated by a label on the backrest. To get access to the ISOFIX anchorage connectors, first pull the zipper.

NOTE

When fastening ISOFIX compatible child restraint systems on adjustable passenger seats, first incline the backrest as far as necessary backwards in order to get access to the ISOFIX anchorage connectors.

After the proper fastening of the ISOFIX child restraint system, incline the backrest forward again.

Top-tether anchors

In addition to the ISOFIX rings **A**, Top-tether seats must be secured to an additional ring **B**, located behind the seat.

Before installing a Top-Tether seat:

1. Remove and stow the head restraint for the seat before installing the child seat.
2. Install the child seat on ISOFIX mountings.
3. Pass the strap of the Child Seat over the back rest and secure it to the Top Tether hook.
4. Tighten the strap according to the instructions of the manual provided with the Child Seat.

ISOFIX child restraint systems of universal category positions are marked in the Child Restraints Installation Table.

i-Size Child Seats

An i-Size child restraint system is an universal ISOFIX child restraint system according to UN Regulation No. 129.
All i-Size child restraint systems can be used on any vehicle seat suitable for i-Size, as indicated in the Child Restraints Installation Table.

NOTE

Either a Top-tether strap or a support leg must be used in addition to the ISOFIX brackets to prevent the seat from tipping forwards in the event of a collision.

i-Size child seats and vehicle seats with i-Size approval are marked with i-Size symbol, see illustration.

Child Seats Recommended

Size of the child (ECE R129)	Installation type	Child restraint system	Remark
Size: 40 - 85 cm (From birth to 15 months) (Up to 13 kg)	Rearward facing	**"RÖMER Baby-Safe PRO"**	Recommended with its ISOFIX base (**RÖMER Vario Base 5Z**)
Size: 61- 105 cm (From 3 months to 4 years) (Up to 18 kg)	Rearward facing Size: 61 - 105 cm Forward facing Size: 76 - 105 cm	**"RÖMER Dualfix 5Z"**	Installed with its ISOFIX base (**RÖMER Vario Base 5Z**) Rearward facing installation is recommended
Size: 100 - 150 cm (From 3.5 to 12 years) (Up to 36 kg)	Forward facing	**"RÖMER KidFix Pro"**	Can be installed with or without ISOFIX mountings. The child is restrained by the seat belt. **Bought in Stellantis & You, Sales and Services** **We recommend using child seat with the backrest. If the back-rest is removed for child over 138 cm, the secure guard must also be removed**

DANGER

If a Universal ISOFIX child restraint system is not fixed to all three anchorages, it will not be able to protect the child correctly. In a crash, the child could be seriously or fatally injured.

NOTE

Please follow the child restraint manufacturers' instructions for installing the appropriate child restraint in the vehicle.

NOTE

For the semi-universal or vehicle-specific child restraint (ISOFIX or belt-type child restraint), refer to the list of vehicles provided in the child restraint user manual.

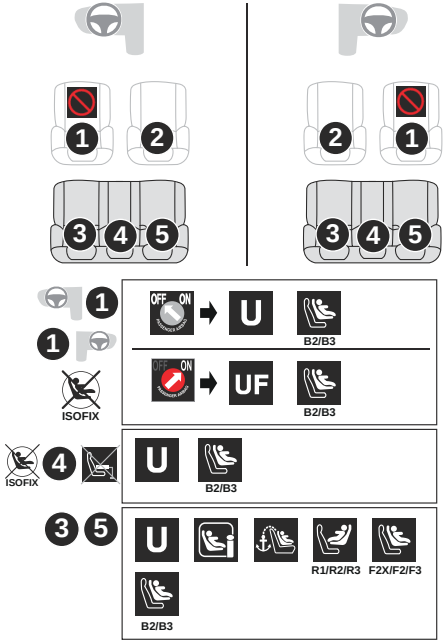
NOTE

Ensure that the installation location of the child restraint system inside the vehicle is correct.
Refer to the summary table for the installation of child seats.

Child Restraints Installation Location

⚠ WARNING

Observe the restrictions and indications in the European Regulation Child Restraints Installation Table



European Regulation Child Restraints Installation Table

In compliance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing child seats secured using the seat belt and universally approved (a) as well as the largest **ISOFIX** and **i-Size** child seats on seat positions equipped with **ISOFIX** mountings in the vehicle.
Rules :

- A position that is i-Size compatible is also compatible for R1, R2 and F2X, F2, B2.
- A position that is R3 compatible is also compatible for R1 and R2.
- A position that is R2 compatible is also compatible for R1.
- A position that is F3 compatible is also compatible for F2X and F2.
- A position that is B3 compatible is also compatible for B2.

(a) Universal child seat: child seat that can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.

(b) Depending on version, refer to the legislation in force in your country before carrying a child at this seat position.

(c) To install a "rearward facing" child seat at this seat position, the front passenger's airbag MUST be deactivated "OFF".

(d) Only a "forward facing" child seat is authorized at this seat position with the front passenger's airbag activated "ON".

(e) For a "rearward facing" and/or "forward facing" universal child seat (U) for groups 0, 0+, 1, 2 or 3 or dedicated to children between 40 and 150 cm in size.

(f) For a "forward facing" universal child seat (UF) for groups 1, 2 or 3, or dedicated to children between 76 and 150 cm in size only.

(g) For a seat with height adjustment, set it to the highest position.

(h) Adjust the front passenger seat to the fully rearward longitudinal position.

(i) A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the center rear passenger seat.

(j) Seat not fitted with ISOFIX compliant mountings.

(k) If a child restraint system is installed on the center rear passenger seat, the left rear passenger seat is blocked and MUST NOT be occupied.

(l) If a child restraint system is installed on these seats, adjust the head restraint to the maximum height position or remove it if necessary (instability or lack of contact from the rear of the child restraint with the backrest of the seat of the vehicle).

(m) For rear seats with adjustable backrest, set the backrest to an upright position (2nd notch from the most upright position) when using a child restraint system.

(n) Adjust the seat in the front of the seat with the child restraint system to the maximum height.

(o) It is not possible to install 3 booster child seats on the rear seats at the same time.

	Seat numbers					
	Front seats (b) (l)			Rear seats (b) row 2 (l) (m)		
	1	2 (j)		3	4 (i) (j)	5
Front passenger airbag		Deactivated "OFF" **(c)**	Activated "ON" **(d)**			
Position compatible with a **universal (a)** child seat **Rearward facing (e)**	no	yes **(g) (h)**	no	yes**(n)**	yes **(k)**	yes**(n)**
Position compatible with a **universal (a)** child seat **Forward Facing (f)**	no	yes **(g) (h)**		yes	yes **(k)**	yes
Position compatible with an **i-Size** child seat **Rearward facing**	no	no		yes	no	yes
Position compatible with an **i-Size** child seat **Forward Facing**	no	no		yes	no	yes
Position equipped with a **TOP TETHER** hook	no	no		yes	no	yes
"Carrycot" type of child seat (L1 / L2)	no	no		no	no	no

	Seat numbers				
	Front seats (b) (l)		Rear seats (b) row 2 (l) (m)		
	1	2 (j)	3	4 (i) (j)	5
"Rearward facing" ISOFIX child seat (R1 / R2 / R3)	no	no	R3 **(n)**	no	R3 **(n)**
"Forward facing" ISOFIX child seat (F2 / F2X / F3)	no	no	F3	no	F3
"Booster" child seat (B2 / B3) **(o)**	no	B3 **(g) (h)**	B3		B3
				B3 **(k)**	

Key

Seat position where the installation of a child seat is forbidden.

Front passenger airbag deactivated, and associated warning light.

Front passenger airbag activated, and associated warning light.

Seat position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved **"rearward facing"** and/or **"forward facing"** (**U**) for groups **0, 0+, 1, 2** or **3** or dedicated to children between 40 to 150 cm in size.

Seat position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and **universally approved "forward facing" (UF)** for groups **1**, **2** and **3**, or dedicated to children between 76 and 150 cm in size only.

Seat position authorized for the installation of an **i-Size** child seat.

Seat position not suitable for the installation of a child seat with support leg.

Presence of a **Top Tether** anchorage point at the rear of the backrest, authorizing the installation of an **universal ISOFIX child seat.**

"Rearward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat:

- **R1: ISOFIX** child seat for a **baby**.
- **R2: ISOFIX reduced size** child seat.
- **R3**: **ISOFIX** large size child seat

"Forward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat:

- **F2X: ISOFIX** child seat **for toddlers.**
- **F2: ISOFIX reduced height** child seat.
- **F3: ISOFIX full height** child seat.

Booster child seat,using seat belt or **ISOFIX** mountings:

- **B2: reduced width booster seat.**
- **B3: full width booster seat.**

Seat position where the installation of an **ISOFIX** child seat is forbidden.

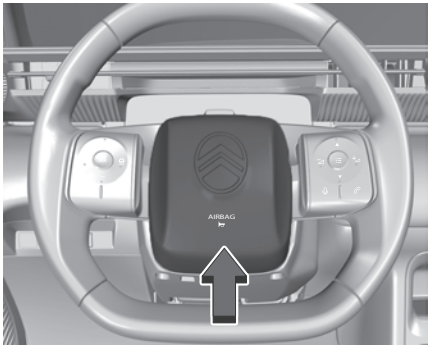
For seat adjustments, refer to the summary table **"European Regulation Child Restraints Installation Table".**

ISOFIX "carrycot" type child seat:

- **L1** : left-hand facing.
- **L2** : right-hand facing.

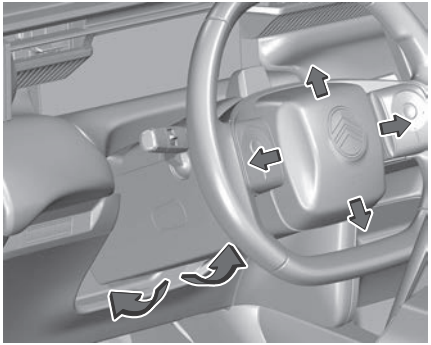
Steering Wheel

Horn



- Press the central part of the steering wheel.

Steering Wheel Adjustment



1. When stationary, pull the control to release the steering wheel.
2. Adjust the height and reach in a smooth way to suit your driving position and make sure the entire instrument cluster is visible.
3. Push the control to lock the steering wheel.

⚠ WARNING

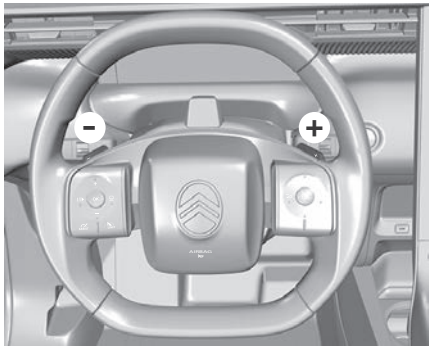
For safety reasons, these adjustments must only be carried out with the vehicle stationary.

Steering Wheel Paddles

The steering wheel features paddles on either side. Depending on version, they can perform various functions:

- ICE/MHEV/PHEV: Manually change up/down gears.
- BEV: Set Regenerative braking level.

For more information, refer to the corresponding sections.



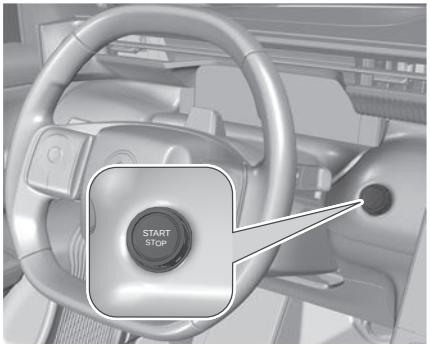
Steering Wheel Heating

In cold weather, this function heats the circular part of the steering wheel.
It can be activated when the outside temperature is below 20°C.

- In the **Climate** touch screen application, select the **Seats and Steering Wheel** tab.

- Press to activate/deactivate the function.

Ignition Switch



1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Press and hold the "START/STOP" button until the engine starts.

On BEV vehicles, the cluster will display READY when the vehicle is ready to drive.

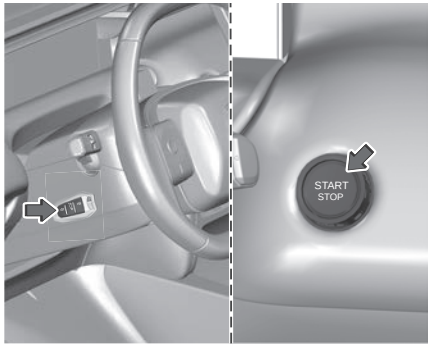
⚠ DANGER

Never switch off the ignition while driving as this will cause steering wheel lock.

WARNING

Only leave the vehicle with propulsion system off, parking brake applied and, depending on transmission, first gear engaged or **P** selected.

Backup Starting



1. Place and hold the remote control against the back-up reader.
2. Select mode **P**, then depress the brake pedal.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

Wipers and Washers

NOTE

Before operating the wipers in wintry conditions, clear any snow, ice or frost from the windshield and around the wiper arms and blades.

WARNING

Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. In extremely hot or cold weather, check that the wiper blades are not stuck to the windshield before operating the wipers.

NOTE

After using an automatic car wash, you may temporarily notice abnormal noises and poorer wiping performance. You do not need to replace the wiper blades.

WARNING

To avoid damaging the wiper blades, do not operate the screenwash if the screenwash reservoir is empty. Only operate the screenwash if there is no risk of the fluid freezing on the windscreen and hindering visibility. During the winter period, use "very cold climate" rated products. Never top up with water.

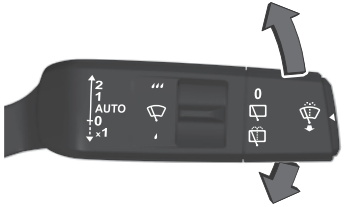
NOTE

With the wiper lever in position AUTO or INT, 1 or 2 and the ignition switched on after more than one minute: When the outside temperature is below +3°C, the windshield wiper activates only at a speed above 6 mph (10 km/h). When the outside temperature is above +3°C, the windshield wiper activates immediately.

NOTE

In position 1or 2, the wiping frequency is automatically reduced at a speed below 5 km/h and returns to the original frequency at a speed above 10 km/h.

Windshield wiper with rain sensor



2	: fast
1	: slow
AUTO	: automatic wiping with rain sensor

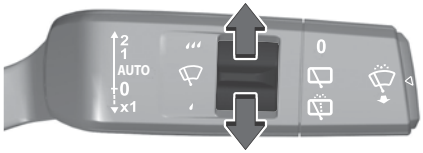
0 : off

x1 : single wipe

In **AUTO** position, the rain sensor detects the amount of water on the windshield and automatically regulates the frequency of the windshield wiper. If the ignition is switched off, automatic wiping mode is deactivated.

Do not use if the windshield is frozen. Switch off in car washes.

Adjustable sensitivity of the rain sensor



Wiper lever in position **AUTO**.

In **AUTO** position, the rain sensor detects the amount of water on the windshield and automatically regulates the frequency of the windshield wiper.

The sensitivity can be adjusted with the switch on the stalk.

- Push upwards to increase and downwards to decrease sensitivity.

Make sure the sensor is not blocked.

Windshield washer

- Pull the lever.

Washer fluid is sprayed onto the windshield and the wiper wipes a few times.

Maintenance position

This maintenance position is used while cleaning or replacing the wiper blades. It can also be useful, in wintry weather (ice, snow), to release the wiper blades from the windscreen.

1. Operating the wiper control stalk immediately after switching off the ignition will place the wiper blades in a vertical position.
2. Proceed with the desired operation or the replacement of the wiper blades.
3. Return the blades to the stowed position by switching on the ignition and operating the wiper stalk.

Wiper Blade Replacement ⇨ 248

Rear window wiper and washer

Rear window wiper

0 : off

: intermittent wiping

: screen wash

Do not use if the rear window is frozen or when a bicycle carrier is used. Switch off in car washes. The rear window wiper comes on automatically when the windshield wiper is switched on and reverse gear is engaged.

Rear window washer

- Select .

Washer fluid is sprayed onto the rear window and rear view camera and the wiper wipes as long as washing is selected.

Memory settings

Driver memory settings

Associated with the electrically-adjusted driver's seat, this function allows two driving positions to be memorised, to make these adjustments easier if there are frequent driver changes.
It records the electric adjustments made to the seat and door mirrors.
This also takes into account the electric settings for the extended head-up display.

Using buttons 1/2/M

1. Enter the vehicle and switch the ignition on.
2. Adjust the seat, the door mirrors and the extended head-up display.
3. Press button **M**, then press button **1** or **2** within 4 seconds.

An audible signal confirms the memorization. Memorizing a new position cancels the previous position.

Recalling a stored position

WARNING

While the seat is moving, take care that no person or object hinders the automatic movement of the seat.

With the ignition on or engine running

- Press button **1** or **2** to recall the corresponding position.

An audible signal sounds when adjustment is complete.
You can interrupt the current movement by pressing button **M** , **1** or **2** or by using one of the seat adjustment controls.
A stored position cannot be recalled while driving. The recalling of stored positions is deactivated 45 seconds after switching off the ignition.

Welcome function

The welcome function makes it easier to get in and out of the vehicle.
After switching off the ignition and opening the driver's door, the front seat moves backwards automatically and then stays in this position, ready for the next entry into the vehicle.
When switching on the ignition, the front seat moves forwards to the stored driving position.

It is configured in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

Exterior Lights

Main Lighting

WARNING

Do not look directly into the LED headlights. Risk of eye damage.

Turn the switch:

AUTO Automatic light control switches automatically between daytime running light and headlight

Low beam / High beam

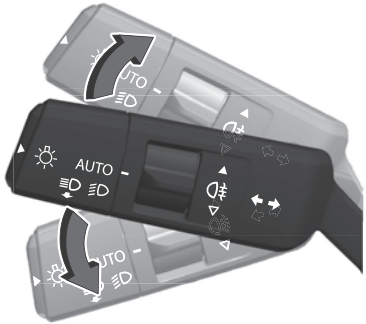
Daytime Running Lights

Daytime running lights increase visibility of the vehicle during daylight.

Tail Lights

Tail lights are illuminated together with low beam and daytime running lights.

Direction Indicators



- Left or right: lower or raise the lighting control stalk, beyond the point of resistance.

To activate three flashes, tap the indicator lever briefly without passing the resistance point.

Parking lights

(Depending on version)
Vehicle side marking by lighting the sidelamps on the traffic side only.

- Within one minute after switching off the ignition, operate the lighting control stalk upwards or downwards, depending on the side of the traffic (e.g. when parking on the right, push the lighting control stalk down to light up on the left).

This is confirmed by an audible signal and the lighting of the corresponding direction indicator lamp on the instrument panel.

- To switch off the parking lamps, return the lighting control stalk to the central position.

High Beam

- Pull the lever beyond the point of resistance to switch between low beam and high beam.
- Pull the lever up to the resistance point to flash the high beam.

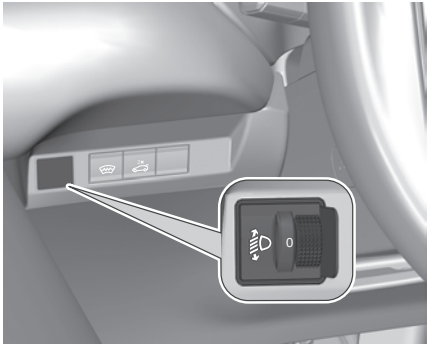
Automatic adjustment of headlights

This system automatically adjusts the height of the headlight beams according to different parameters (e.g. vehicle load).

In the event of a malfunction, this warning light illuminates on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

The system places the headlight beams in the lowest position.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Manual Headlights range adjustment



To avoid dazzling other road users, the height of the headlight beams must be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

0. **(Initial setting)**

Driver only or driver + front passenger

1. 5 people

2. 5 people + load in the trunk

3. Driver only + load in the trunk

4 **5, 6** Not used

Automatic Light Control

When the automatic light control function is switched on, the system switches between daytime running lights and low beam automatically depending on the external lighting conditions and information given by the wiper system.

General Recommendations for Automatic lighting systems.

The automatic lighting systems use a detection camera, located at the top of the windshield.

NOTE

Operating limits

- The system may be disrupted or not work correctly:
- When visibility conditions are poor (e.g. snowfall, heavy rain).
- If the windshield is dirty, misted-up or masked (e.g. sticker) in front of the camera.
- If the vehicle is facing highly reflective signs or safety barrier reflectors.

The system is not able to detect:

- Road users that do not have their own lighting, such as pedestrians.
- Vehicles with hidden lighting (e.g. Traveling behind a safety barrier on the motorway).
- Vehicles at the top or bottom of a steep slope, on winding roads, on crossroads.

WARNING

Maintenance.

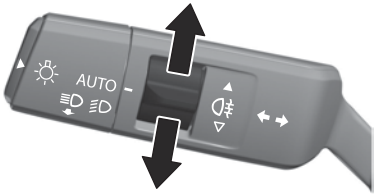
Clean the windscreen regularly, particularly the area in front of the camera.
The internal surface of the windscreen can also become misted around the camera.
In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.
Do not allow snow to accumulate on the bonnet or roof of the vehicle as this could obstruct the camera.

Automatic Headlight Activation

- Turn the switch in position: **AUTO**

During poor lighting conditions the low beam is switched on.
Additionally, headlights are switched on if the windshield wipers have been activated for several wipes.

Rear fog lights

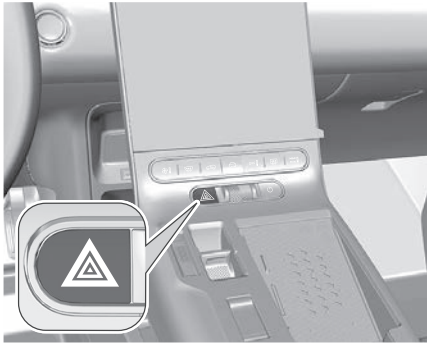


- Push the switch up to switch on the rear fog lights.
- Pull the switch down to switch off the rear fog lights.

NOTE

On MATRIX LED versions, switching on the rear fog lights activates modules on the front lighting that emulate front fog lights.

Hazard Warning Lights



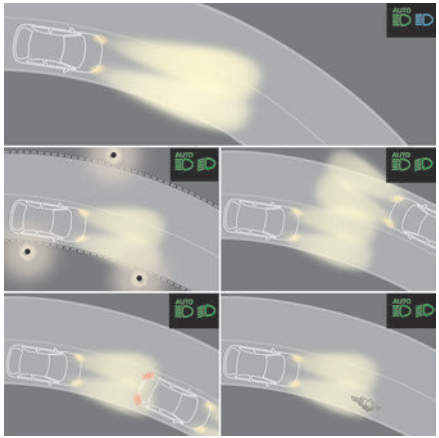
- Press the button to operate.

Automatic Headlights Dipping

WARNING

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations for automatic lighting systems**.

With the ring of the lighting control stalk in the **"AUTO"** position and the function activated on the touch screen, this system automatically switches between dipped and main beam headlamps, according to lighting and traffic conditions, using a camera located at the top of the windscreen.



WARNING

This system is a driving aid.
The driver remains responsible for the vehicle's lighting, its correct use in the prevailing light, visibility and traffic conditions, and for compliance with driving and vehicle regulations.

NOTE

The system becomes operational when the vehicle exceeds 28 mph (45 km/h). When the speed falls below 22 mph (35 km/h), the system is no longer operational.

Activation/Deactivation

It is configured in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

The state of the system is stored when the ignition is switched off.

NOTE

When the system detects thick fog, it temporarily deactivates the function.

Operation

If the ambient light level is very low and traffic conditions permit:

The main beam headlights come on automatically. These indicator lights illuminate on the instrument panel.

If the ambient light level is sufficient and/or the traffic conditions do not allow the main beam headlights to be lit:

The dipped beam headlights remain lit. These indicator lights illuminate on the instrument panel.

The function is deactivated if the foglamps are switched on.
When the foglamps are switched off, the function is automatically reactivated.

This indicator light goes out when the function is deactivated.

Pause

If the situation requires a change of headlamp beam, the driver can take over at any time.

- Switch the headlamps manually between dipped and main beam to pause the function.
  If the "AUTO" and "Dipped beam" indicator lamps were on, the system changes to main beam.

If the "AUTO" and "Main beam" indicator lamps were on, the system changes to dipped beam.

- To reactivate the function, once again switch the headlamps manually between dipped and main beam.

Fault

If a fault occurs with the system or the camera, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Adaptative Frontlight System

Available only on versions equipped with MATRIX LED headlights.
This function has several lighting modes, specific to each driving situation.

The intensity and direction of the main headlights and the modules vary so as to increase or reduce the range of the lighting.The modules tilt so as to expand and direct the light beam to increase or decrease the lighting up of the sides of the road.
The function shifts the light beam to the sides of the headlight to ensure better illumination in curves.

WARNING

This function is a driving aid which cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver who must continually adapt the driving of the vehicle to the visibility and traffic conditions.

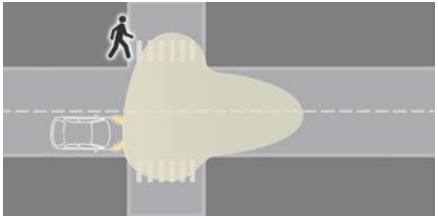
Activation/Deactivation

- Place the ring of the lighting control stalk in the **“AUTO”** position.

It is configured in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

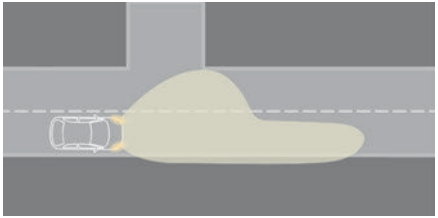
Operation

"Town" mode



The width of the beam is increased to better distinguish hazards on the side of the road (pedestrians, intersections).
By default, the function starts in "Country" mode.
After a few seconds, the function switches to "Town" mode as long as the speed is below 19 mph (30 km/h).
This mode is deactivated after a few seconds above 31 mph (50 km/h).

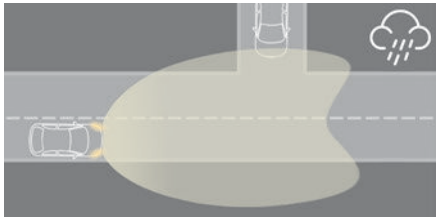
"Country" mode



This lighting provides a higher light beam, an increased intensity of the headlamps and a decreased intensity of the modules.

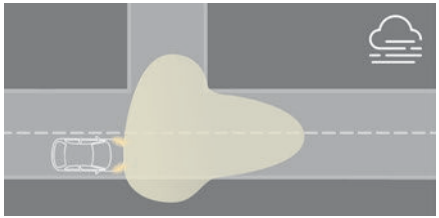
This mode is active as long as the rear foglamps are switched off and/or the front wipers are activated for less than 2 minutes.
Between 19 mph (30 km/h) and 43 mph (70 km/h), with the rear foglamps off and if the front wipers activated for more than 2 minutes continuously, the function switches to "Bad weather" mode.

"Bad weather" mode



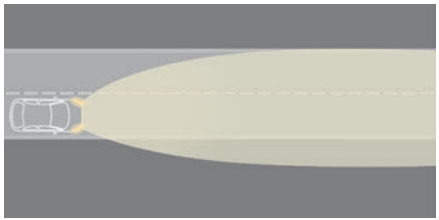
The beam is widened. The power of the modules is increased to enable the driver to see the road markings more easily, whilst the intensity of the main headlamps is reduced so as to improve the driver's vision (taking reflections caused by a wet road into account).
Between 19 mph (30 km/h) and 43 mph (70 km/h), with the rear foglamps off, front wipers activated for many minutes continuously, the function switches to "Country" mode.

"Foggy" mode



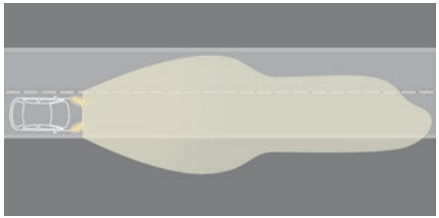
This mode is activated if the vehicle is moving at a speed between 0 and 43 mph (70 km/h) and the rear foglamps are on.Beyond 43 mph (70 km/h), the function switches to "Motorway" mode even if the rear foglamps are activated.

"Motorway" mode



At any time, this lighting mode can be triggered by the Automatic headlamp dipping function independent of the Adaptive Frontlight System function.
This mode automatically adapts to the speed and angle of the steering wheel.
Beyond 55 mph (90 km/h), the power and range of the lighting is maximised to best illuminate the length and width of the roadway.

"Boost motorway" mode



At any time, this lighting mode can be triggered by the Automatic headlamp dipping function independent of the Adaptive Frontlight System function.
This mode automatically adapts to the speed and angle of the steering wheel.
Beyond 70 mph (110 km/h), the power and range of the lighting is maximised to best illuminate the length and width of the roadway.

Static bending lighting

In a bend situation, the light beam provides an additional illumination of the road to the right or left when the vehicle speed is 43 mph (70 km/h) or less.
The system is triggered by curve radius thresholds and vehicle speed.
The phases of increasing and decreasing light intensity are carried out gradually.

Digital bending lighting

In a bend situation, the light beam moves around the curve to match the main direction of the driver's eyes, regardless of the vehicle speed and the bend radius.

The lateral intensities of the low beam are shifted in the appropriate direction of the curve.
The system activates the filled pixel elements to increase/extend the light beam area.

Matrix LED Headlights

NOTE

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations for automatic lighting systems.**

Available only on versions equipped with Full LED headlights with Matrix Beam function.
With the collar of the lighting control in the AUTO position, and the system activated in the Infotainment screen, the system automatically switches between the high and low beam modes, depending on the lighting conditions, and adapts the distribution of the headlights' light depending on traffic conditions using a camera located at the top of the windshield.
The MATRIX LED projector is made up of 2 LED modules. The high beam module is made up of pixel LEDs with individual intensity control. This technology allows to divide the light distribution in horizontal and vertical segments.
The high beam light can be full when the driving conditions allow or partial if vehicles are detected (ahead of the vehicle or in the oncoming lane.)
The MATRIX LED system allows to illuminate the road as much as possible without dazzling other road users.

WARNING

Do not cover the rain/sunshine sensor located at the top centre of the windshield behind the interior rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

WARNING

The driver remains responsible for the vehicle's lighting, its correct use in the prevailing light, visibility and traffic conditions, and for compliance with driving and vehicle regulations.

NOTE

The system is active from 28 mph (45 km/h) and deactivates below 22 mph (35 km/h).

NOTE

When driving in countries with opposite flow of traffic, the automatic lighting functions need to be deactivated as they are biased to optimize lighting for the flow of traffic where the vehicle is sold.
To deactivate the automatic functions :

- Go into Settings/Vehicle/Vehicle Lighting.
- Disable the adaptative lighting function.

Activation and Deactivation

- Place the outer section of the lighting control stalk in the **"AUTO"** position.

It is configured in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

The state of the system is stored when the ignition is switched off.
When deactivated, the lighting system changes to "Automatic illumination of lights" mode.

NOTE

It is recommended that you deactivate the function in foggy or snowy conditions or in case of heavy mist.
The function temporarily is deactivated when the system detects thick fog or when the foglamps are switched on manually. This is signalled by the indicator lamp going off on the instrument panel.

Pause

If the situation requires a change of headlight beam, the driver can take over at any time.

- Switch the dipped/main beam headlights manually to pause the function.

The lighting system changes to "Automatic illumination of lights" mode.

- To reactivate the function, manually switch the dipped/main beam headlights again.

Operation

If ambient light is low and the conditions allow, the high beams come on automatically. The highbeams may come on completely e.g if no vehicles are present.
Or partially e.g. if a vehicle is detected. In that case the LEDs will illuminate/be switched off progressively, segment by segment, depending on the driving conditions to maintain maximum illumination of the road without dazzling other road users.

These telltales will illuminate on the cluster

If the ambient light is enough or if the conditions do not permit the illumination of the high beams, the low beams will be maintained.

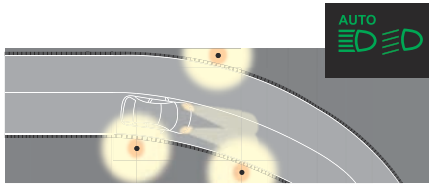
These telltales will illuminate on the cluster.

Using a camera, the system detects the driving conditions (brightness, lights from oncoming or followed vehicles, road turns) and adapts the beams of the main headlights accordingly.
The modules that make up the main beams switch on and off gradually, segment by segment, depending on the driving conditions detected. Nominal main beam lighting is restored as soon as the vehicle is no longer detected by the system.

The system is active but unavailable because the operating conditions are not reached.

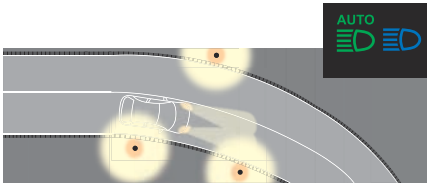
When other vehicles approach, only the segments facing the vehicles are switched off to form a "tunnel" around all the vehicles to avoid dazzling the drivers. The other segments stay illuminated.
This tunnel changes shape and position depending on the driving conditions.

Entering an illuminated area



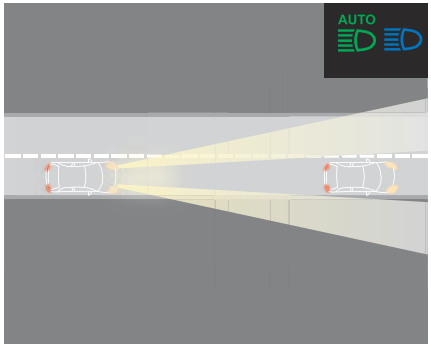
When entering an illuminated area (e.g. city), the segments of the headlights are progressively switched off from the outside in to switch to the low beam headlight mode.

Exiting an illuminated area



The segments of the headlights are progressively switched on to switch to the high beam headlight mode, with or without "tunnel" depending on the driving conditions.

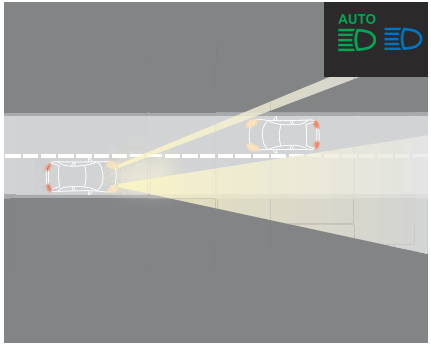
Followed vehicle



When approaching a vehicle from behind, only those light segments directed at the followed

vehicle go off, thereby creating a "tunnel" so as not to dazzle its driver.

Oncoming vehicle



When an oncoming vehicle approaches, only those light segments directed at this vehicle go off, thereby creating a "tunnel" during the duration of the approach.

Traffic Sign Anti Glare

Some traffic signs may be more dazzling to the driver due to the light reflection of LED headlights.
The system can modulate the light intensity sent to traffic signs and thus reduce the light reflection to avoid driver glare.

Fault in LED Headlight system

Illuminates on the cluster, accompanied by a message that the sensor is masked.

This is a normal behavior, which does not request the support of a qualified workshop. Stop the vehicle and check if the front camera is covered by dirt, mud, sand, snow, ice or anything preventing the sensing.
The system is operational again after the detection field has been cleaned.

Illuminates on the cluster, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.

A malfunction has occurred with the adaptive headlight lighting or the camera.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Guide Me Home

Automatic

With the ring of the lighting control stalk in the "**AUTO**" position and when the light is poor, the dipped beam headlights come on automatically when the ignition is switched off.

It is configured in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

Manual

- With the ignition off, pull the lighting control stalk toward you ("headlight flash") to activate/ deactivate the function. Manual guide-me-home lighting goes off automatically after a period of time.

Welcome lighting

When the vehicle is unlocked in low light conditions and the "Automatic illumination of headlights" function is activated, this system automatically switches on:

- On the outside, sidelights, dipped beam headlights and door mirror spotlights.
- Inside, courtesy lights and footwell lighting.

Door mirror spotlights

These spotlights facilitate access to the vehicle by lighting the ground near the front doors. The spotlights come on automatically:

- when the vehicle is unlocked.
- when a door is opened.

- when a request to locate the vehicle is received from the remote control.

They also come on with the welcome lighting and guide-me-home lighting functions.
They go off automatically after 30 seconds.

Interior Lights

Courtesy lights

1. Front reading light
2. Front courtesy light

The courtesy light comes on gradually:

- when the vehicle is unlocked.
- when the ignition is switched off.
- when a door is opened.
- when the remote control locking button is activated, in order to locate the vehicle.

It switches off:

- when the vehicle is locked.
- when the ignition is switched on.
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.

The front and rear touch-sensitive reading lights come on and go off at the same time as the courtesy light.

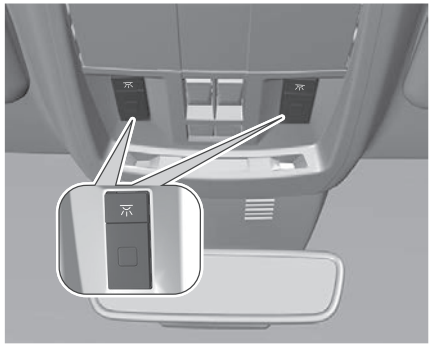
NOTE

A long press on the front touch-sensitive courtesy lamp completely deactivates it (confirmed by the "**OFF**" symbol).

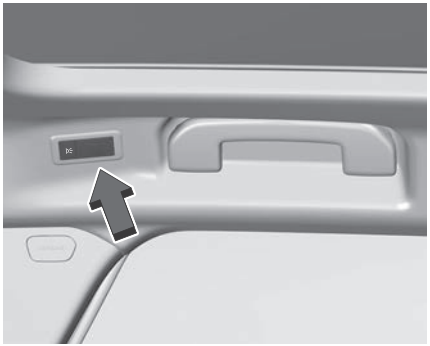
The front and rear touch-sensitive reading lamps still remain operational.

Reading lights

Front reading lights



Rear push reading lights



Interior ambient lighting

The interior ambient lighting casts soft, colored lighting in the passenger compartment.

Activation/deactivation and adjustment of the brightness are set via the **Settings > Brightness** touchscreen application.

The color is selected via the **Settings > Customization** touch screen application.

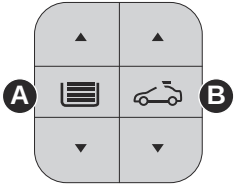
NOTE

If the color is changed, it is linked to the active driving mode.

Sunroof

The panoramic sunroof consists of a movable glass panel that slides over the roof and a blind that can be opened independently. Opening the sunroof automatically opens the blind.

- To operate the panoramic sunroof or the blind, use the buttons in the roof console.



A. Sunroof blind control

B. Sunroof control

The sunroof or blind can be operated by these buttons when the ignition is turned on (if the battery is charged enough), with the engine running, in STOP mode of Stop & Start, and up to 45 seconds after turning off the ignition.

Precautions

WARNING

Do not put your head or arms through the sunroof while the vehicle is moving - risk of serious injury!

WARNING

Do not operate the sunroof if transverse roof bars are fitted - risk of serious damage!
Do not place heavy loads on the movable glass panel of the sunroof.

WARNING

If the sunroof is wet, following a rain shower or washing the vehicle, wait until it is completely dry before operating it.
Do not operate the sunroof if it is covered by snow or ice - risk of damage!
Use only plastic scrapers to remove snow or ice from the sunroof.

WARNING

Regularly check the condition of the sunroof seals (e.g. presence of dust, dead leaves).
If using a car wash, check first that the roof is correctly closed and keep the high-pressure jet at least 30 centimetres from the seals.

WARNING

Never leave the vehicle with the sunroof open.

WARNING

Before operating the sunroof or blind control buttons, ensure that no object or person might prevent the movement.
Be particularly aware of children when operating the sunroof or blind.
If something is trapped when operating the sunroof or blind, you should reverse the movement of the sunroof or blind by pressing the control in question.
The driver must ensure that passengers use the sunroof and blind correctly.

Open or Close

- To open the sunroof or the blind, use the part of the button located towards the rear.
- To close the sunroof or the blind, use the part of the button located towards the front.

Operation of buttons

- Pressing a button beyond its point of resistance directly opens or closes the sunroof or blind fully.
- Pressing the button again stops the current movement.
- When holding a button (without going beyond the point of resistance), the move-

ment of the sunroof or blind stops when this button is released.
- When the sunroof is closed: pressing once without passing the point of resistance moves it to a partially open position.

General Hints

Safety function

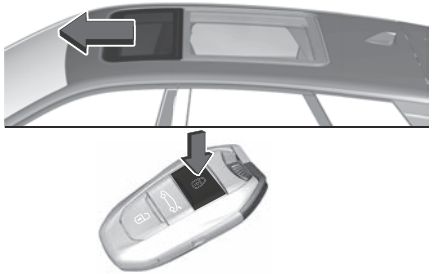
If the sunroof encounters resistance during automatic closing, it is immediately stopped and opened again.

Override safety function

Press and hold in the event of closing difficulties e.g frost. The sunroof will close with the anti-pinch function disabled.
Releasing the button will stop the movement.

Closing sunroof from outside

The sunroof can be closed remotely from outside the vehicle.



- Press and hold for more than 2 seconds to close the sunroof.
- Release the button to stop the movement.

Initializing the sunroof

If the automatic operation of the sunroof is not possible, the sunroof has to be initialized:

- Switch on ignition.
- Press and hold to close the sunroof.
  When it is completely closed, a short opening and closing motion takes place.
- Only release one second after this motion has finished.

Interior Storage - Interior Features

Glove box

- To open the glove box, lift the handle. With the ignition on, the glove box is lit when open.

It houses the front passenger airbag deactivation switch.

WARNING

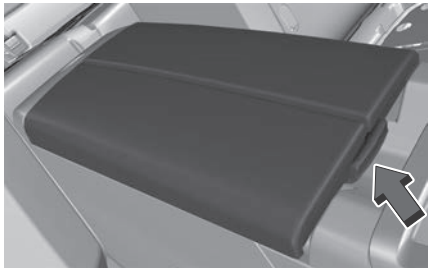
Never drive with the glove box open when a passenger is at the front. It may cause injury during sharp deceleration!

Cup holders

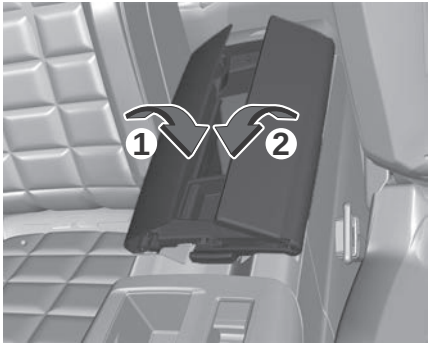
The armrest incorporates two cup holders, which are removable.

The cup holders have a removable reducer to be used depending on the diameter of the cans and cups.
The pen holder can also hold a smartphone.

Center console compartment



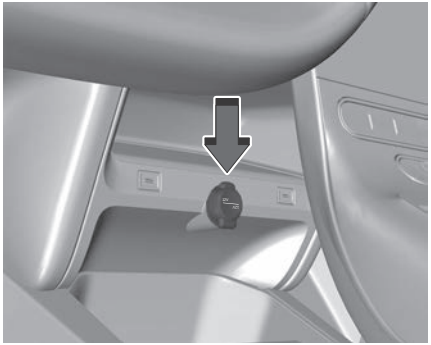
Slide armrest backwards, push button and fold upwards. Under the armrest there is a storage compartment.
The center console compartment contains an adjustable ventilation nozzle inside, which distributes cooled air.



A storage compartment is located in the center console.

12V power outlet

Do not exceed the maximum power consumption of 120 W.
The 12 V power outlet is deactivated in the event of low vehicle battery voltage.
Electrical accessories that are connected must comply with the electromagnetic compatibility requirements laid down in DIN VDE 40 839.
Do not connect any current-delivering accessories, e.g. electrical charging devices or batteries.
Do not damage the outlet by using unsuitable plugs.



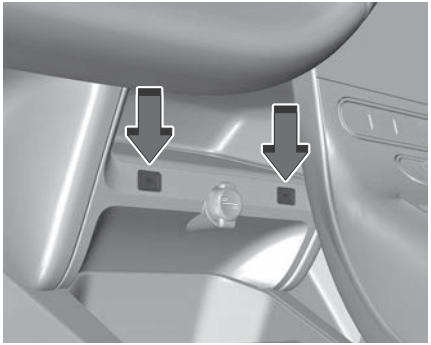
USB ports

These symbols determine the type of use of a USB socket:

Power supply and recharging.

Likewise, plus exchange of multimedia data with the audio system.

Likewise, plus use of smartphone applications with the touch screen.



USB sockets allow the connection of a portable device.

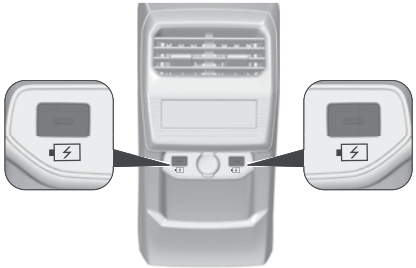
The left USB socket located at the front of the center console also allows a smartphone to be connected by Android Auto ® or CarPlay ® , enabling some smartphone applications to be used on the touch screen.

For best results, use a cable made or approved by the device manufacturer.
The right socket only allows charging.
These applications can be managed using the steering-mounted controls or the audio system controls.

NOTE

When the USB socket is used, the portable device charges automatically.
While charging, a message is displayed if the power drawn by the portable device exceeds the current supplied by the vehicle.
For more information about how to use this equipment, refer to the sections describing the audio and telematics systems.

Rear USB ports



Each USB socket is used only to power or recharge a portable device.

NOTE

While the vehicle is charging, the USB ports cannot be used, as they will not supply power.

Wireless smartphone charger

(Depending on version)
This system allows wireless charging of a portable device such as a smartphone, using the magnetic induction principle, in accordance with the Qi 1.1 standard.
The portable device to be charged must be compatible with the Qi standard, either by design or by using a compatible holder or shell.
A mat can also be used provided that it is approved by the Manufacturer. The charging area is identified by the Qi symbol.
The charger works with the engine running and with the Stop & Start system in STOP mode. Charging is managed by the smartphone.
With the Keyless Entry and Start system, the charger's operation may be briefly disrupted when a door is opened or the ignition is switched off.

Charging

- With the charging area clear, place a device in its center.

When the portable device is detected, the charger's indicator light illuminates green. It remains lit for the whole time that the battery is being charged.

NOTE

The system may not function properly if the smartphone is fitted with a protective shell.

WARNING

The system is not designed to charge multiple devices simultaneously.

WARNING

Do not leave metal objects (e.g.coins, keys, vehicle remote control) in the charging area while a device is being charged - Risk of overheating or interrupting the charging!

WARNING

When using applications for a long time in combination with wireless charging, some smartphones may switch to thermal safety and cause some functions to stop.

Checking operation

NOTE

While the vehicle is charging, the wireless charger cannot be used, as it will not supply power.

The state of the indicator light allows the operation of the charger to be monitored.

State of the indicator light	Meaning
Off	Engine switched off. No compatible devices detected. Charging complete.
Fixed green	Compatible portable device detected. Charging.
Flashing orange	Foreign object detected in the charging zone. Portable device not well centred in the charging zone.
Fixed orange	Malfunction of the portable device's battery meter. Device battery temperature too high. Charger malfunction.

If the indicator light is fixed orange:

- remove the device, then place it back in the centre of the charging zone.

or

- remove the device and try again after 15 minutes.

If the problem persists, have the system checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

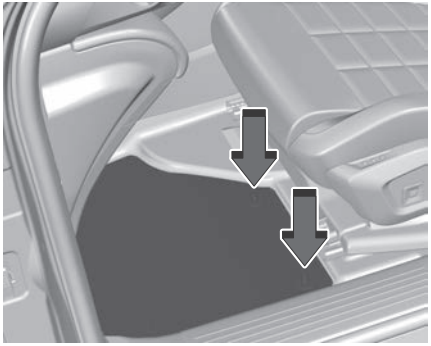
Sun visor

- With the ignition on, raise the concealing flap; the mirror is illuminated automatically.

This sun visor is also equipped with a ticket holder.

Mats

Fitting



When fitting it on the driver's side, only use the mountings present on the carpet (a "click" indicates proper locking).
The other mats are simply laid over the carpet.

Removing/refitting

- To remove it on the driver's side, move the seat backwards and unclip the fasteners.
- To refit it, position the mat and secure it by pressing down.
- Check that the mat is secured correctly.

WARNING

To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:

- Only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used.
- Never fit one mat on top of another.

The use of mats not approved by the Manufacturer may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control/speed limiter.
The approved mats have two fasteners located underneath the seat.

Load Compartment

Trunk fittings

1	Trunk light
2	12 V socket
3	Luggage retaining strap
4	Stowing rings
5	Rigid trunk floor or hinged trunk carpet
6	Storage well

NOTE

The stowing rings are designed to secure luggage using different types of retaining nets or suitable straps.
For more information, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

2-position trunk floor

(Depending on version)
This 2-position floor allows the trunk volume to be optimised using the lateral stops located on the sides:

- High position **(100 kg max.)**: to obtain a flat floor up to the front seats, when the rear seats are folded down.
- Low position **(150 kg max.)**: maximum trunk volume.

NOTE

On certain versions, the adjustable boot floor cannot be fitted in the low position.

To change the height:

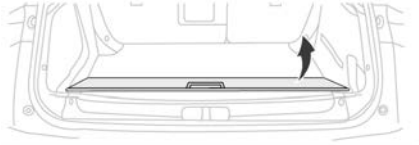
- Lift and pull the floor towards you using its central handle, then use the lateral stops to move it.
- Push the floor all the way forwards to place it in the desired position.

To keep it in the inclined position:

- From the high position, lift the floor towards the load space cover.

- Engage it in the inclined position in the lateral stops to secure it in this position.

Storage well



- Lift the trunk floor as far as possible or lift the hinged trunk carpet (depending on version) to access the storage well.

Depending on version, it includes:

- A hazard warning triangle.
- A temporary puncture repair kit with the tool kit.
- A spare wheel with the tool kit.
- The traction battery charging cables (Electric).

To facilitate the use of the emergency equipment, the panel can be hung on grommets on the sides of the trunk walls to keep the tools compartment open.

Trunk light

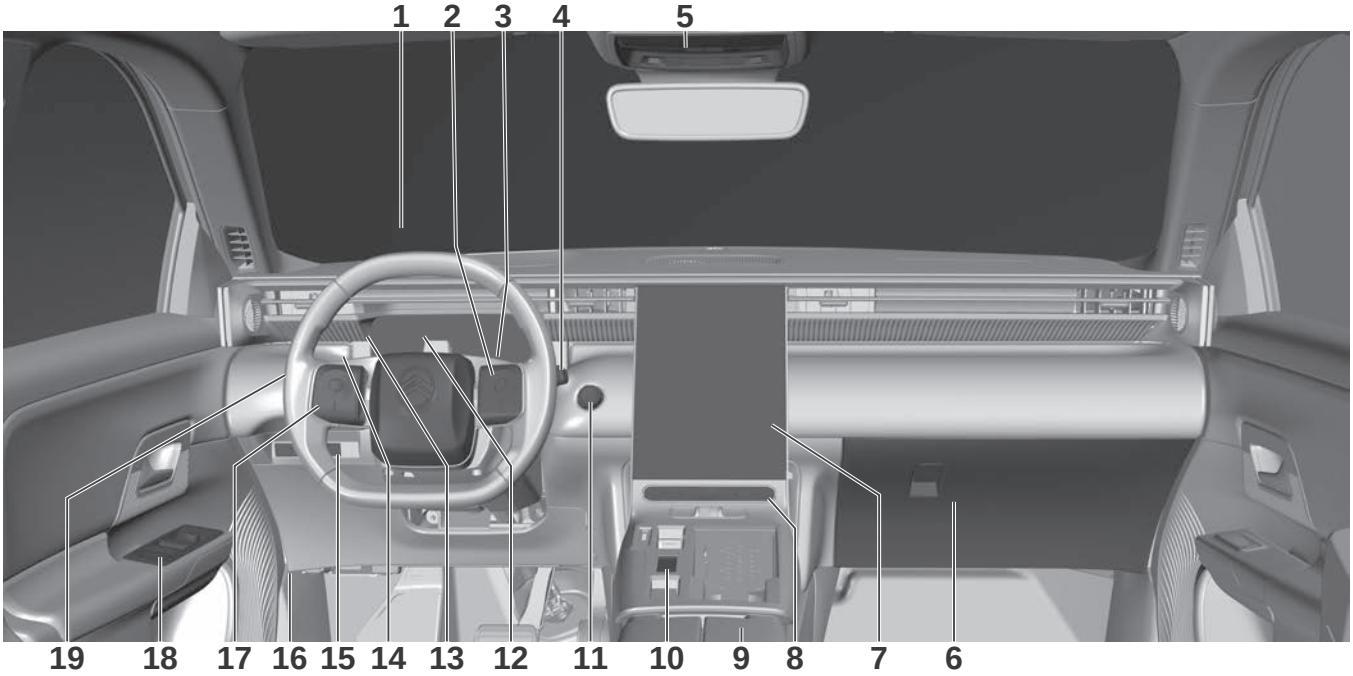
It comes on automatically when the trunk is opened and goes off automatically when the tailgate is closed.
The lighting time varies according to the circumstances:

- When the ignition is off, approximately 10 minutes.
- In energy saving mode, approximately 30 seconds.
- With the engine running, unlimited.

DASHBOARD INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROL

Instrument Panel

These illustrations and descriptions are provided for information. The presence and location of some elements vary depending on the version or trim level.



1 Extended Head Up Display

2 Steering wheel infotainment controls

3 Steering wheel right paddle

4 Wiper and washer control stalk

5 Roof console, sunroof controls, eCall, assistance call

6 Glovebox

7 Infotainment Display

8 Central controls

9 Armrest, Central Storage compartment

10 Drivetrain controls

11 Start/Stop Switch

12 Driver Monitoring Camera

13 Cluster

14 Steering wheel left paddle

15 Side control bar

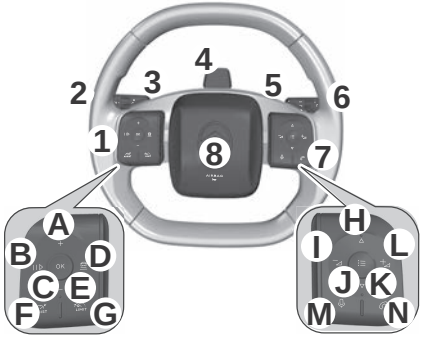
16 Hood release lever

17 ADAS Controls

18 Window controls, mirror adjustment, rear door child lock

19 External lighting control stalk

Steering Wheel Cluster Controls



1 ADAS controls

2 Lighting control stalk

3 "-" paddle

4 Driver monitoring camera

5 "+" paddle

6 Wipers and washers control stalk

7 Infotainment controls

8 Horn

A Increase the set speed

B Pause/Resume the speed limiter or cruise control with the stored set speed, confirmation of vehicle relaunch after an automatic stop (Adaptative Cruise Control with Stop&Go function)

C Activation of the speed limiter or the cruise control using the stored set speed, confirmation of the speed suggested by the traffic sign recognition function, overtaking validation

D Display and set the following distance with the preceding vehicle (Adaptative Cruise Control)

E Decrease the set speed

F Cycle between Adaptive Cruise Control/ Drive Assist Plus 2.0 /OFF

G Activate/Deactivate Speed Limiter

H Up: Selection of next media/radio/ smartphone

I Press: Lower volume. Hold: Mute

J Display lists, confirm selection on Infotainment Screen

K Down: Selection of previous media/ radio/smartphone

L Increase volume

M Short press: Vehicle voice commands Long press: Screen mirroring voice commands

N Phone pickup/hanging up, call journal of the Phone app

Lateral Control Bar

Depending on version, different controls can be present.

1 Headlight adjustment.

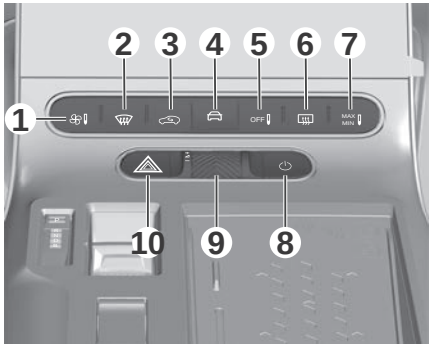
2 Electric windshield defrost.

3 Power tailgate (push twice to open)/Lateral View (depending on version)

4 Fuel flap opening (PHEV).

5 Volumetric alarm disable (Right Hand Drive vehicles only).

Central Control Bar



1 Climate control app shortcut.

2 Windshield defrost.

3 Climate control air recirculation.

4 ADAS shortcut.
Short press: opens ADAS app.
Long press: deactivates preselected ADAS.

5 Climate control OFF.

6 Rear windshield defrost.

7 Climate control max setting.

8 Infotainment Display Power button.

9 Volume control.

10 Hazard warning lights switch.

Information displayed on the instrument panel

The information displayed on the instrument panel (e.g. warning lights, indicators) may have a fixed or variable location depending on the page or the driving aid activated.
For the functions that have indicator lights for both operation and deactivation, there is only one dedicated location.

NOTE

Display language and units. These depend on the touch screen settings. When travelling abroad, the speed must be shown in the official units of the country you are driving in (mph, miles or km/h, km).

Choice of the displayed page

By default, pages are memorised in the instrument panel.

- Press the button located at the end of the lighting control stalk to scroll through the different pages.

The new page is applied immediately.

> **NOTE**
>
> When a message is displayed in a temporary window, pressing this button will cause this window to disappear immediately.

Settings for displayed pages

The available settings operations are: addition, deletion and layout of pages and widgets.
It is possible to memorise up to five pages.
Each page may contain **1** or **2** widgets:

- With **1** widget, large display in central position.
- With **2** widgets, reduced display in side position.

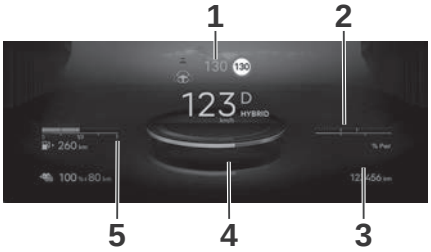
The colour for each driving mode may be personalised. A default setting is suggested.
The setting also matches the interior ambient lighting (depending on availability).

The settings are changed via the **Settings > Customization** touch screen application.

For more information on **Personalisation - Instrument Panel**, refer to the corresponding section for the Audio equipment and telematics systems.

Instrument Cluster

The instrument panel displays all the information the driver needs about the status of the vehicle's various systems.
This information appears in the form of warning and indicator lights and messages.
The instrument panel is in the form of a fully digital screen.
The digital instrument panel can be personalized using a page system.
Depending on the page displayed, certain information is hidden or presented differently.



1 ADAS (if the function is activated), display of speed limit signs

2 Rev counter (rpm) (ICE)
Power indicator (Hybrid 48V/PHEV/BEV)

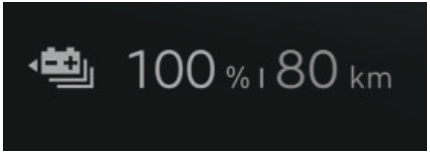
3 Total distance recorder (miles or km)

4 Current speed
Status of the gearbox
Active driving mode

5 Fuel gauge and remaining range (miles or km) (ICE/Hybrid 48V/PHEV)
Battery charge level and remaining range (PHEV/BEV)

High-voltage Battery Charge Status

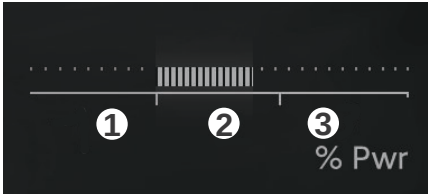
Displays the remaining charge level of the traction battery and the estimated range.



Power Indicator

The power indicator shows in real time the power demanded from the vehicle.

There are 3 zones:



1 **CHARGE**

2 **ECO**

3 **POWER**

For Hybrid 48 V versions

POWER	**High power demand, using the combined capabilities of the petrol engine and the electric motor.** The slider is located in this zone during more dynamic driving phases when high levels of performance are being demanded.
ECO	**Optimal use of energy (internal combustion or electric).** The slider is located in this zone when driving under electric power and when optimal use is being made of the petrol engine, both accessible by adopting a suitable driving style.
CHARGE	**Energy recovery for recharging the traction battery.** The slider is located in this zone during deceleration: taking your foot off the accelerator pedal or braking.

NOTE

When the ignition is switched on and before the engine is started, the power indicator only displays **"OFF"**.

For PHEV versions

POWER	**High power demand, using the combined capabilities of the petrol engine and the electric motor.** The slider is located in this zone during more dynamic driving phases when high levels of performance are being demanded.
ECO	**Optimal use of energy (internal combustion or electric).** The slider is located in this zone when driving under electric power and when optimal use is being made of the petrol engine, both accessible by adopting a suitable driving style. A symbol indicates the threshold at which the petrol engine will restart. The driver can therefore moderate their acceleration to remain in electric driving mode.
CHARGE	**Energy recovery for recharging the traction battery.** The slider is located in this zone during deceleration: taking your foot off the accelerator pedal or braking.

For BEV versions

CHARGE	Traction battery charging during deceleration and braking
ECO	Moderate energy consumption and optimized driving range
POWER	Energy consumption by the drive train during acceleration

NEUTRAL

When the ignition is switched on, the vehicle's BEV drive train neither consumes nor generates energy; after sweeping over the indicator, the cursor returns to its "neutral" position: between **ECO** and **CHARGE**.

NOTE

With the ignition off, opening the driver's door activates the indicator, which moves

to the "neutral" position: between **ECO** and **CHARGE**.

Gear indicator

(Depending on engine)
This system is designed to reduce fuel consumption by recommending the most suitable gear.

Operation

Depending on the driving situation and the vehicle's equipment, the system may recommend skipping one or more gears.
Gear engagement recommendations are not to be considered mandatory. Indeed, the configuration of the road, the traffic density and safety remain determining factors when choosing the best gear. Therefore, the driver remains responsible for deciding whether or not to follow the system's advice.
The system cannot be deactivated.

NOTE

The system is only active in mode **M** of the automatic gearbox.

The information appears on the instrument panel, in the form of an arrow and the recommended gear.

NOTE

The system adapts the gear change instructions according to the driving conditions (e.g. slope, load) and driving style (e.g. power demand, acceleration, braking).
The system never suggests:
– engaging first gear.
– engaging reverse gear.

Speedometer

Indicates vehicle speed.

Odometer

The total distance recorder measures the total distance traveled by the vehicle since its initial registration.
With the ignition on, the total distance is displayed at all times. It remains displayed for 30 seconds after switching off the ignition. It is displayed when the driver's door is opened, and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

NOTE

When travelling abroad, you may have to change the distance units (miles or km): the displayed speed must be in the local country's official unit (mph or km/h).
The unit is changed via the screen's configuration application, with the vehicle stationary.

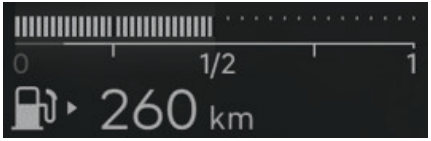
NOTE

The total distance recorder is only accessible from the trip computer.

For more information on the **Trip computer**, refer to the corresponding section.

Fuel level gauge

Displays the remaining fuel level in the tank as well as the estimated range.



Trip Computer

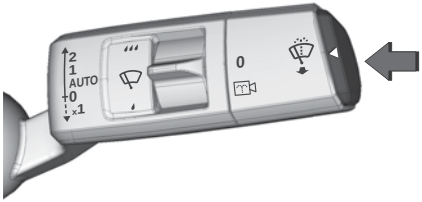
Displays information related to the current trip (e.g. range, average consumption, average speed, distance traveled).

1 Average speed.

2 Average fuel/energy consumption

3 Distance traveled

Displaying the different tabs



- Pressing the button located on the end of the wiper control stalk displays the following tabs in turn:

Current information:

- Instantaneous energy consumption
- Distance traveled in electric mode

Trips "**1**" then "**2**":

- Average consumption
- Average speed.
- Distance traveled.

End of trip page

(Depending on version)
When the ignition is switched off, the instrument panel automatically displays an additional page of the trip computer that recapitulates information about the last trip.

The end of trip page contains the following information:

- Range.
- Trip time.
- Distance travelled.
- Percentage of the current journey travelled in all-BEV driving mode (MHEV or PHEV).
- Average consumption.

Trip reset

- When the desired trip is displayed, press the button on the end of the wiper control stalk for more than 2 seconds.

Trips **"1"** and **"2"** are independent and are used in the same way.
On BEV vehicles, with the battery level above 95%, resetting both trips within 30 seconds will reset the Triple Range Display ⇨ 75

Range Display (BEV)

The cluster can display multiple range values which are calculated using different algorithms to give the driver the best information regarding the management of the vehicle's remaining energy.
Two of these values are calculated using the **WLTP** method : **Min** and **Max** range

The **WLTP** (Worldwide Harmonized Light Vehicles Test Procedure) test is the global standard used to measure fuel consumption, range (for electric vehicles), and exhaust emissions of cars under ideal conditions (23°C, thermal comfort off, average speed of 46 km/h in a combined cycle).

Triple Range Display

The range widget shows three values:

MIN	Worst case scenario with high energy consumption (highway driving in low temperatures).
Main Range	Estimated range using the average energy consumption from previous trips. Also permanently shown on the cluster.
MAX	Best case scenario with minimum energy consumption. (WLTP Range)

After a Trip Computer Reset, the **Main Range** will match the **Max** value until energy consumption values are calculated again. ⇨ 75
These values provide an estimate of the overall range of the vehicle depending on the remaining charge level.

The widget can be selected from the relevant sub-menu page by using the controls on the **wiper stalk** to scroll through the available widgets. Depending on vehicle configuration, it can remain permanently displayed.

NOTE

When towing a trailer or caravan with the electrical connection activated, the displayed WLTP range may be significantly reduced. In some conditions, the actual range may be one third of the WLTP reference range or less.

NOTE

Actual driving range may vary significantly depending on driving style and external conditions.
Minimising heavy accelerations and braking and using climate control functions sparingly will improve driving range.

Vehicle Onboard Monitoring Data

The vehicle's On Board Monitoring system keeps track of multiple parameters relating to the health and the life of the vehicle.
To access the data :

- Go into **Settings > Vehicle** application on the touch screen.
- Then select **Safety > Diagnostics.**

Table 1: Available Statistics

Statistic	Unit	Definition
Lifetime		
Lifetime NOx Emissions	mg/mi (mg/km)	Overall average NOx emissions per mile (km).
Lifetime Fuel/Energy Consumption	mpg (L/100km) mi/kWh (kWh/100km)	Overall fuel efficiency. (ICE/MHEV/PHEV) Overall electrical efficiency. (PHEV/BEV)
Transferred Energy as a Virtual Distance	mi (km)	Energy transferred to outboard devices via bidirectional plug expressed as an equivalent travelled distance.
Regulatory NOx Emissions Limit	mg/mi (mg/km)	Reference limit for NOx emissions
Traction Battery State of Health	%	
Last trip		
Consumption	gal (L), mpg (L, L/100km)	Amount of fuel used on the last trip, fuel efficiency (ICE/MHEV/PHEV).
	kWh, mi/kWh (kWh, km/kWh)	Amount of electricity used on the last trip, electrical efficiency on the last trip. (PHEV/BEV).
NOx Emissions	mg, mg/mi mg, mg/km	Amount of NOx emitted during the last trip. NOx efficiency during the last tip.

Manual Test

This function allows you to check certain indicators and display the alerts log.

The test is launched in the **Settings>Vehicle** touch screen application

Then select **Safety>Diagnostics.**
The following information is displayed on the instrument panel:

- Tire pressures.
- Engine oil level.
- Next service due.
- Current alerts.
- On-board Monitoring Data

Ecodriving : Additional Functions (PHEV, BEV)

All of these features help to optimise the use of rechargeable hybrid and electric vehicles. By programming a guidance in the on-board navigation system, the PHEV/BEV drive sys-

tem manages the use of the traction battery throughout the journey.

Geofencing (PHEV)

While driving, the vehicle constantly monitors traffic in low-emission zones or restricted traffic zones.
When entering one of these zones, the vehicle automatically switches to BEV driving mode if the traction battery's charge level is sufficient.

Trip Planner (BEV)

By programming a guidance in the on-board navigation system, the system researches the charging stations required for the journey to be made.
Depending on the progress of the journey and the state of charge of the traction battery, the system continuously updates the stops to be made for recharging.

Widgets

The cluster and the eHUD (if equipped) can be customized to display different widgets.
The cluster can display:

- Tachometer
- Navigation info
- Trip Computer
- Power Flow
- Speed only

The eHUD can display, in addition to fixed info such as speed and speed limit sign recognition:

- Navigation info
- ADAS

The available settings operations are: addition, deletion and layout of pages and widgets.
Each page can contain a widget, displayed on the central portion of the cluster
It is possible to memorize up to 5 pages.
Depending on the page displayed, some information is hidden or presented differently.

1 Widget space

All-electric driving mode

The charge level of the traction battery and the remaining range in electric driving mode are permanently displayed when the vehicle is switched on.

WARNING

The range displayed depends on the use of the vehicle (type of driving and speed), the outside temperature and the activated comfort equipment.

Associated warning lights

Two successive alert levels indicate that the energy available has dropped to a low level:

1st level: Reserve

The state of charge of the traction battery is low.
nd indicator in the red zone, accompanied by an audio signal.

- View the remaining range on the instrument panel.
- Put the vehicle on charge as soon as possible.

2nd level: Critical

The state of charge of the traction battery is critical.
Steady, together with the reserve warning light, accompanied by an audio signal.
You must put the vehicle on charge.

WARNING

The remaining range is no longer calculated. The drive train power gradually decreases.

The heating and air conditioning are switched off (even if the needle or cursor indicating their consumption is not at the **"ECO"** position).

Warning Lights, Indicators, and Messages

Overview

Displayed as symbols, the warning and indicator lights inform the driver of the occurrence of a malfunction (warning lights) or of the operating status of a system (operation or deactivation indicator lights). Certain lights light up in two ways (fixed or flashing) and/or in several colours.

(1) Only for information.

(2) Information and warning.

(3) Seek the assistance of a workshop.

(4) Stop engine and seek the assistance of a workshop.

(5) Have the cause of the fault remedied immediately by a workshop.

Associated warnings

The illumination of a light may be accompanied by an audible signal and/or a message displayed in a screen.
Relating the type of alert to the operating status of the vehicle allows you to determine whether the situation is normal or whether a fault has occurred: refer to the description of each light for further information.

When the ignition is switched on

Certain red or orange warning lamps come on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. These warning lamps should go off as soon as the engine is started.
For more information on a system or a function, refer to the corresponding section.

List of warning and indicator lights

Red warning and indicator lights

Major Fault - Stop The Vehicle

Steady, associated with another warning light, accompanied by the display of a message and an audio signal.

A serious fault with the engine, braking system, power steering or automatic gearbox or a major electrical fault has been detected (4).

Traction battery overheating (MHEV, PHEV or BEV)

Steady, combined with the STOP warning light, accompanied by the display of a message and an audio signal.
The traction battery's temperature is too high.

Carry out (**4**).

Evacuate the vehicle as quickly as possible and move to a safe distance.

Traction battery malfunction (MHEV, PHEV or BEV)

Fixed.
The temperature of the cooling system is too high.

Steady, combined with the Service warning light, accompanied by the display of a message.
The traction battery has a fault.

Carry out (**4**).

Maximum coolant temperature

Steady. The temperature of the cooling system is too high.

Engine oil pressure too low (ICE, MHEV, PHEV)

Steady.
There is a fault with the engine lubrication system (5).

System malfunction (MHEV, PHEV or BEV)

Steady.
A fault involving the electric motor or traction battery has been detected. If affecting the vehicle performance, carry out (5) or (4).

Cable connected (PHEV or BEV)

Steady when the ignition is switched on (**2**).

The charging cable is connected to the vehicle's connector.

Steady when the ignition is switched on, accompanied by a message.

It is not possible to start the vehicle while the charging cable is connected to the vehicle's connector.
Disconnect the charging cable and close the flap.

12 V battery charge

Steady.
The battery charging circuit is faulty (e.g. dirty terminals, loose or severed alternator belt).

Carry out (4).
If the electric parking brake stops working, immobilise the vehicle:

- With the automatic gearbox or drive selector, fit the chock against one of the wheels.

Clean and tighten the terminals. If the warning lamp does not go off when the engine is started, carry out (5).

Braking

Steady.
The brake fluid level in the braking circuit has dropped significantly.

Carry out (4), then top up with fluid that complies with the manufacturer's recommendations. If the problem persists, carry out (5).

Steady.
The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system is failure.
Carry out (4) and then (5).

The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system is faulty.
Carry out (4) and then (5).

Electric parking brake

Steady.
The electric parking brake is applied.

Flashing.
Application/release is faulty.

Carry out (4): park on flat ground (on a level surface).

With an automatic gearbox or drive selector, select mode **P.**

Switch off the ignition and carry out (5).

Power steering

Steady, accompanied by an audio signal. The power steering has a fault (**4**).

Door(s) open

Steady, associated with a message identifying the access.
A door or the trunk is not properly closed (2).

An audio signal supplements the alert if the speed is higher than 6 mph (10 km/h).

Seat belts not fastened/unfastened

Steady or flashing, accompanied by an increasing audible signal.
A seat belt has not been fastened or has been unfastened.

Excess Exhaust Emissions Driver Warning System Fault

Steady, accompanied with a message and an audible chime each time the vehicle is switched on.
The remaining distance and number of starts have elapsed and the vehicle is prevented from starting.
Consult a dealer or qualified workshop before the displayed remaining distance or number of starts reaches 0 and the vehicle becomes unable to start.

Orange warning and indicator lights

Service

Temporarily on, accompanied by the display of a message.

One or more minor faults, for which there is/are no specific warning light(s), have been detected. Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed on the instrument panel.
You may be able to deal with some faults yourself, such as changing the battery in the remote control.
For other faults, such as with the tire underinflation detection system, carry out (3).

Steady, accompanied by the display of a message.

One or more major faults, for which there is/are no specific warning indicator(s), have been detected. Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed on the instrument panel, then carry out (3).

Steady, accompanied by the message "**Parking brake fault**".

Automatic release of the electric parking brake is unavailable. Attempt the release procedure as indicated in ⇨ 80
If successful, carry out (3), otherwise carry out (4).

Braking system fault

Steady. A minor fault with the braking system has been detected.

Drive carefully.
Carry out (3).

Malfunction (with electric parking brake)

Steady, accompanied by the message "**Parking brake failure**".

The vehicle cannot be immobilized with the engine running.
If manual application and release commands are not working, the electric parking brake control is failure.

The automatic functions must be used at all times and are automatically reactivated in the event of a failure with the control.
Carry out (2).

Steady, accompanied by the message "**Parking brake failure**".

The electric parking brake is failure: manual and automatic functions may not be working.
When stationary, to immobilize the vehicle:

- Pull the electric parking brake control and hold it for approximately 7 to 15 seconds, until the indicator light lights up on the instrument panel.

If this procedure does not work, secure the vehicle:

- Park on a level surface.
- Select mode **P** on the automatic gearbox, then place the supplied chock against one of the wheels.

Then carry out (2).

Automatic functions of the electric parking brake (OFF)

Steady
A minor fault with the braking system has been detected.

Under normal conditions, the electric parking brake is automatically applied when the engine is switched off, and automatically released upon first use of the accelerator pedal.
The indicator light signals a deactivation, which can be either intentional (2), or due to a possible malfunction (3).
If automatic application or release of the electric parking brake is no longer possible due to a possible malfunction, you may first attempt the following reset procedure (2):

- Start the engine.
- Use the control to apply the electric parking brake.
- Take your foot fully off the brake pedal.

- Hold the control pressed in the release direction for between 10 and 15 seconds.
- Release the control.
- Depress and hold the brake pedal.
- Pull the control in the application direction for 2 seconds.
- Release the control and the brake pedal.

If the automatic parking brake indicator remain illuminated, carry out (3).

Anti-lock braking system (ABS) fault

Steady. The anti-lock braking system has a fault.

The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at moderate speed, then carry out (3).

Automatic headlight dipping or MATRIX LED VISION fault

Steady, accompanied by an audio signal and a message.

A malfunction of the MATRIX LED VISION headlights or of the camera has been detected.
Carry out (2).

Airbags

Steady, associated with the Service warning light and accompanied by the display of a message.

One of the airbags or seat belt pyrotechnic pretensioners is faulty.
Carry out (3).

Power steering

Steady.
A minor fault in the power steering has been detected.

Drive carefully at moderate speed, then carry out (**3**).

Dynamic stability control (DSC)/Anti-slip regulation (ASR)

Steady.
The system is deactivated.

The Traction Control system is reactivated automatically when the vehicle is started, and at speeds above approximately 31 mph (50 km/h).
At speeds below 31 mph (50 km/h), it can be reactivated manually.

Flashing.
ESC/ASR system regulation is activated in the event of a loss of grip or trajectory.

Steady.
The ESC/ASR system has a fault.

Carry out (**3**).

Emergency brake malfunction (with electric parking brake)

Steady, Parking brake fault.
Emergency braking does not deliver optimal performance.

If automatic release is not available, use manual release or carry out (**3**).

Rear fog lights

Steady. The lights are on.

Low Traction battery level (PHEV, BEV)

Low traction battery level (Electric)

Steady, accompanied by an audio signal.

The state of charge of the traction battery is low.View the remaining range.Put the vehicle on charge as soon as possible.

Anti-slip Regulation

Flashing.

ESC/ASR system regulation is activated in the event of a loss of grip or trajectory.

Steady.

The ESC/ASR system has a fault.
Carry out (3).

Anti-slip regulation (ASR) deactivated

Steady. The system is deactivated.

The Traction Control system is reactivated automatically when the vehicle is started, and at speeds above approximately 31 mph (50 km/h).
At speeds below 31 mph (50 km/h), it can be reactivated manually.

Low fuel level (ICE, MHEV, PHEV)

Steady, with the reserve level shown in red, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message.

Fill up the fuel tank as soon as possible.

Engine self-diagnostics system

Flashing.
The engine management system has a fault.

There is a risk that the catalytic converter will be destroyed.
You **must** carry out **(2)**.

Stop & Start OFF (ICE, MHEV)

Steady, accompanied by a a message.

The Stop & Start system has been deactivated manually.
The engine will not switch off at the next traffic stop.
Reactivate the system via the touch screen.

Steady. The Stop & Start system has been deactivated automatically.

The engine will not switch off at the next traffic stop, if the exterior temperature is:

- below 0°C.
- above +35°C.

For more information, refer to the **Starting & Operating** section.

Flashing then steady, accompanied by a message.

Flashing then steady, accompanied by a message.
The system has a fault.
Carry out (3).

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Steady.

The pressure in one or more tires is too low.
Check the pressure of the tires as soon as possible.
Reinitialize the detection system after adjusting the pressure.

Under-inflation warning light flashing then steady and Service warning light steady.

The tire pressure monitoring system is faulty.
Under-inflation detection is no longer monitored.
Check the tire pressures as soon as possible and carry out (3).

Collision Risk Alert/Active Safety Brake

Flashing.
The system activates and brakes the vehicle momentarily to reduce the speed of collision with the vehicle in front.

For more information, refer to the relevant topic in the ⇨ 181

Steady, accompanied by the display of a message.

AEB system has been intentionally deactivated via the touch screen.

Steady, accompanied by a message and an audio signal.

AEB system has a malfunction. Drive carefully, carry out (3).

Steady, accompanied by the display of the message "**Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual**".

The sensor is masked. Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition. Clean the front camera.

Steady.
AEB system has a malfunction requiring service.
If these warning lights both illuminates again after the engine is switched off and restarted, carry out (3).

Steady.
The system is deactivated temporarily because the driver and/or front passenger (depending on version) has been detected as present but the corresponding seat belt has not been fastened.

Lane keeping assist

Flashing.
You are about to cross a broken lane marking without operating the direction indicators.

The system is activated, then corrects the trajectory if it detects a risk of unintentionally crossing a line or hard shoulder (depending on version).

For more information, refer to the **Starting & Operating** section.

Steady.
The system has been automatically deactivated or placed on standby.

Steady, accompanied by the display of the message "**Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual**".

The sensor is masked.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Clean the front camera.

Steady.
The system has a fault.
Carry out (3).

Tortoise mode

Steady. The state of charge of the traction battery is critical.

The engine power gradually decreases.
You must put the vehicle on charge.
If the warning light remains lit, carry out (2).

Parking sensors

Flashing.
The system detects an obstacle.

Steady, accompanied by the display of a message and an audio signal.

The system has a fault.
Carry out (3).

Steady, accompanied by the display of the message "**Parking Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual** ".

The sensor is masked.

Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Clean the front and/or rear sensors.

Put foot on brake

Steady.
Insufficient or no pressure on the brake pedal.

With the engine running, before releasing the parking brake, to move out of mode **P** on an automatic gearbox.

Driver Attention Warning by Camera (Distraction detection)

Steady.
The system is deactivated.

Steady, accompanied by the display of a message and an audio signal.
The system has a fault.
Carry out (3).

Steady, accompanied by the display of the message "**Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual**".

The sensor is masked.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Clean the front camera.

Road signs recognition

Steady, accompanied by the display of a message and an audio signal.
The system has a fault. Carry out (3).

Steady, accompanied by the display of the message "**Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual**".

The sensor is masked.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Clean the front camera.

Pedestrian horn

Steady.
Pedestrian horn system has a failure (3).

Excess Exhaust Emissions Driver Warning System Light

Steady, accompanied by an audible chime and a message at regular intervals and each time the vehicle is switched on or off.
When only a number of starts remains, the message is displayed continously.

The **Excess Exhaust Emissions Driver Warning System (EEEDWS)** has detected and confirmed either excessive emissions from the vehicle or a fault/tampering with itself.

Consult a dealer or qualified workshop before the displayed remaining distance or number of starts reaches 0 and the vehicle becomes unable to start.

Green warning and indicator lights

Stop & Start (ICE)

Steady
When the vehicle stops, the Stop & Start system puts the engine into STOP mode.

Flashing
STOP mode is momentarily unavailable or START mode is automatically triggered.

For more information, refer to the **Starting & Operating** section.

Vehicle ready to drive (PHEV or BEV)

Steady, accompanied by an audio signal when it comes on.
The vehicle is ready to drive.

The indicator light goes out upon reaching a speed of approximately 3 mph (5 km/h) and illuminates again when the vehicle stops moving.
The light will go out when you switch off the motor and exit the vehicle.

Seat occupied/Seat belt fastened

Steady.
With the ignition on, the driver or a passenger has fastened their seat belt.

Auto Hold (Adaptive cruise control)

Steady, accompanied by a message display.

The system has brought the vehicle to a complete stop and is keeping it immobilised.
With an automatic gearbox (EAT6), the driver must accelerate to move off again, then reactivate cruise control.
With an automatic gearbox (e-DCS6/7) or drive selector:

- Within 3 seconds of stopping, the vehicle gradually and automatically begins moving again.
- Beyond 3 seconds of stopping, the driver must accelerate to move off.

For more information, refer to the **Starting & Operating** section.

Direction indicators

Flashing with audio signal.
The direction indicators are on.

Daytime running lights/Sidelights

Steady.
With adequate ambient light, the daytime running lights are on.

With inadequate ambient light, the sidelights are on.

Dipped beam headlights

Steady.

The lights are on.

Automatic headlight dipping or MATRIX LED VISION

Steady.

The function is activated via the touch screen.

The lighting control stalk ring is in the "**AUTO**" position.

For more information, refer to the **Getting to Know your Vehicle - Exterior Lights** section.

Hill Assist Descent Control

Steady.
The system is operating.

Blue warning and indicator lights

Main beam headlights

Steady.
The lights are on.

With MATRIX BEAM headlights, the system is operating in high beam mode and dynamically shaping the beam.

e-Save function (PHEV)

Steady, accompanied by the reserved electric range. The function is activated.

Grey warning and indicator lights

Automatic headlight dipping or MATRIX LED VISION is inactive

Steady. The system is active, but the conditions for normal operation are not met.

Seat unoccupied

Steady. The seat is unoccupied.

Service indicator

The servicing information is expressed in terms of distance (miles or kilometres) and/or time (months or days).
The alert is triggered when either the distance or time limit is reached, whichever comes first.
The servicing information is displayed in the instrument panel. Depending on the version of the vehicle:

- The distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due, or the distance travelled since it was due preceded by the "-" sign.
- An alert message indicates the distance remaining, as well as the period before the next service is due or how long it is overdue.

NOTE

The value indicated is calculated according to the distance covered and the time elapsed since the last service.
The alert may also be triggered close to a due date.
In accordance with the vehicle's maintenance plan, the service may consist of either:

- A yearly visit.
- A complete service.

Service wrench

On temporarily when the ignition is switched on.

Between 1,860 and 620 miles (3,000 and 1,000 km) or 60 and 21 days remain before the next service is due.

steady, when the ignition is switched on.

The next service is due in less than 620 miles (1,000 km) or 21 days.
Have your vehicle serviced very soon.

Service wrench flashing

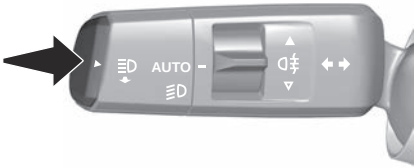
Flashing then steady, when the ignition is switched on.
The servicing interval has been exceeded.

Have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible.

Resetting the service indicator

The service indicator must be reset after each service.
If you have serviced your vehicle yourself:

- Switch the ignition off.
- Press and hold the button located on the end of the lighting control stalk.



- Without pressing the brake pedal, press the **START/STOP** button once; a temporary display window appears and a countdown begins.
- When the display indicates **=0**, a confirmation message appears; release the lighting control stalk button and the spanner symbol disappears.

NOTE

If you disconnect the battery following this operation, lock the vehicle and wait at least 5 minutes for the reset to be registered.

Reminder of the servicing information

Servicing information is accessible using the **Settings > Vehicle** application on the touch screen.

- Then select **Safety > Diagnostics**.

The following information is displayed on the instrument panel:

- Tire pressures.
- Engine oil level (depending on engine).
- Next service due.
- Current alerts.

NOTE

This information is also displayed automatically every time the ignition is switched on.

Engine oil level indicator

(Depending on version)
On versions fitted with an electric gauge, the engine oil level status is displayed on the instrument panel for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, after the servicing information, in the form of messages.

NOTE

The level read will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.

Low oil level

This is indicated by the message "**Oil level incorrect**" on the instrument panel, accompanied by the lighting of the Service warning light and an audible signal.

If a low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, the level must be topped up to avoid damage to the engine.
Checking Fluids Level

Oil gauge malfunction This is indicated by the message "**Oil level measurement invalid**" on the instrument panel.

Consult a dealer or a qualified workshop.

WARNING

In the event of a malfunction of the electric gauge, the oil level is no longer monitored.If the system is faulty, you must check the engine oil level using the manual dipstick located in the engine compartment.For more information on **Maintenance And Vehicle Care**, refer to the corresponding section.

Charge level indicator (PHEV or BEV)

For PHEV versions

The charge level of the traction battery and the remaining range in electric driving mode are permanently displayed when the vehicle is switched on.

WARNING

The range displayed depends on the use of the vehicle (type of driving and speed), the outside temperature and the activated comfort equipment.

For BEV versions

The traction battery's actual charge level and the remaining range are displayed continuously when the vehicle is started.

NOTE

With the ignition off, opening the driver's door activates the indicator.

Associated warning lights

Two successive alert levels indicate that the energy available has dropped to a low level:

1st level: Reserve

The state of charge of the traction battery is low.
nd indicator in the red zone, accompanied by an audio signal.

- View the remaining range on the instrument panel.
- Put the vehicle on charge as soon as possible.

2nd level: Critical

The state of charge of the traction battery is critical.
Steady, together with the reserve warning light, accompanied by an audio signal.
You must put the vehicle on charge.

WARNING

The remaining range is no longer calculated. The drive train power gradually decreases.

The heating and air conditioning are switched off (even if the needle or cursor indicating their consumption is not at the **"ECO"** position).

Thermal comfort consumption indicator (BEV)

It is available in the display pages of the instrument panel.
The indicator shows the consumption of the traction battery's electrical energy by the thermal comfort devices in the passenger compartment.
The devices in question are the heating and air conditioning systems.
This equipment can be used:

- If the vehicle is not plugged in, when the **READY** lamp is lit.
- If the vehicle is plugged in, when the ignition is switched on ("Lounge" mode).

Selecting **ECO** mode limits the performance of some of this equipment. The thermal comfort consumption indicator displays **"0 w"** (watts).

NOTE

To quickly heat or cool the passenger compartment, feel free to temporarily select the maximum heating or cooling setting.

When the heating is on maximum, the thermal comfort consumption indicator displays "**15000 w**" (watts).

Excessive use of thermal comfort equipment can significantly decrease the vehicle's range.
Remember to optimise equipment settings upon achieving the desired level of comfort, and adjust them if necessary whenever you start the vehicle.
After an extended period without using the heating, you may notice a slight odour during the first few minutes of use.

Manual test

This function allows you to check certain indicators and display the alerts log.

The test is launched in the **Settings> Vehicle** touch screen application.

- Then select **Safety > Diagnostics.**

The following information is displayed on the instrument panel:

- Tire pressures.
- Engine oil level (depending on engine).
- Next service due.
- Current alerts.

NOTE

This information is also displayed automatically every time the ignition is switched on.

Total distance recorder

The total distance recorder measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle since its initial registration.

With the ignition on, the total distance is displayed at all times. It remains displayed for 30 seconds after switching off the ignition. It is displayed when the driver's door is opened, and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

NOTE

When travelling abroad, you may have to change the distance units (miles or km): the displayed speed must be in the local country's official unit (mph or km/h).
The unit is changed via the screen's configuration menu, with the vehicle stationary.

NOTE

Rechargeable hybrid vehicles

The total distance recorder is only accessible from the trip computer.

For more information on the **Trip computer**, refer to the corresponding section.

Lighting dimmer

Used to manually adjust the brightness of the instruments and controls to suit the exterior light level.

It is configured in the **Settings > Brightness** touch screen application.

- In the **"Cockpit"** category, press or move the slider to the desired setting.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Active Warning Light

The electronic stability control programme includes the following systems:

- Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD).
- Emergency braking assistance (EBA).
- Post Collision Safety Brake (PCSB).
- Anti-slip regulation (ASR).
- Dynamic stability control (DSC).
- Trailer stability assist (TSA).

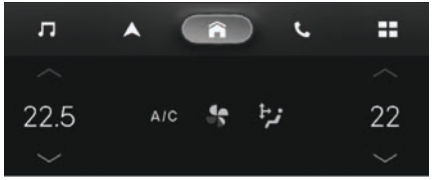
Climate Controls

Air intake

The air circulating in the passenger compartment is filtered and originates either from the exterior, via the grille located at the base of the windshield, or from the inside in air recirculation mode.

Controls

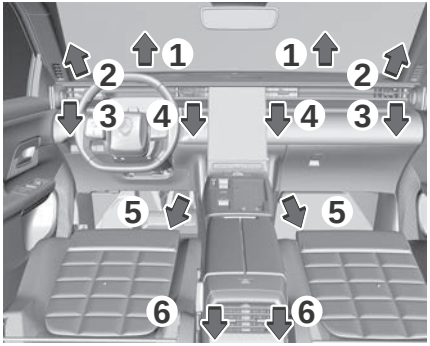
The Climate Control buttons are always available on the permanent dock of the Infotainment Display, as well as in the Climate Control app.
Each side controls the Temperature setting of its respective side in the cabin.



To increase/decrease the temperature:

- Tap or slide the finger on the desired side to reach the desired value.

Air distribution



1 Windshield demisting/de-icing vents

2 Front side window demisting/de-icing vents

3 Adjustable and closable side air vents

4 Adjustable and closable central air vents

5 Air outlets to the front footwells

6 Air outlets to the rear footwells

7 Adjustable and closable air vents

NOTE

Using the ventilation and air conditioning system

- To ensure that air is distributed evenly, keep the external air intake grilles at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents, the air outlets and the air extractor in the boot free from obstructions.
- Do not cover the sunshine sensor located 3 on the dashboard; this sensor is used to regulate the automatic air conditioning system.
- Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes once or twice a month to keep it in good working order.
- If the system does not produce cold air, switch it off and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

When towing a large load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power, enhancing the towing capacity.

WARNING

Do not attach any objects to the slats of the air vents. Risk of damage and injury in case of an accident.

WARNING

Avoid driving for too long with the ventilation off or with prolonged operation of interior air recirculation. Risk of misting and deterioration of the air quality!

If the interior temperature is very high after the vehicle has stood for a long time in the sunshine, air the passenger compartment for a few moments.
Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment.

NOTE

Condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water underneath the vehicle. This is perfectly normal.

NOTE

Servicing the ventilation and air conditioning system

- Ensure that the passenger compartment filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly.

We recommend using a composite passenger compartment filter. Its specific active additive helps protect against polluting gases and bad smells.

- To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, have it checked according to the recommendations in the Manufacturer's service schedule.

NOTE

Stop & Start / e-Auto mode (where provided). The heating and air conditioning systems only operate when the engine is running. Temporarily deactivate the corresponding system to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment. For more information, refer to the corresponding section.

NOTE

PHEV vehicles

Intensive use of the air conditioning reduces the vehicle range in BEV mode.

NOTE

BEV vehicles

Selecting the ECO driving mode reduces electrical energy consumption, but restricts the performance of the heating and air conditioning systems, although it does not deactivate them.

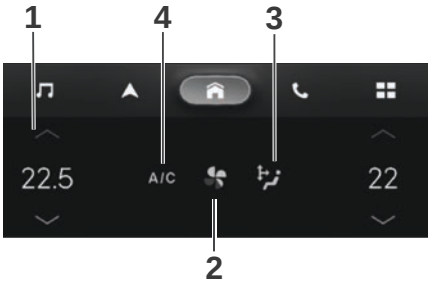
Ventilation with the ignition on

When the ignition is switched on, the ventilation system and the air flow and air distribution settings in the passenger compartment are activated, for a period which depends on the battery charge.
This function does not include the air conditioning system.

Dual-zone automatic air conditioning

This system automatically controls the activation of the air conditioning system, regulating the temperature, air flow and air distribution inside the passenger compartment.
This system works with the engine running, but access to the ventilation and its controls remains possible with the ignition on.

Press the **Climate** application button to display the system controls page.



1 Temperature adjustment

2 Air flow adjustment

3 Air distribution adjustment

4 AC on/off

Temperature adjustment

The driver and front passenger can each choose their own temperature setting.
The value indicated corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a precise temperature.

- Press the arrow corresponding to the desired change on the climate dock.

It is recommended that you avoid a difference of more than 3°C in the settings for left and right.

Automatic AC

This automatic mode ensures optimum management of the passenger compartment temperature, air flow and air distribution, based on the selected comfort level.

- Press button **AUTO** to activate/deactivate the automatic mode of the air conditioning system.

The indicator light in the button lights up when the air conditioning system is operating automatically.
The intensity of the automatic air conditioning is modulated by choosing one of the following settings:

- **AUTO SOFT**: provides soft and quiet operation by limiting air flow.
- **AUTO NORMAL**: offers the best compromise between a comfortable temperature and quiet operation (default setting).
- **AUTO FAST**: provides dynamic and efficient air distribution.

To ensure passenger comfort in the rear seats, favour settings **AUTO NORMAL** and **AUTO FAST**.

NOTE

In cold weather with the engine cold, the air flow is increased gradually until the comfort setting has been reached, in order to limit the delivery of cold air into the passenger compartment.
On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is much colder or warmer than the comfort setting requested, there is no need to alter the value displayed to more quickly reach the required level of comfort. The system automatically corrects the temperature difference as quickly as possible.

Automatic AC manual settings

It is possible to manually adjust one or more of these functions, while the system retains automatic control of the other functions:

- air flow.
- air distribution.

The indicator light in the "**AUTO**" button goes out if a setting is changed.

- Press button **AUTO** again to reactivate automatic air conditioning.

Adjusting the air flow

Depending on version:

- Press the fan button to decrease or increase the air flow.

It is also possible to directly press one of the values.

NOTE

Switching off the air conditioning system

When the air flow is reduced to a minimum, ventilation stops.

"OFF" is displayed alongside the fan.

Adjusting the air distribution

- Press the buttons 3 to adjust the air flow distribution inside the passenger compartment.

Windshield and side windows

Central and side air vents

Footwells

A symbol is activated to display the presence of blown air in the direction indicated.
It is possible to activate all three buttons simultaneously, for uniform distribution throughout the passenger compartment.

AC on/off

The air conditioning system is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed:

- It lowers the temperature in summer.
- It increase the effectiveness of the demisting, in winter, above 3°C.
- Press button **A/C** to switch the air conditioning on/off.

When the function is switched on, "**A/C**" changes colour.

NOTE

Air conditioning does not operate when the air flow is disabled.
To obtain cool air more quickly, enable interior air recirculation for a brief period.
Then return to the intake of exterior air.
Switching off the air conditioning may result in some discomfort (humidity or misting).

Switching off the air conditioning system

- Press button **OFF** on the **Central Controls** bar.

Its indicator light illuminates and all the other indicator lights of the air conditioning system go off.

This action deactivates all of the functions of the air conditioning system.
The temperature is no longer regulated.A slight flow of air can still be felt, due to the forward movement of the vehicle.

Quick Launch function

The Quick Launch function utilizes the external temperature sensor to automatically adjust the climate settings of the vehicle. Based on the detected temperature:

- For temperatures below 64°F (18°C):
  - Air conditioning activated, activates heating features, including heated seats, heated steering wheel, and neck warmer (if equipped).
  - Provides warm airflow and adjusts air distribution.
- For temperatures above 64°F (18°C):
  - Air conditioning activated, ventilated seats (if equipped), and maximum airflow.
  - Provides cool airflow and adjusts air distribution.

Press to activate/deactivate the function.

Clean Cabin function

It includes the AQS (Air Quality System) and Clean Air functions.

- To activate/deactivate the function, press button **7.**

AQS function

Using an exterior pollution sensor, this function automatically activates the recirculation of interior air when a certain level of pollutants in the exterior air is detected.
When the air quality returns to a satisfactory level, recirculation of interior air is automatically deactivated.
This function is not designed to detect unpleasant odours.
Recirculation is automatically activated when the windscreen wash is used or when reverse gear is engaged.

Clean Air function

Using an interior pollution sensor, this function detects fine particles (e.g. cigarette smoke, mould, bacteria).
The management of the recirculation of interior air makes it possible to return to a purified passenger compartment in just a few minutes, thanks to the passage of air through the high-performance passenger compartment filter.
If the air quality appears to be reduced, contact a ok will dodealer or a qualified workshop to change the high-performance passenger compartment filter.

Interior air recirculation

The intake of exterior air prevents the formation of mist on the windscreen and side windows.
Recirculating the interior air isolates the passenger compartment from outside odours and fumes and allows the desired passenger compartment temperature to be achieved more rapidly.

- Press this button to activate/deactivate the function (confirmed by the illumination/extinction of the indicator lamp). ⇨ 71

NOTE

This function is activated automatically when the front screenwash is used or reverse gear is engaged.

Front demisting/defrosting

This mode allows the windscreen and side windows to be demisted or defrosted as quickly as possible.

- Press this button to activate/deactivate the mode (confirmed by the illumination/ extinction of the indicator lamp). ⇨ 71

The mode automatically manages the air conditioning, air flow, air intake and distributes ventilation optimally to the windscreen and side windows.
The air flow can be changed manually without deactivating this mode.

NOTE

With Stop & Start, when demisting has been activated, STOP mode is not available.

WARNING

In wintry conditions, before moving off, it is essential to remove any snow or ice from the windshield around the camera.
Otherwise, the operation of the equipment using the camera may be affected.

Rear window demisting/ defrosting

This demisting/de-icing only works with the engine running.
Depending on version, it also demists/de-ices the door mirrors.

- Press this button to activate/deactivate the function (confirmed by the indicator lamp coming on/switching off). ⇨ 71

The function can be activated whatever the outside temperature may be.The period of operation depends on the outside temperature.Demisting/defrosting therefore switches off automatically to prevent an excessive consumption of electrical current.

Temperature pre-conditioning (PHEV or BEV)

This function allows you to program the temperature in the passenger compartment to reach a pre-defined, non-modifiable temperature (approx. 21°C) before you enter the vehicle, on the days and at the times of your choice.
This function is available when the vehicle is connected or not connected. ⇨156

Programming

- In the **Climate** touch screen application, select the **Preconditioning** tab.

1. Press + to add a programme.
2. Select the time of entry into the vehicle and the desired days. Press **OK**.
3. Press **ON** to activate this programming.

The pre-conditioning sequence begins approximately 45 minutes before the programmed time when the vehicle is connected (20 minutes when it is not connected) and is maintained for 10 minutes after.

NOTE

You can set multiple programmes.
Each one is saved in the system.
To optimise the driving range, we recommend starting a programme while the vehicle is connected.

Programming can also be carried out from a smartphone using the **MYCITROEN APP** application.

For more information on **Remotely operable additional functions,** refer to the corresponding section.

NOTE

The fan noise that occurs during temperature pre-conditioning is perfectly normal.
The door mirrors are folded when the temperature pre-conditioning and the ignition are on.

NOTE

Vehicles equipped with an alarm system

Depending on version, interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring may be reduced.

Operating conditions

- The function is only activated when the **ignition is switched off** and the **vehicle locked.**
- When the vehicle is not connected, the function is only activated if the battery charge level is greater than 20% (PHEV) or 30% (BEV).
- When the vehicle is not connected and a recurring programme is active (e.g. from Monday to Friday), if two temperature pre-conditioning sequences are run without the vehicle being used, the programme will be deactivated.

Temperature pre-conditioning (ICE)

This function allows you to program the temperature in the passenger compartment to reach a pre-defined, non-modifiable temperature (approx. 21°C) before you enter the vehicle, on the days and at the times of your choice.

Programming

In the **Climate** touch screen application, select the **Preconditioning** tab.

1. Press **+** to add a program.
2. Select the time of entry into the vehicle and the desired days. Press **OK**.
3. Press **ON** to activate this programming. The pre-conditioning sequence begins approximately 20 minutes before the programmed time.

NOTE

You can set multiple programmes.
Each one is saved in the system.

Programming can also be carried out from a smartphone using the **MYCITROEN APP** application.

NOTE

Vehicles equipped with an alarm system

Depending on version, interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring may be reduced.

Pre-conditioning can only begin if all doors are locked, windows and hood closed.
Pre-conditioning starts the engine of the petrol vehicle.
Pre-conditioning is limited to a 20min cycle.
A second cycle can only be performed after rolling.

Touch screen

13-inch touch screen

This system gives access to the following elements:

- Time and exterior temperature.
- Heating/air conditioning system controls and reminders of settings.
- Settings for driving aid functions, comfort and safety functions, audio equipment and digital instrument panel.
- Settings of functions specific to PHEV vehicles.
- Settings of functions specific to BEV vehicles.
- Display of visual manoeuvring aid functions.
- Interactive handbook.
- Video tutorials by QR-code (e.g. screen management, driving aids, voice recognition).
- Audio equipment and telephone controls with display of associated information.
- Connected services and display of associated information.
- Navigation system controls and display of associated information (depending on equipment).
- Voice recognition (depending on equipment).

WARNING

For safety reasons, always stop the vehicle before performing operations that require sustained attention. Some functions are not accessible while driving.

Recommendations

These recommendations are valid for the touch screen and for the i-Toggles (depending on equipment).
The touch screen and the i-Toggles screen are capacitive touch screens.
Do not use pointed objects on the touch screen.
Do not touch the touch screen with wet hands.

- Use a soft, clean cloth to clean the touch screen.

Main Controls

Access to one of the home pages
Return to the first home page

Access to the **Climate** application

Direct access to the **Shortcuts for ADAS**

- Swipe down from the upper edge of the touch screen to access a list of quick settings (e.g. **Brightness, eHUD toggle, Profile and Privacy settings, etc.**).
- Swipe to the sides to scroll between pages.0

Show/Hide context menu

Return to the previous page

- To change the status of a function, press the description for the corresponding line (change confirmed by the slider moving to the right/left: function activated/deactivated).

Access additional information on the function

Access to function parameters

Adding/Removing shortcuts

Short press, ignition off: system on/ off.
Short press, ignition on: mute/ restore sound.
Long press, ignition on: start standby mode (mute sound, screens and clock display off).

Volume adjustment.

Applications

Press this button to access the applications wall.
To obtain information about the other applications not listed here, refer to the sections describing the audio and telematic systems.

ADAS

Activation/Deactivation and configuration of the driving aid functions.

Climate

Settings for temperature, air flow, etc.

For more information on **Dual-zone automatic air conditioning**, refer to the corresponding section. Activation/Deactivation of the heated steering wheel.

For more information on the **Heated steering wheel**, refer to the corresponding section.

Seats

Activation/Deactivation and configuration of the seat comfort functions (heating, ventilation and massages).

For more information on the **Heated seats** or on the **Multi-point massages**, refer to the corresponding section.

Settings

Main settings for the audio system, touch screen and digital instrument panel.

Activation/Deactivation and configuration of the exterior lighting, vehicle access and safety functions.

Energy

For PHEV versions

Access to the PHEV system features (energy flow, consumption statistics, deferred charging, e- SAVE function).

Energy application (PHEV or BEV)

Energy flow

The page shows the operation of the electric drive train in real time. The energy flows have a specific color for each type of driving

- Blue: energy consumption.
- Green: energy recovery.
- White: Energy from Petrol engine (PHEV).

Statistics

This page shows the history of electrical energy consumption.

- Upper graph (blue): energy consumed directly from the traction battery.
- Lower graph (green): energy regenerated during deceleration and braking phases used to recharge the traction battery.

The average result for the current trip is stated in kWh/100 km.
It is possible to view data for the last 300, 60 or 30 miles (500, 100 or 50 kilometers) by clicking on the corresponding value on the left of the graph.

Usage

This page shows the different types of consumption of the vehicle's equipment and the total energy used.

1. Average electrical consumption for the current trip (kWh/100 km) and historical values:

- Blue graph: energy consumed directly from the traction battery.
- Green graph: energy regenerated during deceleration and braking phases used to recharge the traction battery.

2. Average fuel consumption for the current trip (l/100 km) and historical values (orange graph).

e-SAVE (PHEV)

The **e-SAVE** function makes it possible to reserve all or part of the electrical energy of the traction battery to be used later during a journey (e.g. passing through an urban area or an area reserved for BEV vehicles).

- Activate the function by pressing **Set e-SAVE** , then select the electric range to be reserved (**6 miles (10 km) , 12 miles (20 km)** or the full range **Maximum**).

Activation of the function is confirmed by the activation of this indicator light on the instrument panel and the indication of the energy reserve in miles or kms.

- To use the energy reserve, choose the **BEV** driving mode in the mode selector.

WARNING

If the requested range exceeds the available range (not recommended), the internal combustion engine starts to recharge the traction battery up to the requested threshold. This leads to excessive fuel consumption.

Head-Up Display

This extended head-up display system projects information onto the windshield in the driver's field of vision so that they do not need to take their eyes off the road.
To activate the Head-Up Display, open the Notification Center by pulling down from the top of the Infotainment Display and pressing the HUD button.

WARNING

No object must be placed in the cavity - risk of damaging the system!

NOTE

For optimum use, consider adjusting the driver's seat and the height of the extended head-up display.
In some extreme weather conditions (e.g. rain and/or snow, bright sunlight) and when wearing polarized sunglasses, the extended head-up display may not be legible or may be momentarily obscured.

NOTE

The EXTENDED HEAD UP DISPLAY is associated with a specific windshield approved by the Manufacturer.
If the windshield is replaced outside the dealer network, follow the Manufacturer's recommendations.

You can customize the display by selecting widgets in the center screen. The pages can be selected via the left stalk. ⇨ 104

To adjust brightness, go to **Settings > Brightness** on the touchscreen.

Adjusting the position of the Heads Up Display

- Turn the control to the forwards position.
- Move the control up or down to adjust the height of the display.

Adjusting the Brightness

To adjust the brightness:

1. Swipe down from the top of the Infotainment Display to access the Notification Center.
2. Press the Brightness button.
3. Set the desired brightness level.

or

1. Go into the Settings/Brightness menu
2. Adjust the brightness as desired

NOTE

The eHUD will automatically dim if low ambient light conditions are detected (e.g. At night). This does not change the overall brightness setting.

INFOTAINMENT SYSTEM

Introduction

DANGER

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury.
We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road.
Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle.
We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible.
Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

WARNING

For safety reasons and because they require sustained attention by the driver, the following operations must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on:

- Connecting the smartphone via Bluetooth, USB or Wi-Fi.
- Using the smartphone.
- Connecting to the CarPlay® or Android Auto applications (some applications stop displaying when the vehicle is moving).
- Changing the system settings and configuration.

CAUTION

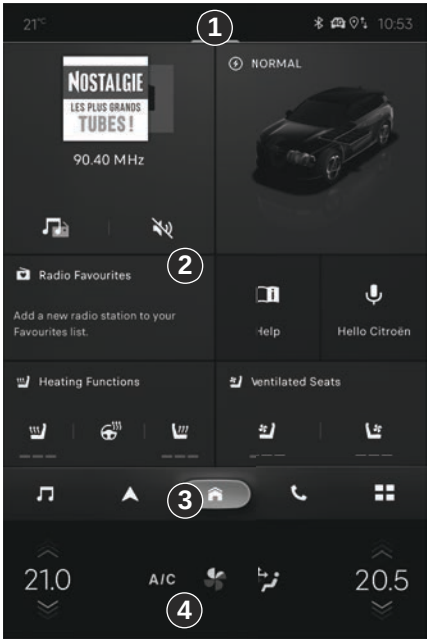
Overheating

In very hot conditions, operation may be limited to protect the system (e.g. volume may be reduced). A warning message is displayed on the screen.
The system will resume normal operation when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

CAUTION

Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the touch screen.
Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the touch screen.
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

Media / Radio / Phone information



1. Status bar
2. Customizable Area
3. Launchers Area
4. Climate Dock

Menu

First steps

The system starts when the ignition is switched on.

Short press, ignition off: system on/off.
Short press, ignition on: mute/restore sound.
Long press, ignition on: start standby mode (mute sound, screens and clock display off).

- Increase or decrease the volume using the knob or the "plus" or "minus" buttons.

Information

This system gives access to the following elements:

- Audio equipment and phone controls with display of associated information.
- Connected services and display of associated information.
- Navigation system controls and display of associated information (depending on equipment).
- Voice recognition (depending on equipment).
- Time and outside temperature.
- Heating/air conditioning system controls and reminders of settings.
- Settings for driving aid functions, comfort and safety functions, extended head-up display (depending on equipment and version), audio equipment and digital instrument panel.
- Display of visual maneuvering aid functions.

Status bar

Some information is displayed permanently in the upper banner of the touch screen:

- Outside temperature from the vehicle's sensors (associated with a blue symbol if there is a risk of ice).
- Status of the heated/ventilated seats and heated steering wheel.
- Charge level of the connected smartphone.
- System connection status (Bluetooth ®, Wi-Fi, mobile phone network).
- Time.
- Quick access to the Mirror Screen ® functions (associated with a connected smartphone).
- Swipe down from the upper edge of the touch screen to access the notifications center and display a list of quick settings :Guest, Privacy Settings, Brightness, My Devices, night mode, etc.

Principles

- Use this button to display the most recent home page used; a second press displays the first home page, then press the virtual buttons displayed on the touch screen.

- Scroll through the home pages by sliding your finger along the screen to the right or to the left.

Principle of movement in the system

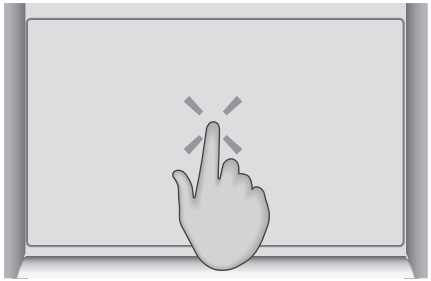
The display of the Infotainment system has a touch-sensitive surface that allows direct interaction with the displayed menu controls.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use pointed or hard items like ballpoint pens, pencils or similar for touch screen operation.

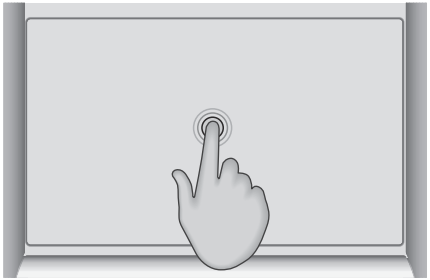
Use the following finger gestures to control the Infotainment system.

Touch



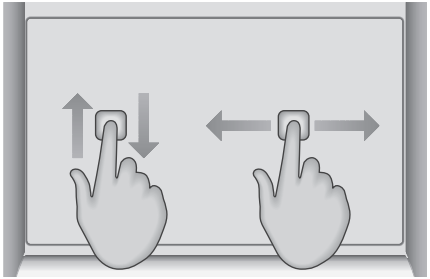
Touch is used to open a menu or select an option.

Touch and hold



Touch and hold can be used to save radio stations.

Swipe



Swipe is used to scroll through a menu or to pan the map.

Touch buttons

Display/hide the context me Display/hide the context men

Return to the previous page.

- To change the status of a function, press the description for the corresponding line (change confirmed by the slider moving to the right/left: function activated/deactivated).

Access to additional information about the function.

Access to a function's settings.

Add/delete shortcuts.

Profiles

Configuring profiles

- Press the **" Settings "** application.

- In the list, select the " Profile " tab.

The "**Driver**" profile is pre-created and displayed by default, you can customize its settings, and reset the profile.

A "**Guest**" profile is also available, but the settings cannot be customized.

If desired, multiple individual profiles can also be created to suit each driver's preferences.

Each profile created can be associated with a mobile device of your choice connected via Bluetooth ® ; the Bluetooth ® function of the mobile device must first be activated.

The last profile used will be highlighted.

- Select **" Create Profile "**, then follow the procedure.

Creating a new profile allows you to personalize:

- Language, units, Privacy Settings.
- Screen configuration, appearance.
- Audio settings, favorite radio stations.
- Lighting, interior ambiance (refer to the "**Ease of use and comfort**" section).
- Navigation history, favorite points of interest (POIs), navigation settings.
- Some driving aids and the list of favorites.

- To delete a profile, select it from the list of profiles then press the bin.

Privacy Settings

The "Privacy Settings" management is associated with each profile. This function is used with: a "Guest" and "Driver" profiles, which are pre-configured by default in "Private Mode", or
a profile to be created in the system, with or without connection to a mobile device. For each profile (even "Guest"), the last privacy mode saved value will be restored.

"Share Data and Location"

This mode allows the vehicle to externally transmit all the personal data needed for each valid available connected service.

NOTE

The personal data required to use the connected services is sent to the providers of these services.

"Share Data"

This mode allows the vehicle to externally transmit all the data needed for each valid available connected service, with the exception of vehicle location data (e.g. GPS coordinates).

NOTE

Some connected services may not function without the vehicle location data.

NOTE

This mode will not be applied to services bent to legal obligations (e.g. eCall (SOS) system and Speed Limit Information function, where applicable), to some connected services essential for the vehicle (e.g. remote updating of software and firmware by 'Over The Air' technology), or to specific connected services for which it is expected to prevent malicious usages from other users (e.g. Connected alarm).

" Private Mode "

This mode does not allow the vehicle to transmit personal data outside the vehicle.

NOTE

Connected services will only perform local processing inside the vehicle with limited functions.

NOTE

This mode will not be applied to services bent to legal obligations (e.g. eCall (SOS) system and Speed Limit Information function, where applicable), to some connected services essential for the vehicle (e.g. remote updating of software and firmware by 'Over The Air' technology), or to specific connected services for which it is expected to prevent malicious usages from other users (e.g. Connected alarm).

NOTE

Professional purposes. If the vehicle is used for professional purposes or under the terms of specific contracts (e.g. corporate fleet, government assignment), some privacy modes will not be available for the user on the screen, depending on the data sharing needs of the services.

- To change mode, swipe down from the upper edge of the touch screen to display all of the quick settings.

- Press this button and select the chosen mode. The mode is highlighted.

OR

- Press the " **Settings** " application.

- In the list, select the " **Connectivity** " tab.

- Select " **Privacy Settings** ".

- Choose the mode.

Updating the system

Software and firmware management and updating are carried out remotely, using the Over the Air technology. This updates the vehicle through a secure connection to the Manufacturer's server (mobile network or Wi-Fi). Irrespective of a valid subscription to a connected service, the remote management of devices relating to or connected with the security of devices, and the updating of software and firmware, will be carried out when necessary to comply with a legal requirement applicable to the Manufacturer (e.g. The applicable law in terms of product liability, the regulations governing ecall) or when necessary to protect the respective vital interests of the vehicle's users and passengers.

Make sure:

- Stable Internet connection is established via WiFi or mobile network. ⇨105
- Privacy settings are not set to **Private mode** ⇨105
- Vehicle is parked on level ground.
- Engine is switched off.
- Ignition is switched on.
- BEV / PHEV: The charging cable has been disconnected for at least four hours.

Automatic update download

This function is available when automatic downloads are activated in the **Settings** app ⚙.
The vehicle is checking for updates automatically in the background when the engine is on. When a new software update is available, a message will pop up on the touch screen after the engine is switched off.

> **NOTE**
>
> For this message to appear, the engine must be switched off with the driver's door closed.

Manual check for available updates

1. Open the **Settings** app ⚙ on the touch screen.
2. Select the update tab.
3. Select an available update to download by tapping on it.

When the download was successful a confirmation message will popup on the touch screen.
Available updates will be listed on the screen.
If no update is shown, wait for five minutes.
If there are still no updates shown, no new update is available.

Installation

> **⚠ CAUTION**
>
> The engine must be switched off during the installation. Vehicle must remain disconnected from charging cable.

Choose an option:

- Start installation of the update immediately.
- Postpone the installation.

When postponed, the popup message will appear the next time the engine is switched off.
Installation time can take between a few minutes to a maximum of two hours. A popup message will give an estimate of the duration and a description of the update.
The installation of an update will continue even if the vehicle is left and locked.
With the next engine start, a message on the screen will inform whether the installation has been finished successfully. If the installation fails, contact an assistance center via the [MyBrand] app or a workshop.

Customization

- Press and hold the screen from one of the system's home pages.

Or

- Press the " **Settings** " application.

- In the list, select the " **Customization** " tab. Press the " **Displays** " field.

A page divided into 2 parts is displayed.
Press the HOME button at any time to leave this page.

Personalizing the screen

Press " **Customize Touchscreen** "

A representation of the organization of the different home page **(HOME)** Widgets is displayed.

> **NOTE**
>
> A Widget is a reduced window of an application or service.

Adding a Widget

- To add a Widget, press " **Widget** " on the left of the screen.

Or

- Press one of these buttons on the screen.

Select the desired Widget.

- Press the back arrow to return to the previous page.

Organizing the Widgets on a home page (HOME)

- To move a Widget, press and hold it, then drag it to the desired location.

Adding a page

- To add a page, press " **Page** " on the left of the screen.

- Press the back arrow to return to the previous page.

Deleting a Widget

- To move a Widget to the bin, press and hold it, then drag it to the bin.

Cybersecurity

Connected Services

Multiple connected services are accessible via app, online or insidethe vehicle.

> **NOTE**
>
> Connected Services are not available for all markets. For further information, contact your workshop.

> **NOTE**
>
> Full functionality of Connected Services is subject to registration and proper activation.

More information are available online.
Connected services may include live navigation such as online traffic information as well as vehicle status and information such as maintenance alerts.
Services accessible insidethe vehicle also include emergency call and assistance call.
These functions are automatically activated.
terms and conditions apply.
Emergency call ⇨ 218

Correct connectivity settings and privacy settings are necessary to establish the connection to the available connected services.

Connectivity Settings

To display the system settings menu, open the settings app and select .
Then select the connectivity menu.
The following settings can be managed:

- wireless devices: display all paired devices, connect or disconnect a device, choose the connection preferences for each device (Bluetooth or phone projection)and search for nearby devices.
- Wi-Fi networks: activate or deactivate Wi-Fi, search for nearby Wi-Fi networks and connect the system to a Wi-Fi network.
- privacy settings: activate or deactivatedata and location sharing for authorized services.

Privacy Settings

NOTE

Even in Private Mode, Regulation and Legitimate Interest data is still transmitted.

The "Privacy Settings" management is associated with each profile. This function is used with: a "Guest" profile configured by default in "Private Mode",
or
a profile to be created in the system, with or without connection to a mobile device.

For each profile (even "Guest"), the last privacy mode saved value will be restored.

"Sharing Data and Location"

This mode allows the vehicle to externally transmit all the personal data needed for each valid available connected service.

NOTE

The personal data required to use the connected services is sent to the providers of these services.

"Sharing Data"

This mode allows the vehicle to externally transmit all the data needed for each valid available connected service, with the exception of vehicle location data (e.g. GPS coordinates).

NOTE

Some connected services may not function without the vehicle location data.

NOTE

This mode will not be applied to services bent to legal obligations (e.g. eCall (SOS) system and Speed Limit Information function, where applicable), to some connected services essential for the vehicle (e.g. remote updating of software and firmware by 'Over The Air' technology), or to specific connected services for which it is expected to prevent malicious usages from other users (e.g. Connected alarm).

"Private Mode"

This mode does not allow the vehicle to transmit personal data outside the vehicle.

NOTE

Connected services will only perform local processing inside the vehicle with limited functions.

NOTE

Professional purposes

If the vehicle is used for professional purposes or under the terms of specific contracts (e.g. corporate fleet, government assignment), some privacy modes will not be available for the user on the screen, depending on the data sharing needs of the services.

- To change mode, swipe down from the upper edge of the touch screen to display all of the quick settings.

Press this button and select the chosen mode. The mode is highlighted.

Or

Press the " **Settings** " application.

- In the list, select the **"Connectivity"** tab.

Select **"Privacy Settings".**

Choose the mode.

Internet portal

During the first use, upon acquisition of the vehicle, the user is invited to select the country of residence for the use of the Internet portal.
If the country is not selected, the notification is stored in the notification center and disappears once the country is selected. Slide a finger on the touch screen from top to bottom to display all the notifications.
The selection of a country is necessary to use the available internet applications.

Press the " **Settings** " application.

- In the list, select the " **Connected Services** ".

Choose the country.

The first time you use it, via a connected mobile device, the system links to your profile. The connected mobile device serves as an access key to saved personal information.

First activate the mobile device's Bluetooth ® function. Select the desired application, authentication will be requested if necessary. This authentication will be saved for future uses via the mobile device connected to the current profile.
An authentication will be requested at each use if the mobile device is not connected to the current profile or if the Guest profile is used.

With the use of the "Guest" profile, an identification will be requested for each use.

Multimedia System

GPS navigation - Applications - Multimedia audio system - Bluetooth® phone

NOTE

The functions and settings described vary according to the version and configuration of the vehicle, and according to the country of sale.

WARNING

For safety reasons and because they require continued attention from the driver, the following operations must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on:

- Pairing the smartphone with the system via Bluetooth ® .
- Using the smartphone.
- Connecting to Mirror Screen (Apple ® CarPlay ® or Android Auto).
- Changing the system settings and configuration.

NOTE

The message **Energy economy mode** is displayed when the system is about to go into standby.

For more information on **Energy economy mode** , refer to the "**Practical information**" section.

WARNING

Navigation is a driving aid. It cannot replace the driver. All guidance instructions should be carefully checked by the user.
By using the navigation, you accept the following terms and conditions: https://www.tomtom.com/en_gb/legal/ eula-automotive/?388448

NOTE

The OSS (Open Source Software) source codes for the systems are available at the following link : https://www.citroen.com/open-source

General information

Steering-wheel Controls

Depending on your vehicle and option package, you can use different controls on your steering wheel to interact with the touch screen system in different ways.

Voice control:

Short press, system voice commands or smartphone (depending on equipment).
Long press, voice commands of the smartphone connected using Bluetooth ® or Mirror Screen ® (Apple ®CarPlay ® /Android Auto) via the system.

Increase volume.

Decrease volume.

Mute the sound: long press on the decrease volume button.
Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

Incoming call (short press): accept the call.

Call in progress (short press): hang up.

Incoming call (long press): refuse the incoming call.

Out of call (short press): access the call log of the phone connected via Bluetooth ®.

Mirror Screen ® connected (short press): access the projected view of the phone application of your Mirror Screen ® equipment.

Radio: automatic search for the previous/next station (in the list of radio stations sorted by name or by frequencies).

Media: previous/next track, movement in the lists.

Phone: browse the phone's call log.

Short press: validate a selection. Out of selection, display the lists.

Applications

Appwall

From the home page, press this button to access the applications wall.
Or press the screen with three fingers to bring up the app wall from any page.

Help

Watch tutorials.

Radio/Media

Select an audio source or radio station.

Mirror Screen ®

Smartphone connected with Mirror Screen ® : access to the projected view of Apple ®CarPlay ® or Android Auto.

Smartphone not connected: access the menu allowing you to connect a smartphone.

Navigation

(depending on equipment)

Enter navigation settings and choose a destination.

Use services available in real time, depending on equipment.

Phone

Phone not connected: access the menu allowing you to connect a phone.

Phone connected: access the call log, contacts and phone settings.
Two connected phones: access the contents of the priority phone with the possibility of changing the priority of the phone.

Settings

Main settings for the audio system, touch screen and digital instrument panel.

Voice Commands

First steps

(depending on equipment)

NOTE

The answers provided by the voice recognition system may be generated by artificial intelligence.

The voice recognition service offers a choice of 20 languages minimum (French, German, English (UK), English (US), Arabic, Brazilian, Chinese, Danish, Spanish, Hebrew, Italian, Japanese, Dutch, Norwegian, Polish, Portuguese, Russian, Swedish, Czech, Turkish) available with the cellular network and in line with the language chosen and previously configured in the system.
The system supports two languages for cases where the area in which the vehicle is travelling is not covered by the cellular network.
These languages, referred to as on-board languages, are downloaded into the system.
If the chosen language has not been downloaded, a message on the screen appears as soon as the cellular network is not connected for the first time and offers to download it.
To use this new language in all areas, download it beforehand (ignition on without starting the engine) via the Wi-Fi network.
Apply the download procedure displayed on the screen.
Downloading this new language removes the least used on-board language.

Information - Using the system

When voice commands are activated, say your command after the audible signal.

For commands in several stages, interaction takes place with the system to complete the initial request.
Some commands self-validate after 7 seconds.
If the system has not taken your command into account, it will indicate this by a voice message and an on-screen display.

- Press the **" Settings "** application.

In the list, select the **" Voice Assistant "** tab.

Activate/Deactivate:

- **" Listen for (Hello Citroen) ":** to invoke the voice recognition using the keyword **" Hello Citroen ".**
- **" Data Usage ":** to authorize our supplier to re-use your data in order to let him globally improve its capabilities in term of voice recognition and voice assistance.
- **"Vocal Barge-In"**: to allow user to speak over spoken dialog prompts and be recognized.

NOTE

Voice Assistant/Data Usage. Vehicle's location and voice recordings are not concerned; only textual transcriptions of your conversations with the voice assistant are kept after to be pseudonymised.

Opening voice recognition

Voice commands can be used on any screen page, provided there are no other sources which take priority in use (reverse, emergency or assistance call, phone call, other smartphone voice recognition already launched).

Choice of opening voice recognition:

- Say **"Hello Citroen".**

or

- Press the button located on the steering wheel.

or

- Press the touch screen button.

WARNING

Caution

To ensure that voice commands are always recognized by the system, please follow these recommendations:

- **Use natural language in a normal tone without breaking up words or raising your voice.**
- After opening voice recognition with the steering wheel-mounted button or the button on the touch screen, always wait for the "beep" (audible signal) before talking.

No "beep" sounds when voice recognition is opened using " **OK Iris** ".

- For optimal operation, it is recommended that you close the windows and the sunroof (depending on equipment) to avoid any external interference, and switch the ventilation off.
- Before speaking the voice commands, ask the other passengers not to speak.

Voice command example for air conditioning:

"Raise the fan speed"

"Turn on air conditioning"

"I'm too hot"

Voice command example for radio and media:

"I want to listen to Michael Jackson"

"Switch to radio"

"Tune to 88.5"

NOTE

Media voice commands are only available with an USB connection.

Voice command example for navigation:

"Navigate home"

"Navigate me to Gabrielle's house"

"Search for public parking nearby"

NOTE

Depending on the country, give destination (address) instructions in the language configured for the system.

Voice command example for phone:

"Call Matthew's mobile"

"Call 0113 345 9869"

"Call Jonathan"

NOTE

AIf there is no telephone connected by **Bluetooth®**, a pop-up window appears: "**Connect a telephone by Bluetooth®**", and the voice session will be closed.

Voice command example for the weather:

"Do i need a raincoat"

"How is the weather tonight"

"What is today's humidity level"

AI Assistant

AI assistant is part of the Connected Services and if the user subscribes to it, it will enable an extended range of functions.

To activate AI assistant, you can use the same voice command "**Hello Citroen**".

Navigation

Access to additional videos

https://www.tomtom.com/stellantis-connected-nav

Press the " **Navigation** " application to display the navigation home screen.

Press " **Search** " to enter an address or a name.

Press this button to display the 3D/2D mode or to display cardinal directions (N, E, S, W).

Select " **Sound activated** ", " **Alerts only** " and " **Silent** " with successive presses on this button.

Press the "plus"/"minus" buttons to zoom in/out, or use two fingers on the screen.

Main menu

Press the " **Navigation** " application to display the navigation home screen.

Press this button to display the main menu for the various options.

Select " **Search** " to enter an address, name or some points of interest.

Select " **Go home** " using an address previously saved in " **Add home** ".

Select " **Go to work** " using an address previously saved in " **My places** ".

Select " **Recent destinations** " to display the latest destinations searched.

Select " **Current trip** " on the Route Overview page to open another menu and perform various actions for the current planned route.

Select " **My places** " for quick access to saved places as well as favorite destinations.

Select " **Parking** " to display the various parking options in the area.

Select " **Charging station** " to display the different charge stations on the current route or near the current location.

Select " **TomTom service** " to check the network status.

Select " **Settings** " to enter the vehicle type and to personalize the display, voice instructions, map options, trip planning, sounds and alerts, and system information.

Select this button to display details on software versions as well as legal information. Details of the Open Source software libraries used and their license URLs.

NOTE

Regular connection to a secure Wi-Fi access point automatically updates the installed mapping globally.
The mapping is also updated using a cellular network, depending on version, country of sale, the vehicle's level of equipment, as well as the subscription to connected services and options.
However, using your smartphone's Wi-Fi and/or cellular networks may incur additional charges if you exceed your data plan. These charges, if any, will be passed on to your telephone operator's bill.

Navigation settings

Open the **Navigation settings** page.

On the **Map & Display page**, the **Range visualization**, which shows the remaining range on the map can be enabled/disabled.

On the **Planning & Travel** page, the desired level of charge when arriving at a charger and the desired state of charge when arriving at a destination can be set.

On the **Vehicle Setting** page, the charging station's socket can be selected, depending on the cable present onboard.

EV Routing

NOTE

EV routing can function without a subscription to Connect PLUS, but it will not receive updates on the status of charging stations.

The navigation system incorporates several features designed to guide drivers through efficient and worry-free journeys.
The system will adapt the routing of journeys to minimize travel duration, maximize EV efficiency and vehicle range and provide real-time information on charging points to help drivers find somewhere to charge along their journey.
The system will try to find the optimum route, preferring the most powerful charging stations to reduce the number of stops, and trying to maximize driving speed. If the journey cannot be completed with the current level of charge, the EV navigation will automatically add charging stops.
EV navigation shows the details of the charging station, the estimated time of arrival at the station, the estimated charge time, and the estimated time of arrival at the final destination.
The EV navigation system will automatically adapt if the conditions change (availability, detour) and continuously update the route to keep the next charging stop within range, and notifies the driver in case of recalculation.
At the end of a trip, the distance, trip duration, average energy consumption and remaining range will be displayed.

Selecting a different charging station

If you wish to choose another charging station, press **Add stop**, go to the Charging station icon and select the desired charging station.

NOTE

Manually added charging stations are not included in the system's charging calculations. However, once the vehicle is charged and the engine restarts, the route will automatically recalculate and update.

Customizing battery management

EV Routing provides two ways to manage battery economy: through **Route Options** for one-time adjustments and Settings (**Options > Planning & Travel**) for default preferences.
To set a one-time battery level for your destination (Route Options):

- Open the **Route Options** menu.
- Select the desired battery level upon arrival at your destination.

The system will automatically calculate charging stops and the charge percentage needed at each stop.

NOTE

This change applies only to the current trip and does not modify default settings.

To set a minimum battery level for all trips (**Options > Planning & Travel**):

- Go to **Settings > Options > Planning & Travel** in the navigation system.
- Set the minimum state of charge for both charging stops and destination arrival.

These settings will be used for all future trips unless manually changed.

Battery Preconditioning

To enable the preconditioning, the following conditions need to be met:

- Navigation is active
- Destination is set

Connectivity

Connecting a wired device by USB

The USB connection of a mobile device allows it to be recharged. It makes its authorized media content available to the system (Media content of iPod ® type).

Only one USB socket will allow a Mirror Screen connection (Apple ®CarPlay ® or Android Auto) for the compatible connected mobile devices and to use some of the device's applications on the touch screen.

For more information on the USB socket compatible with the Mirror Screen ® function, refer to the "**Interior Features**" section.

The mobile device is in charging mode when connected with the USB cable.

NOTE

It is recommended that you use your device's original USB cables, preferably with a short cable to ensure optimum performance.

CAUTION

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

Bluetooth® connection

Connecting a mobile device to the vehicle's system via Bluetooth ® provides access to its contents and its "Media" streaming. It also enables the Phone function to be activated. The connection can be initiated either from the mobile device's Bluetooth ® menu or from the vehicle's system, which requires opening the "**My Devices**" menu for the first connection.

NOTE

In some cases, you will need to unlock your device and check the authorisation to synchronise contacts and recent calls.
Some features may not be supported by your device.
For information on the partial or full compatibility of device models or smartphones, please connect to the Brand's national website.

Pairing procedure from a device

- From the Bluetooth ® menu on your mobile device, select the system's name from the list of detected devices.

NOTE

In order to make your system's Bluetooth® visible, first open the "**My Devices**" menu on the system.

Continue the first connection procedure proposed by the system and on the device.
For example: validating pairing codes.

Pairing procedure from the system

- Press the " **Settings** " application.

- In the list, select the " **Connectivity** " tab.

- Select " **My Devices** ".

- Select the name of the mobile device that you want to connect, from:

- The list of known devices (if the device has already been connected to the system).

or

- The list of detected devices (if the device was never connected to the system or previously deleted from the system).

NOTE

A mobile device already connected to the system will be able to reconnect automatically when the vehicle is started, once the user profile has been selected.

Automatic reconnection is put on hold as soon as the "**My Devices**" menu is opened.

This is to allow the system to make its Bluetooth ® visible for the connection of a new device.
The system is disconnected when the driver's door is opened and the ignition is switched off.

Automatic reconnection

The system allows automatic reconnection of devices already connected and detected when a user profile is selected.
The priority reconnected devices are those which have been linked to the selected user profile or, failing this, the last connected devices.

Wi-Fi connection

The system has an external Wi-Fi connection mode for performing system updates.

- Press the " **Settings** " application.

- In the list, select the " **Connectivity** " tab.

- Select " **Wi-Fi** ".

- Activate/Deactivate " **Wi-Fi** ".

The system starts a search for nearby Wi-Fi networks. This may take a few seconds.
Select the Wi-Fi network to connect to and enter its password.

WARNING

To protect your system, only networks with a sufficient level of security are allowed to connect. WPA2 encryption level, equivalent to a domestic level, is required.

NOTE

Any network already connected to the system will reconnect automatically as soon as it is detected by the system and after having previously activated the Wi-Fi function.

NOTE

The Wi-Fi connection of the system to a device already connected using a Mirror Screen ® wireless connection is not possible. In this case, favour a Mirror Screen ® connection using the USB socket.

Device management

For each device already connected to the system using a wireless connection (Bluetooth ® or wireless Mirror Screen ® connection), it is possible to determine a preferred connection mode (depending on the functions the device can support). It is therefore possible to determine whether the device should be connected using a wireless Bluetooth ® connection or a wireless Mirror Screen ® connection each time the system is started once the profile is chosen.

- Press the " **Settings** " application.

- In the list, select the " **Connectivity** ".

- Select " **My Devices** " to display the list of paired devices.

- Press this button to manage the connection of a device.

- Choose a connection type then confirm this choice by pressing " **APPLY** ".

Deleting a device

- Press the " **Settings** " application.

- In the list, select the " **Connectivity** ".

- Select " **My Devices** " to display the list of paired devices.

- Press this button.

- Press " **DELETE** ".
- Confirm by pressing " **YES** ".

CAUTION

Some devices that were just deleted from the system request a connection, refuse this request.

Screen Mirroring

NOTE

When a smartphone is connected using Mirror Screen ® , the vehicle's location and some vehicle data is sent to the smartphone (e.g. brand, left-hand or right-hand drive, day/ night mode, physical speed).

Apple®CarPlay® smartphone connection

Connecting just one Apple ®CarPlay ® smartphone can be carried out either by USB cable or using a wireless connection.

NOTE

First activate the Siri ® function on your Apple ® smartphone.
If the device fails to connect, refer to the Apple website to check that the device is compatible with this function.
If the problem persists, delete all saved connections on the smartphone and on the system before attempting a new connection.

The cable connection requires that you deactivate the CarPlay function in the **Settings, Bluetooth** menu of your smartphone.

In the **Bluetooth** menu, click on the " i " next to the relevant vehicle and deactivate CarPlay.

Connect the smartphone to the system using the USB socket compatible with Mirror Screen.

Apple ®CarPlay ® is automatically launched a few seconds after the USB connection has been established. In some cases, it may be necessary to unlock your device.
The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.

The cable connection allows you to avoid disconnections, especially when passing through toll booths.

NOTE

Only one USB socket enables the Mirror Screen ® connection (Apple ® CarPlay ®); refer to the "**Interior fittings**" section.

It is recommended that you use the device's original USB cables, preferably with a short cable to ensure optimum performance.

The wireless connection of an Apple ®CarPlay ® smartphone can be initiated from the **" My Devices "** menu.

- First activate the smartphone's CarPlay ® function. In the **Bluetooth** menu, click on the " i " next to the relevant vehicle and activate CarPlay.

- Press the **" Settings "** application.

- In the list, select the **" Connectivity ".**

- Select **" My Devices "** to display the device to be connected to Apple ®CarPlay ®. If the device has already been connected to the system via Bluetooth ® , select the device settings from the list of known devices and choose Apple ®CarPlay ® as the wireless connection mode. If the device was never been connected to the system before, it will have to be paired (refer to the "Bluetooth ® connection" section).

The system detects if the smartphone is compatible with Apple ®CarPlay ® and offers to connect to it following the pairing process. Subsequent automatic connection of the smartphone requires activation of the Bluetooth ® on your device.

- As soon as the connection is established, press this button to display the **" Apple ® CarPlay ®"** interface.

- To initiate the smartphone voice commands, press and hold the steering-mounted control button.
- Or press the steering-mounted control button for a short time (depending on version).

Android Auto smartphone connection

Connecting just one Android Auto smartphone can be carried out either by USB cable or using a wireless connection.

NOTE

First install the " **Android Auto** " application via "Play Store" on your smartphone.

The " **Android Auto** " function requires a compatible smartphone.

If the device fails to connect, refer to the Android Auto website to check that the device is compatible with this function.
If the problem persists, delete all saved connections on the smartphone and on the system before attempting a new connection.
To ensure an optimum wireless connection, we recommend avoiding placing your smartphone too close to other Wi-Fi networks to which it can connect automatically.

The cable connection requires that you deactivate the Android Auto wireless function, in the **Settings** menu of the **" Android Auto "** application of your smartphone.

- Connect the smartphone to the system using the USB socket compatible with Mirror Screen ®.

Android Auto is automatically launched a few seconds after the USB connection has been

established. A validation procedure on the smartphone has to be followed for the first connection, with the vehicle stationary. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.
The cable connection allows you to avoid disconnections, especially when passing through toll booths.

The wireless connection of an Android Auto smartphone can be initiated from the **" My Devices "** menu.

First activate the smartphone's Android Auto ® wireless function, in the Settings menu of the **"Android Auto"** application of your smartphone.

- Press the **" Settings "** application.

- In the list, select the **" Connectivity "** tab.

- Select **" My Devices "** to display the device to be connected to Android Auto.

If the device has never been connected to the system before, it will have to be paired (refer to the "Bluetooth ® connection" section).
The system detects if the smartphone is compatible with Android Auto and offers to connect to it following the pairing process.

If the device has already been connected to the system via Bluetooth ® , select the device settings from the list of known devices and choose Android Auto as the wireless connection mode.
The subsequent automatic connection of the smartphone requires activation of Bluetooth ® on your device.

- As soon as the connection is established, press this button to display the **" Android Auto "** interface.

- To initiate the smartphone voice commands, press and hold the steering-mounted control button.
- Or press the steering-mounted control button for a short time (depending on version).

Media

Changing source

- Press the **" Media "** application.

- Press this button to change source (radio, audio streaming via a USB socket, Bluetooth ® or Mirror Screen ®).

Selecting a radio station

- Press the **" Media "** application.

In the list, select the " Player " tab.

- Press one of the buttons to perform an automatic search for radio stations.

Or

- Frequencies up or down.

Or

- this button.

- Enter the frequency values using the virtual keypad.

- Press this button to confirm.

- A list of stations is available by pressing the **" Stations "** tab.

- Press **" Mute "** to deactivate the sound.

⚠ CAUTION

Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a charger with USB socket connected to the 12 V socket.
The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This phenomenon is normal in the propagation of radio waves and does not indicate any malfunction of the system.

Storing a radio station

- Select a station.

- Press the **" Media "** application.

- In the list, select the **" Player "** tab.

- Press the **" Radio Favorites "** button.

- Storing takes place via a long press on one of these buttons, or a long press on an existing favorite radio station, which will be replaced.

- Or by clicking on the heart button next to the station in the **Stations** tab.

- Press this button to return to the previous page.

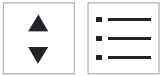
Automatic search for radio stations

Via the **"Media"** application.

- Press the **" Media "** application.

- In the list, select the **" Stations "** tab.

The search is carried out automatically.



Using the steering-mounted controls, press and hold this button.

The search is carried out automatically.

Activating radio station tracking

The system changes frequency automatically to obtain better reception.

- Press the **" Media "** application.

- In the list, select the **" Settings "** tab.

- Activate **" Radio Station Tracking ".**

Highlighting of the slider confirms that the function is activated.

Changing the waveband

- Press the **" Media "** application.

- In the list, select the **" Player "** tab.

- Press this button to change the waveband (FM - AM - DAB) according to the country of sale.

Activating traffic announcements

This function gives priority to listening to **Traffic announcements** alert messages. To be active, this function needs good reception of a radio station that transmits this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current radio station is automatically interrupted so that the message can be heard. Normal radio listening resumes as soon as the message is finished.

- Press the **" Media "** application.

- In the list, select the **" Settings "** tab.

- Activate **" Traffic Announcement (TA) ".**

The lighting of the slider confirms that the function is activated.

Audio streaming

The streaming function allows you to listen to the audio stream coming from the smartphone(s) connected via Bluetooth ®, USB (iPod ® type) or Mirror Screen ®.
First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level).
Then adjust the volume of the system.
If playback does not start, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.
Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

NOTE

Once connected in streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

Playing a track

- Press the " **Media** " application.

- If several devices are connected, press this button to select one.

Once the device is connected, browsing through the files is possible by pressing the **" Playlist "** or **" Library "** button.

Short press: go to the previous/next track.
Long press: fast-forward/rewind in a track.

Repeat the current title or the list of selected titles.

Random track playback.

Sound deactivation/reactivation

Configuring audio and radio settings

Audio settings can be accessed in 2 different ways.

Via the **Media** application

- Press the **" Media "** application.

- In the list, select the **" Settings "** tab.

Or
Via the Settings application

- Press the **" Settings "** application.

In the list, select the **" Audio and Radio "** tab.

It is possible to configure:

- Sound Settings.
- Radio Settings.
- Volume Settings.

Information and advice

The system supports USB Mass Storage devices or Apple ® devices via the USB sockets.
The adapter cable is not supplied.
Devices are managed using the audio system controls.
The system will only play audio files with ".wma, .aac, .flac, .ogg, .mp3" file extensions, at bit rates between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read.
".wma" files must be of the WMA 9 standard.
The supported sampling rates are 32, 44 and 48 KHz.
To avoid reading and display problems, we recommend choosing file names less than 20 characters long that do not contain any special characters (e.g. " ? . ; ù).
Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

NOTE

We recommend using the original USB cable for the portable device.

Phone

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a display overlaid on the screen.
Accepting the call:

- briefly press the phone button on the steering-mounted controls to accept an incoming call.

Or

- Press this touch screen button.

Ending the call:

- press and hold...

- the phone button on the steering-mounted controls to refuse the call.

Or

- Press this touch screen button.

- Press this button on the touch screen to send an automatic message indicating that you are driving.

Making a call

WARNING

Using the telephone is strongly discouraged while driving.
Park the vehicle.

Making a call using the numeric keypad

- Press the **" Phone "** application.

In the list, select the **" Keypad "** tab then dial the number.

- Press this button to make the call

Making a call using the list of recent calls

- Press the **" Phone "** application.

- In the list, select the **" Calls "** tab.

Or

- Briefly press on the steering-mounted controls.

- Select and call one of the most recent numbers called in the list.

NOTE

It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Calling a contact

- Press the **" Phone "** application.

- In the list, select the **" Contacts "** tab.
- Select the desired contact in the displayed list.

- Call the contact by selecting one of the contact's phone numbers.

Organizing the contact list

- Press the **" Phone "** application.

- In the list, select the **" Settings "** tab to display the phone-related settings.

- Choose to list the contacts starting with their first or last name.

Settings

Configuring the screen display

- Press the " **Settings** " application.

- In the list, select the " **Customization** " tab.

It is possible to configure:

- the screen colors associated with the interior ambient lighting. Refer to the "**Ease of use and comfort**" section.
- the sound ambiance.
- the visual welcome and goodbye animations.
- the screen transition animations.

Managing the system connectivity

- Press the " **Settings** " application.

- In the list, select the " **Connectivity** " tab.

It is possible to manage:

- The Bluetooth ® connection.
- The Mirror Screen ® smartphone connections (Apple ®CarPlay ®/Android Auto).
- The Wi-Fi connection.
- The privacy mode.

Configuring the system

- Press the " **Settings** " application.

- In the list, select the " **System** " tab.

It is possible to configure:

- the language.
- the date & time.
- the unit of distance and consumption (kWh/100 miles - miles, mi/kWh - miles, km/kWh - km).
- the temperature unit (Fahrenheit, Celsius). It is also possible to reset the system configuration.

Selecting the language

- Select " **Language** " to change the language.

- Press the desired language.

- Press the back arrow to return to the previous page.

Setting the date and time

Select" Date and Time " to modify the date and time.

- " **Automatic Date and Time** " is activated by default, so that the setting is made automatically according to your geolocation.

To adjust manually, deactivate " Automatic Date and Time ". Press the " Select Time Zone " field then define a time zone.

- Press the back arrow to return to the previous page.

- Press the " **Time Settings** " line then set the time.

- Press " **OK** " to confirm.

- Press the " **Date** " line then set the date.

- Press " **OK** " to confirm.

- Select the Time Format (12h/24h).

- Select the Date Format.

NOTE

The system does not automatically change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

Help

- Press the " **Help** " application.

In the list, select the " **Tutorials** " tab to watch explanatory videos for a quick start on screen management, some driving aids and voice recognition.

3rd Party Apps

Remotely operable additional functions (PHEV, BEV)

(Depending on country of sale)

Download on the App Store | GET IT ON Google Play

The following functions are available from the **MyCitroen App** application, which is accessible from a smartphone:

- Managing the traction battery charging (deferred charging).
- Managing the temperature pre-conditioning.
- Viewing the state of charge and range of the vehicle.

Installation procedure

- Download the **MyCitroen App** application from the appropriate online store for your smartphone.
- Create an account.
- Enter the vehicle identification number (available on the vehicle registration certificate).

For more information on **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.

NOTE

Network coverage. In order to be able to use the various remotely operable features, ensure that your vehicle is located in an area covered by the mobile network.

A lack of network coverage may prevent communication with the vehicle (for example, if it is in an underground car park).
In such cases, the application will display a message indicating that the connection with the vehicle could not be established.

Connect ONE

NOTE

This service is included for 10 years from the date at which the warranty starts, and is automatically activated when you install and activate Connect PLUS.

Connect PLUS

NOTE

This service is included for 12 months from the date at which the warranty starts. Activating Connect PLUS will automatically activate Connect ONE.

After the creation of your account via **MyCitroen App**, the installation of Connect PLUS is necessary to access the connected services.

Connect PLUS provides CONNECTED NAVIGATION, which includes traffic information and map updates, as well as Voice recognition. After the included 12 months subscription period, you will need to visit the Citroen Connected Services store to renew your Connect PLUS pack services.

Emissions Monitoring

As part of new emissions standards, the vehicle's on board diagnostics system monitors and records emissions.
This data is then sent to secure Stellantis servers.
Additionally, anonymised statistics are sent to the European Commission :

- Battery durability
- Onboard Monitoring data

The transfer of the following elements to the European Comission can be enabled/disabled:

- Onboard fuel consumption meter data
- Context data

Environmental Passport

The vehicle has its own Environmental Passport, which is accessible by scanning the QR code on the Manufacturer's sticker inside one of the front doors.
The Environmental passport allows checking the emissions values for the vehicle.

STARTING & OPERATING

Starting and Stopping The Engine

NOTE

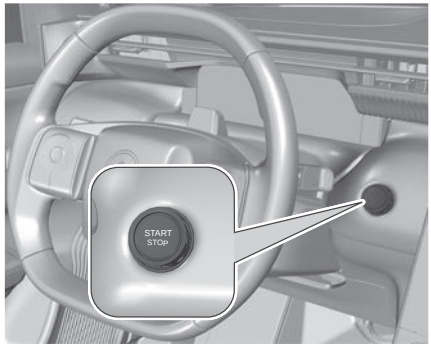
The electronic key must be present in the passenger compartment.
The electronic key is also detected in the trunk.
If the electronic key is not detected, a message is displayed.
Move the electronic key so that the engine can be started or switched off.

If there is still a problem, refer to the "**Key not detected - Back-up starting or Back-up switch-off**" section.

Starting the Engine

NOTE

A fault in the EEEDWS system may trigger a message when the vehicle is switched on.
Consult a dealer or qualified workshop.



- Select mode **P** or **N** on the automatic gearbox, then depress the brake pedal.
- Press the **"START/STOP"** button while maintaining pressure on the pedal until the engine starts.

In all circumstances, if one of the starting conditions is not met, a message is displayed.
In some circumstances, a message indicates that it is necessary to turn the steering wheel while pressing the **"START/STOP"** button to assist unlocking of the steering column.

NOTE

Petrol / Hybrid engines

After a cold start, pre-heating the catalytic converter can cause noticeable engine vibrations, for anything up to 2 minutes (accelerated idle speed).

NOTE

Hybrid engines

The vehicle always starts with the petrol engine to ensure the efficiency of the catalytic converter and the availability of the brake assist.
After a few moments, the petrol engine may stop if the operating conditions allow (state of charge of the traction battery, external temperature, torque demand, selected driving mode).

PHEV vehicles

- Fully depress the brake pedal and press the **START/STOP** button for approximately 2 seconds.
- Keep the foot on the pedal until the **READY** indicator light comes on, indicating the activation of the rechargeable hybrid system (confirmed by an audible signal).

WARNING

To exit **Park** mode, wait for the **READY** indicator lamp to come on.

By default, the system starts in **Electric** mode.

Depending on certain parameters (battery charge level or outside temperature), the system determines whether it is necessary to start the petrol engine.
It is possible to change the driving mode at any time using the mode selector.

BEV vehicles

The drive selector must be in mode **P.**

- Fully depress the brake pedal and briefly press the **START/STOP** button.
- Keep the foot on the brake pedal until the **READY** indicator light comes on and an audible signal is emitted, indicating that the vehicle is ready to drive.
- With the foot on the brake, select the mode **D** or **R.**
- Release the brake pedal, then accelerate.

On starting, the instrument panel illuminates and the power indicator cursor moves to the "neutral" position. The steering column automatically unlocks (you may hear a sound and feel the steering wheel move).

Stopping the Engine

- Immobilize the vehicle using the parking brake.
- Select mode **P** on the automatic gearbox.
- Press the **START/STOP** button.
- For PHEV vehicles, before leaving the vehicle, check that the **READY** indicator light is switched off.

The automatic gearbox locks in mode **P.**

NOTE

If the vehicle is not stationary, the engine will not stop.

WARNING

With the engine off, the braking and steering assistance systems are also cut off - risk of loss of control of the vehicle!

WARNING

Never leave your vehicle with the electronic key still inside.

BEV vehicles

- Press the **START/STOP** button.

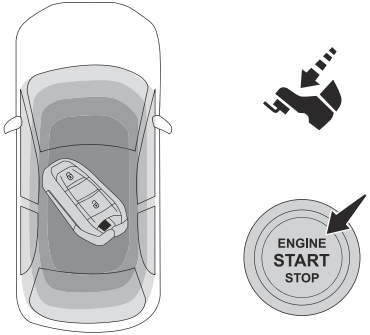
Before exiting the vehicle, check that:

- The drive selector is in mode **P.**
- The READY indicator light is off.

NOTE

If the driver's door is opened while the required conditions for stopping are not satisfied, an audible signal is emitted, accompanied by the display of a warning message.

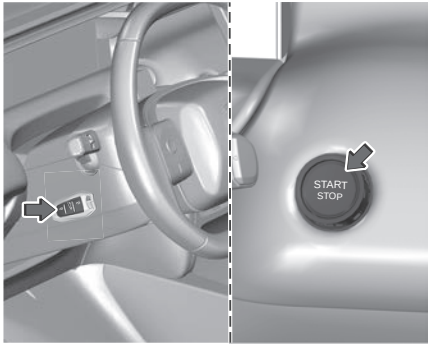
Switching on the ignition without starting the engine



With the electronic key in the passenger compartment, pressing the **"START/STOP"** button, **without depressing any of the pedals**, allows the ignition to be switched on without starting the engine.

- Press this button again to switch off the ignition and allow the vehicle to be locked.

Back-up starting



Place and hold the remote control against the back-up reader.

1. **With an automatic gearbox or a drive selector,** select mode **P,** then depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the **"START/STOP"** button.

The engine starts.

⚠ WARNING

Only leave the vehicle with propulsion system off, parking brake applied and, depending on transmission, first gear engaged or **P** selected.

Stop & Start Automatic Function

The Stop & Start function puts the engine temporarily into standby - STOP mode - during phases when the vehicle is stationary (e.g. red lights, traffic jams). The engine automatically restarts - START mode - as soon as the driver indicates the intention of moving off again.
Primarily designed for urban use, the function is intended to reduce fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.
The function does not affect the functionalities of the vehicle, in particular the braking.

Deactivation/Reactivation

By default, the function is activated when the ignition is switched on.

It is configured in the **ADAS** touch screen application.

or

Direct access to the **Shortcuts for driving aids.**

The display of a message on the instrument panel confirms the change of state.
If the function is deactivated while the engine is in STOP mode, it will restart immediately.

Associated indicator lights

Function activated: engine on standby (STOP mode).

Function deactivated or malfunction.

⚠ WARNING

Opening the bonnet. Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury caused by the engine restarting automatically.

⚠ WARNING

Driving on flooded roads

Before entering into a flooded area, it is strongly recommended that you deactivate the Stop & Start system.

For more information on **Driving recommendations**, particularly on flooded roads, refer to the corresponding section.

Operation

Main conditions for operation

- The driver's door must be closed.
- The driver's seat belt must be fastened.
- The level of charge in the battery must be sufficient.
- The temperature of the engine must be within its nominal operating range.
- The outside temperature must be between 0°C and 35°C.

Putting the engine into standby (STOP mode)

The engine automatically enters standby mode as soon as the driver indicates their intention to stop:

- With the gear selector set to mode **D** or with the button **M** pressed, when the brake pedal is depressed until the vehicle stops.
- With the gear selector set to mode **N,** with the vehicle stationary.

Time counter

A time counter adds up the time spent in standby during the journey. It is reset to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

Special cases

The engine will not go into standby if the conditions for operation are not met and in the following cases:

- Steep slope (ascending or descending).
- Sport mode selected (depending on equipment).
- Needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment.
- Demisting active.

In these cases, this indicator light flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

NOTE

After the engine has restarted, STOP mode is not available until the vehicle has reached a speed of 5 mph (8 km/h).

NOTE

During parking manoeuvres, STOP mode is not available for a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear or turning the steering wheel.

Restarting the engine (START mode)

The engine automatically restarts as soon as the driver indicates the intention of moving off again:

With an automatic gearbox:

- With the selector in mode **D** or **M**: when the brake pedal is released.
- With the selector in mode **N** and the brake pedal released: when the mode **D** or **M** is selected.
- With the selector in mode **P** and the brake pedal depressed: when the mode **R**, **N**, **D** or **M** is selected.
- When the reverse gear is engaged.

Special cases

The engine will restart automatically if the conditions for operation are met again and in the following cases:

- Deselecting the Sport mode (depending on equipment).
- Automatic gearbox in mode **N**, vehicle speed exceeds 0.6 mph (1 km/h).

In these cases, this indicator light flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

Malfunctions

In the event of a fault with the system, this warning light flashes for a few moments on the instrument panel, then remains on, accompanied by the display of a message.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

The vehicle stalls in STOP mode

All of the instrument panel warning lights come on if there is a fault.

- Switch off the ignition then start the engine again with the **START/STOP** button.

WARNING

12 V battery. The Stop & Start system requires a 12 V battery of specific technology and specification.

All work must be carried out only by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Excess Exhaust Emissions Driver Warning System (EEEDWS)

NOTE

For more information on the **Warning Lights**, **Indicators**, **and Messages** and the associated alerts, please refer to the corresponding sections.

The EEEDWS system calculates and monitors the emissions of the vehicle, generated by the powertrain or the brakes, and compares them to an emissions model for each trip.
If the system detects excessive emissions, a fault or even tampering with itself, and after a period of confirmation, it will trigger escalating warnings in the cluster every time the vehicle is switched on or off, and at regular intervals.

Once the fault is confirmed, "**Emission Control System fault: Driving restriction in X mi (km), repair needed**" will be displayed on the cluster, accompanied by an audible chime. The vehicle must be serviced before the indicated distance elapses.

When the distance has elapsed, the EEEDWS will display a permanent "**Emission Control System fault: X starts before immobilization, repair needed**" message on the cluster.

Consult a dealer or a qualified workshop to remedy the fault.

WARNING

If the vehicle is not serviced before the remaining distance and number of starts have elapsed, **it will be immobilized and unable to start** until the fault is cleared by a dealer or qualified workshop.

e-Auto mode (Hybrid 48 V)

The petrol engine stops when low power or torque is required and in stabilized conditions. The petrol engine is restarted by the belt starter.

The e-Auto mode can switch off the petrol engine in the following cases:

- When the operating strategies permit.
- Vehicle speed up to 90 mph (145 km/h).
- When the driver releases the accelerator pedal in stabilized conditions or in deceleration.
- During the stop phases.

Restarting is only achieved by the belt starter until the torque demand is available, if the traction battery is sufficiently charged. When the torque demand is insufficient, the petrol engine restarts.

NOTE

Using the steering wheel paddles also causes the restarting of petrol engine.

The e-Auto mode cannot switch off the petrol engine in the following cases:

- The state of charge is less than 30% of the traction battery energy.
- There is a need for vacuum brake assist depending on the altitude.
- The Sport mode is selected.
- Maintaining thermal comfort in the passenger compartment (heating, air conditioning, demisting/defrosting).

Deactivation/Reactivation

By default, the function is activated when the ignition is switched on.

It is configured in the **ADAS** touch screen application.

or Direct access to the **Shortcuts for driving aids.**

(e-Auto mode, depending on version**)**

Function deactivated, this indicator illuminates in the instrument panel.

NOTE

If high traction is required, the driver can deactivate the e-Auto mode using the touch screen application.

Steering Wheel Lock

WARNING

Never remove the key from ignition switch during driving as this will cause, depending on version, steering wheel lock.

WARNING

If the vehicle battery is discharged, the vehicle must not be towed or tow-started as the steering wheel lock cannot be disengaged.

WARNING

In the event of a malfunction of the key battery, the steering wheel lock remains engaged. Do not try to start the vehicle by pushing it and do not tow it.

Energy economy mode

This system manages the duration of use of certain functions, in order to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery with the ignition off.
After switching off the engine and for a maximum cumulative period of around 40 minutes, you can continue to use functions such as the audio and telematics system, dipped beam headlights or courtesy lights.

Selecting the mode

A confirmation message is displayed when energy economy mode is entered, and the active functions are placed on standby.

NOTE

If a telephone call is in progress at the time, it will be maintained for around 10 minutes via the audio system's hands-free system.

Exiting the mode

These functions are automatically reactivated the next time the vehicle is used.

- To restore the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run:
  - For less than 10 minutes, to use the equipment for approximately 5 minutes.
  - For more than 10 minutes, to use the equipment for approximately 30 minutes.
- Let the engine run for the specified duration to ensure that the battery charge is sufficient.

To recharge the battery, avoid repeatedly or continuously restarting the engine.

WARNING

A flat battery prevents the engine from starting.

For more information on **Jumpstarting**, refer to the corresponding section.

Load reduction mode

This system manages the use of certain functions according to the level of charge remaining in the battery.
When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as the air conditioning and the heated rear screen.
The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

Audible Pedestrian Warning System

This system alerts pedestrians that the vehicle is approaching, when driving in all-electric (MHEV) or in **Electric** driving mode (PHEV/BEV).

The pedestrian horn operates once the vehicle is moving and at speeds of up to 19 mph (30

km/h), in forward or reverse gear. This function cannot be deactivated.

Fault

In the event of a malfunction, this warning light illuminates on the instrument panel.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Brakes

Parking Brake

WARNING

Before leaving the vehicle, make sure the parking brake is applied.

Control indicator illuminates constantly when parking brake is applied.

Electric Parking Brake (EPB)

The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) system automatically applies the parking brake when the engine is switched off, and releases it when the vehicle moves off.
EPB is active by default at engine start.

Deactivation of the automatic EPB operation

In certain situations such as very cold weather or when being towed, it is necessary to deactivate the automatic operation of the EPB.

- Start the engine
- If the parking brake is released, apply the parking brake pulling the switch (P).
- Take your foot off the brake pedal
- Press the switch for 10 to 15 seconds
- Release the switch
- Depress and hold the brake pedal
- Pull the switch for two seconds

The deactivation of the automatic operation of the EPB is confirmed by illuminating a warning light in the Driver Information Center

- Stop the engine

When the EPB automatic function is deactivated, the electric parking brake remains operational, but must be applied and released manual.
To reactivate the automatic operation, repeat the steps described above.

Parking the vehicle

DANGER

Do not park the vehicle or leave the engine running on a flammable surface (e.g. dry grass, dead leaves).

The vehicle exhaust system is very hot, even several minutes after the engine stops. Risk of fire!

WARNING

Before leaving the vehicle, check that the parking brake is applied: the parking brake indicator lamps on the instrument panel and the control must be on fixed.
If the parking brake is not applied, there is an audible signal and a message is displayed on opening the driver's door.

WARNING

When the vehicle is parked: on a steep slope, heavily loaded or during towing

With an automatic gearbox, turn the wheels toward the pavement and select mode **P.**

When towing, the vehicle is approved for parking on slopes of up to 12%.
When the vehicle is parked on a slope, the electric parking brake must be applied before engaging mode **P** of the automatic gearbox

WARNING

Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle, as they could release the parking brake.

Indicator light

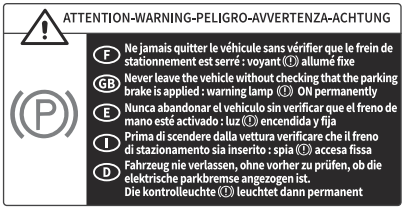
This indicator light comes on both on the instrument panel and on the control to confirm that the parking brake has been applied, accompanied by display of the message "**Parking brake applied**".

The indicator light goes out to confirm the release of the parking brake, accompanied by the display of the message **"Parking brake released".**

The indicator light flashes in response to a manual request to apply or release the brake.

WARNING

In the event of a battery failure, the electric parking brake will not operate.
As a safety measure, with an automatic gearbox or drive selector, if the parking brake is not applied, immobilise the vehicle by placing the supplied chock against one of the wheels.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



WARNING

Before leaving the vehicle, check that the parking brake is applied: the parking brake indicator lights on the instrument panel and the control must be on fixeed.
If the parking brake is not applied, there is an audible signal and a message is displayed on opening the driver's door.

WARNING

Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle, as they could release the parking brake.

WARNING

When the vehicle is parked: on a steep slope, heavily loaded or during towing

With an automatic gearbox, turn the wheels toward the pavement and select mode **P.**

When towing, the vehicle is approved for parking on slopes of up to 12%.
When the vehicle is parked on a slope, the electric parking brake must be applied before engaging mode **P** of the automatic gearbox

Manual Operation

Manual release

With the ignition on or engine running:

- Press the brake pedal.
- While maintaining pressure on the brake pedal, briefly push the control.

NOTE

If the brake pedal is not depressed, the parking brake is not released and a message is displayed.

Manual application

With the vehicle stationary:

- Briefly pull the control.

The control indicator light flashes to confirm the application request.

Automatic Operation

Automatic release

First ensure that the engine is running and that the driver's door is closed.
The electric parking brake gradually releases automatically as the vehicle moves off.
With an automatic gearbox

- Depress the brake pedal.
- Select mode **D, M** or **R.**
- Release the brake pedal and depress the accelerator pedal.

With a drive selector

- Depress the brake pedal.
- Select mode **D**, **B** or **R.**
- Release the brake pedal and depress the accelerator pedal.

NOTE

With an automatic gearbox or drive selector, if the brake does not release automatically, check that the front doors are properly closed.

WARNING

When stationary with the engine running, do not depress the accelerator pedal unnecessarily. Risk of parking brake release.

Automatic application

With the vehicle stationary, the parking brake is applied automatically when the engine is switched off.

WARNING

It is not applied automatically if the engine stalls or enters STOP mode with Stop & Start.

NOTE

In automatic mode, the parking brake can be manually applied or released at any time using the control.

Deactivating automatic operation

In some situations, for example when it is extremely cold or when towing (e.g. caravan, breakdown), it may be necessary to deactivate automatic operation of the system.

1. Start the engine.
2. Use the control to apply the parking brake, if it is released.
3. Take your foot fully off the brake pedal.
4. Push the control for 10 to a maximum of 15 seconds.
5. Release the control.
6. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
7. Pull the control for 2 seconds.

This indicator light on the instrument panel comes on to confirm deactivation of the automatic functions.

- Release the control and the brake pedal. From this point onwards, only the manual functions, using the control, allow the parking brake to be applied and released.
- Follow this procedure again to reactivate automatic operation (confirmed by the indicator light on the instrument panel going out).

WARNING

Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle, as they could release the parking brake.

WARNING

Never drive with the parking brake applied. Risk of overheating and damaging the braking system!

Special cases

Immobilizing the vehicle with the engine running

To immobilize the vehicle with the engine running, briefly pull the control.

Parking the vehicle with the brake released

WARNING

In very cold conditions (ice), applying the parking brake is not recommended.
To immobilise the vehicle, place the chock against one of the wheels.

NOTE

With an automatic gearbox or drive selector, mode **P** is automatically selected when the ignition is switched off. The wheels are blocked.

For more information on **Free-wheeling**, refer to the corresponding section.

NOTE

With an automatic gearbox or a drive selector, if you open the driver's door while mode **N** is engaged, an audible signal will sound and mode P will be engaged. The audible signal stops when the driver's door is closed.

Brake Assist

If brake pedal is depressed quickly and forcefully, maximum brake force is automatically applied.
Operation of brake assist might become apparent by a pulse in the brake pedal and a greater resistance when depressing the brake pedal. Maintain steady pressure on the brake pedal as long as full braking is required.
Maximum brake force is automatically reduced when brake pedal is released.

Active Emergency Braking

This system reduces the emergency stopping distance, by optimising the braking pressure.It is triggered in relation to the speed at which the brake pedal is depressed. The effect of this is a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in braking efficiency.

Regenerative Braking (PHEV)

Using B Mode

The Brake function emulates engine braking, slowing the vehicle with no need to depress the brake pedal. The vehicle decelerates more quickly when the driver releases the accelerator pedal.
The energy recovered when the accelerator pedal is released is then used to partially recharge the traction battery, thereby increasing the vehicle's driving range.

WARNING

The resulting deceleration of the vehicle only causes the brake lights to come on above a certain level.

- Use the **B** button on the Drive selector to activate/deactivate the mode.

When the mode is active, D on the instrument panel is replaced with B.

The mode status is not saved when the ignition is switched off.

Using the brake pedal

When the brake pedal is depressed, the intelligent braking system automatically recovers some of the energy and uses it to recharge the traction battery.
This energy recovery also reduces the use of the brake pads, thereby limiting their wear.

NOTE

The driver may experience a different sensation when depressing the brake pedal compared to a vehicle without regenerative braking.

WARNING

In some situations (e.g. battery with high charge level, prolonged use of regenerative braking e.g, extended downhill driving, extreme temperatures), the amount of regenerative braking may be temporarily limited, resulting in less deceleration.

The driver must remain alert to traffic conditions and must always be ready to use the brake pedal.

Regenerative Braking (BEV)

The Brake function emulates engine braking, slowing the vehicle with no need to depress the brake pedal.

The vehicle decelerates more quickly when the driver releases the accelerator pedal. The energy recovered when the accelerator pedal is released is then used to partially recharge the traction battery, thereby increasing the vehicle's driving range.

WARNING

The resulting deceleration of the vehicle only causes the brake lights to come on above a certain level.

There are three levels of braking, controlled by using the paddles behind the steering wheel :

+	Decreases regenerative braking effect.
−	Increases regenerative braking effect.

For each level of deceleration, the information appears on the dashboard in the form of one or many more "down" arrows close to D.

The deceleration level is saved when the ignition is switched off.

NOTE

If the conditions for the system to function are not met, a message is displayed on the cluster.

WARNING

In some situations (e.g. battery with high charge level, prolonged use of regenerative braking e.g, extended downhill driving, extreme temperatures), the amount of regenerative braking may be temporarily limited, resulting in less deceleration.

The driver must remain alert to traffic conditions and must always be ready to use the brake pedal.

With the brake pedal

When the brake pedal is depressed, the intelligent braking system automatically recovers some of the energy and uses it to recharge the traction battery. This energy recovery also reduces use of the brake pads, thereby limiting their wear.

NOTE

The driver may experience a different sensation when depressing the brake pedal compared to a vehicle without regenerative braking.

Transmission

Automatic Transmission

Automatic 6 or 7-speed transmission with push selector.
Depending on the propulsion type, it also offers a manual mode and a regenerative braking level control via the paddles located behind the steering wheel.

Push selector

Depending on the propulsion type, it also offers a manual mode and a regenerative braking level control via the paddles located behind the steering wheel.

ICE/MHEV Vehicles

PHEV vehicles

P Auto Park
Press this button to switch to Parking mode.
For parking the vehicle: the front wheels are blocked.

R Reverse

N Neutral
To free-wheel and move the vehicle, with the ignition off.

For more information on **Free-wheeling**, refer to the corresponding section.

D Driving in automatic mode
The gearbox manages gear changes according to the style of driving, the road profile and the vehicle load.
The gearbox also manages braking when the accelerator pedal is released.

M Driving in manual mode (ICE, MHEV)
Press this button to switch to manual mode.
The driver changes gear using the steeringmounted controls.

B Increased Braking Mode (PHEV)

- In mode **N**, with your foot on the brake pedal, push without passing the point of resistance:
  - Forwards, mode **R** is selected.
  - Backwards, mode **D** is selected.

Release the selector fully after each push; it will then return to its initial position.

Special cases

To avoid mode **N** (quick change from **D** to **R** and back again):

- In mode **R**, push backwards past the point of resistance, mode **D** is selected.
- In mode **D**, push forwards past the point of resistance, mode **R** is selected.
- To return to mode **N**, push without passing the point of resistance.

Special aspects of manual mode

The gearbox only changes from one gear to another if the vehicle speed and engine speed conditions permit.
The petrol engine can also be switched off in manual mode when stopped in traffic or when the accelerator pedal is released.

For MHEV vehicles, the all-electric potential of the driving mode used **(Normal or Eco)** is also retained.

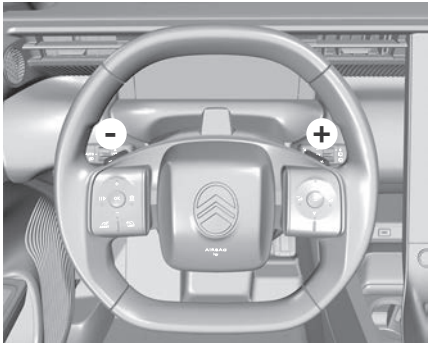
For PHEV vehicles, the all-electric potential of the driving mode used **(Hybrid or Electric)** is also retained.

NOTE

Using the steering wheel paddles also causes the restarting of petrol engine.
If high traction is required, the driver can deactivate the e-Auto mode using the touch screen application.

Paddle Shifters

Depending on version, the paddles allow manual control of the transmission or setting of the regenerative braking level.
On ICE/MHEV/PHEV versions In mode **M** or **D**, the steering-mounted control paddles can be used to change gear manually. They cannot be used to select neutral or to engage or disengage reverse gear.
On BEV versions, the paddles control the amount of regenerative braking.



+

ICE/Hybrid 48V/PHEV vehicles:

Selects next gear up.

BEV vehicles:

Decreases regenerative braking effect.

–

ICE/Hybrid 48V/PHEV vehicles:

Selects next gear down.

BEV vehicles:

Increases regenerative braking effect.

Information displayed on the instrument panel

When the ignition is switched on, the gearbox status is displayed on the instrument panel:

P	Parking
R	Reverse
N	Neutral
D1 ... 8	Automatic forward gear
B1. ..8	Automatic forward gear with regenerative braking function activated
M 1... 8	Manual forward gear

In all-BEV driving, the gear engaged is not indicated.
The state of the gearbox remains displayed on the instrument panel for a few seconds after switching off the ignition.

Electric motor Special case (Hybrid)

The electric motor included in the automatic gearbox, which is used for the first start, provides
12 V power supply via the DC/DC converter and provides electric assistance to the petrol engine.

The electric motor has the following features:

- Provide an additional torque to the gearbox, optimizing the performance of the petrol engine.
- Recover the kinetic energy of the deceleration phases, converting it into electrical energy, which can be used for traction or for the power supply of electrical accessories installed on the vehicle.
- Recharge the 48 V traction battery when the state of charge is too low.
- Provide all-electric driving only.

These features are achieved through the following functions set of automatic operating mode: – e-Boost.

- e-Creeping.
- e-Launch.
- e-Queueing.
- e-Parking.

A manual operating mode is also available to activate/deactivate the restart of the petrol engine while driving: the e-Auto mode.

NOTE

When mode **P** or **N** is selected on the automatic gearbox, the noise level in the engine compartment may increase due to the start of the charging phase of the traction battery: this is normal and does not represent a malfunction.

Operation

Only appropriate mode change instructions are validated.
With the engine running, if it is necessary to depress the brake pedal to change modes, an alert message will be displayed on the instrument panel.

WARNING

With the engine running and the brakes released, if **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves off, even without pressing the accelerator pedal.
Never depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time - risk of damage to the gearbox!

NOTE

If you open the driver's door while mode **N** is engaged, an audible signal will sound and mode **P** will be engaged. The audible signal stops when the driver's door is closed.

WARNING

At speeds below 3 mph (5 km/h), opening the driver's door will engage mode **P** - risk of sudden braking!

WARNING

In the event of battery failure, it is essential to place the chock(s) supplied with the tool kit against one of the wheels to immobilise the vehicle.

Special aspects of automatic mode

These functions respond to common driving situations where the electric motor is available to provide additional power or zero-emission driving.

NOTE

These functions are only available if the traction battery is sufficiently charged.
These five functions cannot be deactivated.

e-Launch

With the petrol engine off, this function allows the vehicle to run in electric mode without affecting performance.
By depressing the accelerator pedal, the vehicle starts to drive as soon as the mode **D** or **R** of the automatic gearbox is selected.

e-Creeping

With the petrol engine off, by releasing the brake pedal, this function allows the vehicle to be moved forward or backward in electric mode without having to depress the accelerator pedal, as soon as the mode **D** or **R** of the automatic gearbox is selected.

e-Queueing

This function makes it possible to follow a queue of vehicles with several stops followed by restarts of the vehicle, using the e-Creeping, e-Launch and electric driving modes.

e-Parking

This function allows parking maneuvers to be carried out at reduced speed with the help of the electric motor when the mode **D** or **R** of the automatic gearbox is selected.

e-Boost

This function allows simultaneous operation of the petrol engine and the electric motor, combined with the automatic gearbox.
By fully depressing the accelerator pedal ("kickdown" function), when the traction battery is fully charged, it is possible to exceed the torque of the petrol engine alone, thanks to the additional torque provided by the electric motor.

NOTE

Repeated use of the brake pedal causes the restart of petrol engine to provide braking assistance.

Special aspects of manual mode

The gearbox only changes from one gear to another if the vehicle speed and engine speed conditions permit.

Starting the vehicle

- Fully depress the brake pedal.
- Start the engine.
- With your foot on the brake pedal, push once or twice backwards to select automatic mode D, or forwards to shift into reverse gear R.
- Release the brake pedal.
- Accelerate gradually to automatically release the electric parking brake.

The vehicle moves off immediately.

⚠ WARNING

Never try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

Switching the vehicle off

Regardless of the current gearbox mode, mode **P** is immediately engaged automatically when the ignition is switched off.

However, in mode **N**, mode **P** will be engaged after a delay of 5 seconds (time to enable free-wheeling mode).

Check that mode **P** has been engaged and that the electric parking brake was applied automatically; if not, apply it manually.

The corresponding indicator lights on the gear selector and the electric parking brake control must be on, as well as the indicator lights on the instrument panel.

Gearbox malfunction

This warning light comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message.

Go to a dealer or a qualified workshop.
Do not drive faster than 62 mph (100 km/h), keeping to the speed limit.

Switching of the gearbox to back-up mode

Mode **D** locks in third gear.

The paddles on the steering wheel do not work and mode **M** is no longer accessible.

You may feel a significant jolt on engaging reverse gear. This will not damage the gearbox.

Selector malfunction

Minor malfunction

This warning light comes on, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Drive carefully.
Go to a dealer or a qualified workshop.
In some cases, the selector indicator lights may no longer come on, but the gearbox state is still displayed on the instrument panel.

Major malfunction

This warning light comes on, accompanied by the display of a message.

⚠ WARNING

You must stop the vehicle.

Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Drive Selector (BEV)

e Drive Selector is a pulse selector with a regenerative braking function for electric vehicles.
The Drive Selector provides traction control based on the driving style, the road profile and the vehicle load.
It also manages engine braking when the accelerator pedal is released.

P Park Mode

R Reverse Mode

N Neutral Mode

D Drive (automatic) Mode

Park Mode P

To engage the Park Mode, press the **P** button when the vehicle is stationary.

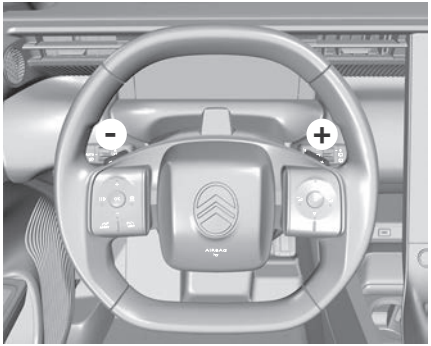
In **P** position, the front wheels are mechanically locked.

To disengage the Park Mode, press the brake pedal and select the desired driving mode. The Park Mode (**P**) is automatically engaged when:

- the ignition is switched off
- the driver's door is opened while the vehicle is moving below 5 km/h
- **N** mode (Neutral) has been selected for an extended period

Automatic Mode D

Three levels of regenerative braking can be selected using the steering wheel paddles:



- Pull the left paddle (-) to increase braking force
- Pull the right paddle (+) to decrease braking force

Use the maximum braking level when driving:

- Down steep hills
- In deep snow
- On muddy surfaces
- In stop-and-go traffic

The selected braking level is retained when the ignition is switched off.

Information displayed on the instrument panel

When the ignition is switched on, the drive selector status is displayed on the instrument panel:

P Parking

R Reverse

N Neutral

D Drive (automatic forward gear)

B Brake (regenerative braking activated)

Operation

- In mode **N,** with your foot on the brake pedal, push without passing the point of resistance:
  - Forwards, mode **R** is selected.
  - Backwards, mode **D** is selected.

Release the selector fully after each push; it will then return to its initial position.

Special cases

To avoid mode **N** (quick change from **D** to **R** and back again):

- In mode **R**, push backwards past the point of resistance, mode **D** is selected.
- In mode **D**, push forwards past the point of resistance, mode **R** is selected.
- To return to mode **N**, push without passing the point of resistance.

Free Wheeling (ICE)

In certain situations, it is necessary to put the vehicle into free-wheeling mode (e.g. towing, on a rolling road, automatic car wash (Wash mode), rail or sea transport).
The procedure varies according to the type of gearbox and parking brake.

WARNING

Never leave the vehicle unattended with the vehicle into free-wheeling mode.

WARNING

When the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox or a drive selector, it is strongly recommended to stay inside the vehicle when it is in free-wheeling mode.

With automatic gearbox or drive selector and electric parking brake

Release procedure

With the vehicle stationary and the engine running:

- Depress and hold the brake pedal.
- Select and hold the mode **N** on the push selector.
- Press the **START/STOP** button around 1 s to switch off the engine (confirmed by the flashing of the **P** and **N** indicator lights).
- Release the brake pedal to switch on the ignition and deactivate the electric parking brake.

WARNING

A message is displayed on the instrument panel to confirm the unlocking of the wheels for 15 minutes.
When the vehicle is free-wheeling, the audio system cannot be updated (message displayed on the instrument panel).

After 15 minutes or reverting to normal operation

- While depressing the brake pedal, restart the engine and select mode **P**.

NOTE

Keyless Entry and Start (Passive Entry)

You must not depress the brake pedal while switching the ignition on again, then switching it off. If you do, the engine will start, requiring you to restart the procedure.

Drive Modes

Drive Mode Selector

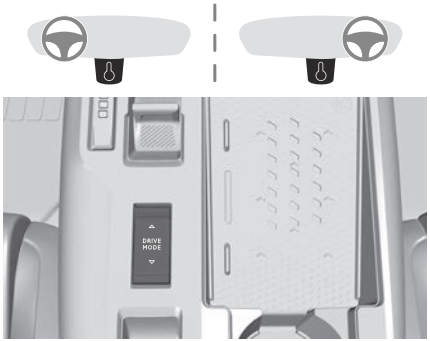
The driving modes available depend on the engine and equipment of the vehicle.

ICE, Hybrid 48 V (MHEV): Sport / Normal / Eco / e-Auto (only MHEV version)

PHEV: Electric / Hybrid / Sport

BEV: Sport / Normal / Eco

	ICE	Hybrid 48 V	PHEV	BEV
Normal	●	●		●
Electric			●	
Eco	●	●		●
Hybrid			●	
Sport	●	●	●	●



Driving modes are selected using the **Drive Mode** control:

1. Press the **Drive Mode** switch once to display the current mode on the Instrument Cluster.
2. Each additional press will cycle through the available driving modes.

Whenever the ignition is switched on, Normal driving mode is selected by default.
When the message disappears, the selected mode is activated and remains indicated on the Instrument Cluster (except Normal mode).
For PHEV models, when entering low emission zones, the vehicle automatically switches to electric drive mode, provided the traction battery has sufficient charge (Geofencing).

Hybrid

Available on **PHEV** version only.

Hybrid mode optimizes the fuel consumption by managing the use of one or both the combustion engine and electric motor, depending on driving conditions and style.

When the battery charge level is sufficient and acceleration demand is moderate, the vehicle may run in using 100% electric power.

Electric

Available on **PHEV** version only.

Electric mode is the default setting at every startup, and enables driving using 100% electric power.

The maximum speed in this mode is approximately 135 km/h (84 mph).
When starting the vehicle, if the conditions do not allow the activation or retention of **Electric** mode, the message "**Electric mode currently unavailable**" is displayed on the instrument panel. The vehicle automatically changes to **Hybrid** mode.

Conditions of activation

- Adequate battery charge level. Charging the vehicle after each drive is therefore recommended. **Electric** mode is available as long as there is power left in the battery.
- Outside temperature between approximately -5°C and 45°C.

Manually exiting the mode

- Fully depress the accelerator pedal, or
- Select another mode.

NOTE

In case of non-use of the vehicle for a long period (several months), a restart of the petrol engine may occur even if the battery is charged.

WARNING

In the event of multiple starts of the internal combustion engine without a sufficient rise in temperature, **Electric** mode may be temporarily unavailable (natural phenomenon of dilution of fuel in oil).
The message "**Electric mode unavailable: automatic operation in progress**" then appears on the instrument panel.
To regain normal electrical operation, drive approximately 50 miles (80 km) in "motorway" conditions or approximately 125 miles (200 km) in urban conditions.
This phenomenon does not cause any mechanical or electrical damage. It can occur several times in the life of the vehicle.

Sport

Sport mode enables a more dynamic driving style by enhancing the vehicle's performance response. Vehicle dynamics information (e.g. speed, power output) may be displayed in the **Instrument Cluster**.

- On **BEV** models, maximum electric motor power output is available for improved performance.
- On **PHEV** models, both the combustion engine and the electric motor work together for maximum power, while fully electric driving remains possible at low speeds (below 30 km/h).

Normal

Available on all versions except **PHEV**.

Normal mode is the default setting every time the vehicle is started.

Eco

Available on all versions except **PHEV**.

Depending on versions, **Eco** mode helps reduce fuel consumption by optimizing the operation of:

- Accelerator pedal response, becoming less sensitive;
- Automatic transmission behavior, with gears earlier shift up and later shift down;
- Coasting function, with reduced engine/motor braking;

- Climate control, with heating and air conditioning reduced performances.

For **BEV** models, electric motor maximum power output and cabin heating performance are limited to optimize range.

NOTE

Kick-down

In **Normal** and **Eco** modes, it is always possible to obtain maximum torque and power by depressing the accelerator pedal fully.

Manual

Available on **ICE**, **MHEV** version only.
Manual mode is activated by moving the push selector to the **M** position.
Once engaged, gears can be changed manually using the paddles located behind the steering wheel.

Grip control modes

This special patented traction control system improves grip on snow, mud and sand.

NOTE

For optimum grip on snow, the vehicle is equipped with winter tyres (3PMSF) or 4-season tyres (M+S), depending on country of sale.

Operating Modes

Snow

This mode constantly adapts the level of wheel spin to offer maximum traction according to the snow conditions (a lot of wheel spin in thick snow; very little on ice). The wheel spin is also adapted to the conditions encountered when driving uphill by optimizing the acceleration of the vehicle.(mode active up to 50 mph (80 km/h))

Mud

This mode, when moving off, allows considerable spin on the wheel with the least grip to optimize clearing of the mud and to regain grip. At the same time, the wheel with the most grip is controlled in such a way as to transmit as much traction torque as possible. When moving, the system optimizes wheel spin to respond to the driver's requirements as fully as possible.
(mode active up to 31 mph (50 km/h))

Sand

This mode allows little spin on the two driving wheels at the same time to allow the vehicle to move forward and limit the risks of getting stuck in the sand.
(mode active up to 75 mph (120 km/h))

WARNING

Do not use the other modes on sand as the vehicle may become stuck.

NOTE

Recommendations

The vehicle is designed principally to drive on tarmac roads, but it may occasionally drive on other less passable terrain. However, it does not permit off-road driving:

- Driving on terrain that can damage the underbody or tear off elements (e.g. Fuel pipe, fuel cooler) by obstacles or stones in particular.
- Driving on terrain with steep gradients and poor grip.
- Crossing a waterway.

Engine Exhaust

DANGER

Engine exhaust gases contain poisonous carbon monoxide, which is colourless and odourless and could be fatal if inhaled.

- If exhaust gases enter the interior of the vehicle, open the windows.
- Have the cause of the fault rectified by a workshop.
- Avoid driving with an open load compartment, otherwise exhaust gases could enter the vehicle.

Exhaust filter

Automatic cleaning process

The exhaust filter system filters soot particles out of the exhaust gases.
When illuminated, indicates the start of saturation of the exhaust filter, accompanied by a message on the cluster.
As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a vehicle speed of at least 60 km/h (36 mph) until the control indicator extinguishes.

NOTE

On a new vehicle, the first exhaust filter regeneration operations may be accompanied by a burning smell, which is normal. Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, water vapor can be emitted at the exhaust on acceleration. This does not affect the behavior of the vehicle or the environment.

Cleaning process not possible

If illuminated steadily, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, this indicates that the exhaust filter additive level is too low. The reservoir must be topped-up without delay. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

Catalytic converter

The catalytic converter reduces the amount of harmful substances in the exhaust gases.

NOTE

Fuel grades other than those listed in the "Fuel" chapter could damage the catalytic converter or electronic components. Unburnt petrol will overheat and damage the catalytic converter.
Therefore avoid excessive use of the starter, running the fuel tank dry and starting the engine by pushing or towing.

In the event of misfiring, uneven engine running, a reduction in engine performance or other unusual problems, have the cause of the fault rectified by a workshop as soon as possible. In an emergency, driving can be continued for a short period, keeping vehicle speed and engine speed low.

Fuel

Fuels Compatibility

E5 E10

Petrol fuels conforming to the EN228 standard containing up to 5% and 10% ethanol respectively.

WARNING

The use of any other type of (bio) fuel (e.g. pure or diluted vegetable or animal oils, domestic fuel) is strictly prohibited - risk of damaging the engine and fuel system!

NOTE

The only fuel additives authorized for use are those that meet the B715001 (Petrol).

Travelling abroad

Certain fuels could damage your vehicle's engine.

In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel may be required (specific octane rating, specific trade name, etc.) to ensure correct operation of the engine.
For all additional information, consult a dealer.

Refuelling

ICE or Hybrid 48 V approximately 55L and PHEV approximately 60L

Reserve level: approximately 6 litres.

Low fuel level

When the low fuel level is reached, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal. When it first comes on, about **6 litres** of fuel remain.

Until sufficient fuel is added, this warning lamp appears every time the ignition is switched on, accompanied by the message and the audible signal. When driving, this message and audible signal are repeated with increasing frequency as the fuel level drops towards **0**.

You must refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel.

NOTE

A small arrow by the warning lamp indicates which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is located on.

WARNING

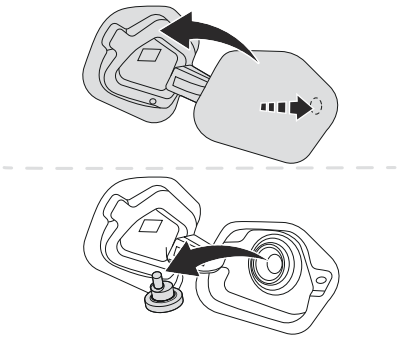
Stop & Start / e-Auto mode

Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode or in stand-by; you must switch off the ignition.

Refuelling

Any addition of fuel must be in quantities of at least 10 litres, in order to be registered by the fuel gauge.
Opening the filler flap may create a noise caused by an inrush of air. This vacuum is entirely normal, resulting from the sealing of the fuel system.
To refuel in complete safety:

1. **Always switch off the engine.**



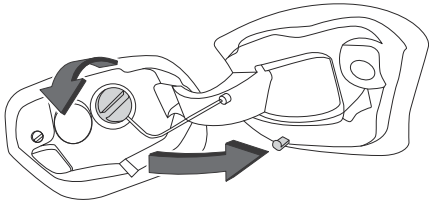
2. (PHEV vehicles) unlock the filler flap by pressing the flap unlocking button on the dashboard.
3. Press the rear of the filler flap.

NOTE

PHEV vehicles

After pressing the button on the dashboard, the filler flap may not open for several minutes. A sound is emitted when the filler flap opens.
If the flap becomes stuck, press and hold the button on the dashboard for more than 3 seconds.

4. Select a pump that delivers the correct fuel type for the vehicle's engine (see a reminder label on the inside of the filler flap).



5. Turn the filler cap to the left, remove it and place it on its support on the filler flap (depending on version).
6. Insert the filler nozzle and push it in as far as possible before starting to refuel (to minimise the risk of splashing).
7. Fill the tank.

Do not continue after the nozzle's third cut-out. Doing so may cause malfunctions.

After refuelling:

1. Put the filler cap back in place and turn it to the right (depending on version).
2. Push the fuel filler flap to close it.

The vehicle is fitted with a catalytic converter, which helps to reduce the level of harmful emissions in the exhaust gases.

For petrol engines, you must use unleaded fuel.

The filler neck is narrower, allowing only unleaded petrol nozzles to be inserted.

WARNING

If you have put in the wrong fuel for the vehicle, you must have the fuel tank drained and filled with the correct fuel before starting the engine.

Charging

General Recommendations

These recommendations and general information apply to electrified vehicles:

- Hybrid 48 V
- PHEV
- BEV

The electric drive system, which operates at a voltage of approximately 400 V, is identified by orange cables and its components are marked with this symbol:

WARNING

An electric vehicle's power train can become hot during use and after switching off the ignition.

Comply with the warning messages shown on the labels, particularly inside the charging flap.

DANGER

In the event of a problem

All work on or modifications to the vehicle's electrical system (including the traction battery, connectors, purple cables and other components visible from the interior or exterior) is strictly prohibited - Risk of severe burns or potentially fatal electric shock (short-circuit/electrocution)!
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

High voltage system

DANGER

The High voltage system voltage is dangerous and can cause burns or other injuries or even fatal electric shock.
Since damage to high voltage components is not visible, dealer recommends that you:

- Never touch the components, damaged or not, and never let your jewelry or other metallic objects come into contact with these components.
- Never work on the high voltage cables (purple or orange) or on any other high voltage component marked with the Electric risk label. Any intervention on the high voltage system must be carried out by qualified persons in workshops qualified and approved to carry out this type of work.
- Never damage, modify or remove the high voltage cables (purple or orange) or disconnect them from the high voltage network.
- Never open, modify or remove the cover of the traction battery.
- Never work with cutting and forming tools or heat sources near high voltage components and cables.

Any intervention on the high voltage system must be carried out by qualified persons in workshops qualified and approved to carry out this type of work.

DANGER

Damage to the vehicle or the traction battery could result in the leakage of toxic gases or fluids either immediately or later.
The Manufacturer recommends that you:

- Always inform the fire and emergency services in the event of an incident, warning that the vehicle is equipped with a traction battery.
- Never touch the liquids leaking from the traction battery.
- Do not inhale the gases emitted by the traction battery which are toxic.
- Move away from the vehicle in the event of incident or accident, the gases emitted being flammable and could cause a fire.

DANGER

In case of low level of fluid in the cooling tank, the refilling shall only be performed in a qualified and trained workshop to verify that the leakage is not in the traction battery.

WARNING

High-pressure washing

To avoid damaging the electrical components, it is expressly prohibited to use high-pressure washing in the engine compartment or under the body.
Do not use a pressure greater than 80 bar when washing the bodywork.

WARNING

In the event of an impact to the vehicle's underbody

In these situations, the electrical circuit or the traction battery can be seriously damaged.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Move away from the vehicle.
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

WARNING

In the event of an accident with an airbag deployment

The traction battery is automatically disconnected from the electrical circuit to prevent the initiation of short circuits and/or fires.

WARNING

This system may be hot both when the ignition is on and after switching it off.
Comply with the warning messages shown on the labels.

Hybrid 48 V vehicles

Electrical system

The electrical circuit of the Hybrid 48 V system is identified by purple cables and its components are marked with this symbol:

Traction battery

The 48 V Li-ion (Lithium-ion) traction battery stores the electrical energy needed to propel the vehicle.
The traction battery is automatically charged to ensure that the charge level is always around 50% of the maximum level, in order to fully exploit the Hybrid 48 V functionality and, at the same time, always have some capacity available for the energy recovery operation.
It is located under the front left seat.
The traction battery's range varies depending on the type of driving, the route and the ageing of its components.

NOTE

The traction battery ageing depends on several factors, such as climatic conditions and the distance travelled.

WARNING

To preserve the mileage of your vehicle and the durability of your traction battery, Stellantis recommends that you:

- Do not expose the vehicle to temperatures below -30°C and above +60°C for more than 24 hours.
- Do not use a generator to recharge your vehicle's traction battery.

WARNING

Vehicle in storage for more than 1 month.

Always park the vehicle in a place with temperatures between -10°C and +30°C (parking in a place with extreme temperatures can damage the traction battery).

Carry out the charging procedure for the traction battery (48V) via the accessory battery (12V) and the DC/DC converter.

Refer to the **12 V battery/Accessory batteries** section for the charging the batteries using a battery charger procedure.

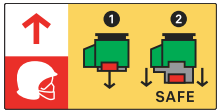
PHEV, BEV vehicles - Specific recommendations

These recommendations and specific information are only applicable to PHEV and BEV. They introduce the control unit (mode 2) required to carry out the standard charging at home.

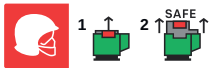
WARNING

These labels are intended solely for use by firefighters and maintenance services in the event of any work on the vehicle.
No other person must touch the device shown on the following labels:

PHEV:



BEV:



WARNING

Never allow water or dust to enter the connector or charging nozzle - risk of electrocution or fire!
Never connect / disconnect the charging nozzle or cable with wet hands - risk of electrocution!

CAUTION

To preserve the range of your vehicle and the durability of the battery, the manufacturer recommends that:

- The battery should be charged only up to 80% as much as possible.
- Never allow the battery charge to reach 0%
- In case of long-term storage (more than 12h) when the level of charge of the traction battery is low or high, prefer a charge level between 20 and 40%.
- Limit the use of fast charging.
- Do not expose the vehicle to temperatures below -30°C or above +60°C for more than 24h.
- Avoid charging the vehicle when the temperature is below 0°C (except if the vehicle has been driving for more than 20 minutes) or above +30°C.
- Do not use your vehicle's traction battery as an energy source unless your vehicle is fitted with the Vehicle to Load (V2L) system.
- Do not use a generator to recharge the traction battery of the vehicle.

CAUTION

When washing

Before washing the vehicle, always check that the charging flap is closed correctly.
Never wash the vehicle while the battery is on charge.

Traction battery

Traction battery overheating

If the following warning lights appear, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal, it is required to:

- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible in the best conditions of safety.
- Switch off the ignition.
- Evacuate the vehicle as quickly as possible and move to a safe distance.
- Call the fire department and/or the emergency services and tell them that the vehicle is an electric one.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of death / Risk of serious injury

A chain reaction can occur up to a traction battery fire.

⚠ WARNING

In the event of damage to the traction battery

It is strictly prohibited to work on the vehicle yourself.
Do not touch liquids coming from the battery, and in the event of skin contact with these products, wash abundantly with water and contact a doctor as soon as possible.
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Disposal of the traction battery
The traction battery is designed for the life of the vehicle if the recommendations of dealer are followed.
If it becomes necessary to replace the battery, contact the dealer dealer for instructions on its disposal. Improper disposal carries the risk of severe burns, electric shock, and damage to the environment.
In accordance with regulations, dealer ensures a second life or recycling of this component in collaboration with qualified operators.

Preserve Battery Capacity

To preserve the range and the durability of the high voltage battery, the following is recommended:

- Whenever possible do not charge the high voltage battery more than 80%.
- Never fully discharge the battery.
- Do not store the vehicle for a long period of non-use (more than twelve hours) when the high voltage battery has a low or high charge level. Prefer a charge level between 20 and 40%.
- Limit fast charging, as frequent use can accelerate battery wear.
- Do not expose the vehicle to temperatures below -30 °C and above 60 °C for more than 24 hours.
- When possible, avoid charging the vehicle when the ambient temperature is extremely low or high (e.g. below –10 °C or above +30 °C), especially with fast charging.
  With low temperatures, prefer to start charging after a 20 minutes drive to warm up the battery.
  With high temperatures, prefer charging in the shade or during cooler hours.
- If not strictly necessary, avoid using the high voltage battery as a power source (e.g. for external devices)
- Avoid recharging the high voltage battery with an external generator.

Precautions

PHEV or BEV vehicles have been developed in accordance with the recommendations for maximum electromagnetic field limits established by the ICNIRP (International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection - 1998 Guidelines).

Wearers of pacemakers or equivalent devices

Persons with a pacemaker or similar devices should consult a doctor for possible precautions or instructions to ensure that it is guaranteed to work in an environment which meets the recommendations of the ICNIRP.
If in doubt, during charging do not remain inside or near the vehicle, near the charging cable or the charging unit

⚠ WARNING

In case of doubt

Domestic or accelerated charging (mode 2 or 3): do not remain inside or near the vehicle, or near the charging cable or charging unit, even for a short time.

Superfast charging (mode 4 ; Electric): do not use the system yourself and avoid approaching public fast charging points.

Leave the area and ask a third party to recharge the vehicle.

Charging system

The electrical circuit of the electric system is identified by orange cables and its components are marked with this symbol:

⚠ DANGER

In the event of a problem

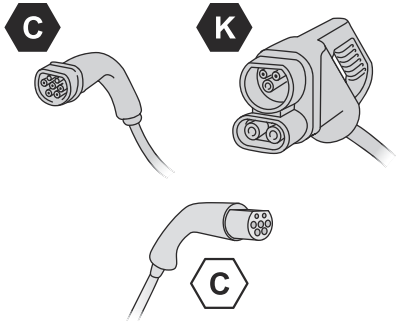
All work on or modifications to the vehicle's electrical system (including the traction battery, connectors, orange cables and other components visible from the interior or exterior) is strictly prohibited - Risk of severe burns or potentially fatal electric shock (short-circuit/electrocution)! Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Charging cables, sockets and chargers

The traction battery can be charged using several different types of cables.
The charging cables supplied with the vehicle are compatible with the electrical installations of the country of sale. If you are traveling abroad, refer to the following tables to check the compatibility of local electrical installations with the charging cables.
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain the appropriate charging cable(s).

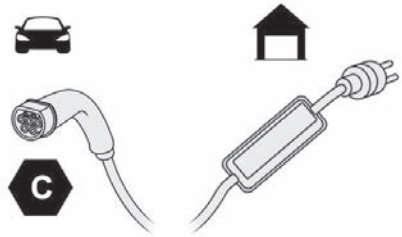
Identification labels on charging sockets/connectors

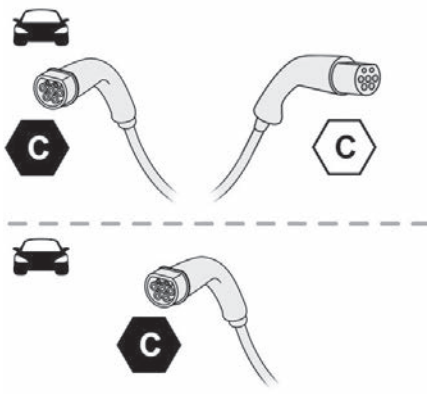
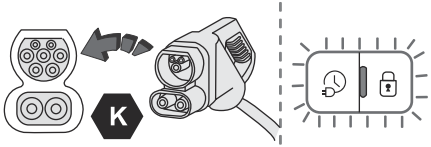
Identification labels are affixed to the vehicle, charging cable and charger to inform the user about which device needs to be used.



The meaning of each identification label is as follows:

Identification label	Location	Configuration	Power type
C	Charging connector (vehicle side)	TYPE 2	AC
C	Charging socket (charger side)	TYPE 2	AC
K	Charging connector (vehicle side)	COMBO 2 (FF)	DC

Charging Type	Compatibility	Specifications
Mode 2 charging cable with integrated control unit  Identification label **C** on the charging connector (vehicle side)	Conventional electrical socket (depending on country) 	Charge limited to a maximum of 10 A
	green'up type socket 	Charge limited to a maximum of 16 A

Charging Type	Compatibility	Specifications
Mode 3 charging cable  Identification labels **C** on the charging connector (vehicle side) and on the socket (charger side).	Accelerated charging unit socket. Accelerated charging unit. 	Charge limited to a maximum of 32 A per phase.
Mode 4 charging cable  Identification labels **K** on the charging connector (vehicle side) and on the socket (charger side).	Superfast DC charging station	Up to 250 A.

NOTE

The estimated charging time is indicated on the instrument panel when the vehicle is connected. It may vary depending on various factors such as the outside temperature or the quality of the electricity supply.
If the outside temperature is below -10°C, it is recommended to connect the vehicle as soon as possible as the charging time may increase significantly. The traction battery may not charge fully.

CAUTION

Domestic charging cable (mode 2)

It is recommended to have the domestic electrical network inspected by a professional before using it to charge your vehicle.
It is essential to avoid damaging the cable and to keep it intact.
In the event of damage, do not use it and contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to replace it.

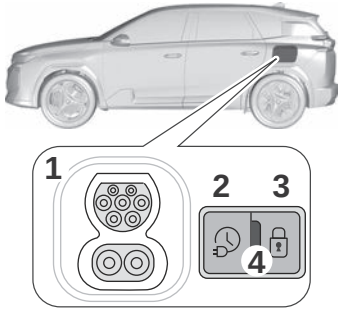
CAUTION

Accelerated charging unit (mode 3)

Do not dismantle or modify the accelerated charging unit - risk of electrocution and/or fire! To find out how it is used, please refer to the accelerated charging unit's user instructions.

Charging flap

The charging flap is located on the rear left-hand side of the vehicle.



1 Charging connector

2 Deferred charging activation button

3 Nozzle locking indicator light
Steady red: nozzle positioned correctly and locked into the connector.
Flashing red: nozzle incorrectly positioned or locking not possible.

4 Charging indicator light

Light colour	Meaning
Fixed white	Welcome lighting when flap is opened.
Fixed blue	Deferred charging.
Flashing green	Charging in progress.
Fixed green	Charging complete.
Fixed red	Fault.

DANGER

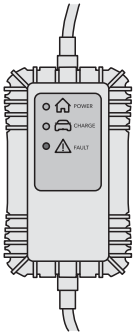
In case of impact, even light, against the charging flap, do not use it.
Do not dismantle or modify the charging connector - risk of electrocution and/or fire! Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

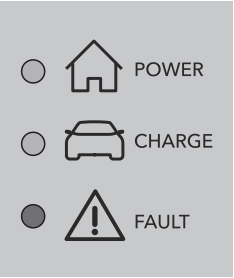
WARNING

Take care not to pass the charging cable under the bumper when connecting or disconnecting it, as this may inadvertently open the tailgate.

Control unit (mode 2)

Refer to the handbook supplied with the control unit before use.
If resetting the device does not work, consult a dealer or qualified workshop





Illuminated steadily when the device is powered.

Illuminated steadily when charge is complete or battery is in preconditioning phase.
Flashing when power is flowing to the vehicle.

Illuminated steadily during self test or in case of fault.

Upon plugging the charging cable into a domestic socket, all of the indicator lights come on briefly.
If no indicator lamps come on, check the domestic socket's circuit-breaker:

- If the circuit-breaker has tripped, contact a professional to check that the electrical system is compatible and/or carry out any necessary repairs.
- If the circuit-breaker has not tripped, stop using the charging cable and contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Control unit label - Recommendations

Refer to Owner's Manual before use.

Manual reset procedure

The control unit can be reset by simultaneously disconnecting the charging connector and the wall socket.
Then, reconnect the wall socket first. For more information, refer to the handbook supplied with the control unit.

Charging Procedure

NOTE

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on electrified vehicles** and the Specific recommendations on **BEV.**

To recharge, connect the vehicle to a domestic electricity supply (domestic or accelerated charging) or to a fast public charger (superfast charging).
For a full charge, follow the desired charging procedure without pausing it, until it ends automatically. Charging can be either immediate or deferred (except fast public charger, mode 4).
When the vehicle is connected, the following information is displayed on the instrument panel:

- Traction battery charge status (%).
- Remaining range (miles or km).
- Estimated charging time (calculation may take a few seconds).
- Charging speed (miles or km gained per hour).

After the instrument panel has been put into standby mode, this information can be displayed again by unlocking the vehicle or opening a door.
You can stop domestic or accelerated charging at any time by unlocking the vehicle and removing the nozzle. For superfast charging, refer to the fast public charger.
For more information on the charging displays on the Instrument panel and the Touch screen, refer to the corresponding section.

CAUTION

As a safety measure, the engine will not start if the charging cable is plugged into the connector on the vehicle.
A warning is displayed on the instrument panel.

NOTE

Cooling the traction battery

The cooling fan in the engine compartment comes on during charging to cool the on-board charger and the traction battery.

WARNING

Low charge / Driving

Driving when the charge level of the traction battery is too low can lead to the vehicle breaking down and can lead to accidents or serious injuries. ALWAYS make sure the traction battery has a sufficient charge level.

CAUTION

Low charge / Parking

If the outside temperature is negative, it is recommended not to park your vehicle outside for several hours at a low charging (less than 20%).

CAUTION

Vehicle in storage for more than 1 month

In the event of a long period of non-use of the vehicle (beyond 4 weeks) without the possibility of charging when restarting, the self-discharge may make it impossible to restart if the traction battery charge level is a low or very low, especially at negative ambient temperatures. ALWAYS make sure that the traction battery has a charge between 20% and 40% if you do not plan to use your vehicle for several weeks.
Do not connect the charging cable.
Always park the vehicle in a place with temperatures between -10°C and 30°C (parking in a place with extreme temperatures can damage the traction battery).
Disconnect the cable from the (+) terminal of the accessory battery in the engine compartment.
Connect a 12 V battery charger to the (+) and (-) terminals of the accessory battery about every 3 months in order to recharge the accessory battery and maintain an operating voltage.

Refer to the **Jump Starting** section for the battery disconnection procedure.

Connection

- Before charging, check that the drive selector is in mode **P**, otherwise charging is not possible.
- Press on the symbols on the rear of the charging flap to open it , and check that there are no foreign bodies on the charging connector.

CAUTION

Before charging

Depending on the context:

- Have a professional check that the electrical system to be used complies with applicable standards and is compatible with the vehicle.
- Have a professional electrician install a dedicated domestic power socket or accelerated charging unit (Wallbox) compatible with the vehicle.

You should preferably use the charging cable available as an accessory.For more information, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

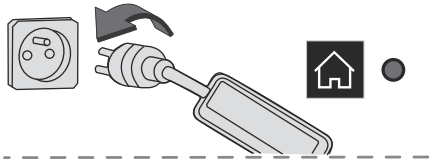
DANGER

During charging

While charging is in progress, unlocking the vehicle will cause the charging to stop. If no action is taken on one of the openings (door or trunk) or on the charging nozzle, the vehicle will lock again after 30 seconds and charging will resume automatically.
Never work under the hood:

- Some areas remain very hot, even an hour after charging ends - risk of burns!
- The fan may start at any time - risk of cuts or strangulation!

Domestic charging (Mode 2)



- Connect the charging cable from the control unit to the domestic socket.

When the connection is made, all of the indicator lights on the control unit illuminate, then only the **POWER** indicator light remains on in green.

- Remove the protective cover from the charging nozzle.
- Insert the nozzle into the charging connector.

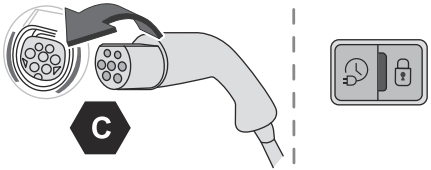
The start of charging is confirmed by the flashing green **CHARGE** indicator lights in the flap, then those on the control unit.

If this is not the case, charging has not started; restart the procedure, ensuring that all connections are properly established.
The red indicator light in the flap comes on to indicate that the nozzle is locked.

NOTE

When charging is complete and while the charging cable is still connected, opening the driver's door will display the charge level on the instrument panel for about 20 seconds.

Accelerated charging (Mode 3)



- Follow the accelerated charging unit user instructions.
- Remove the protective cover from the charging nozzle.
- Insert the nozzle into the charging connector.

The start of charging is confirmed when the charging indicator light in the flap flashes green.
If this is not the case, charging has not started; restart the procedure, ensuring that the connection has been properly established.
The red indicator light in the flap comes on to indicate that the nozzle is locked.

Superfast charging (Mode 4)

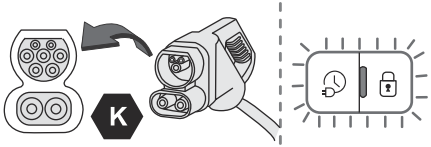
NOTE

Before charging

Check that the fast public charging station and its charging cable are compatible with the vehicle.

If the exterior temperature is below:

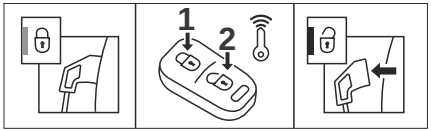
- 32°F (0°C), charging times may be extended.
- -4°F (-20°C), charging is still possible, but charging times may be extended even further (the battery has to be heated first).



- Depending on version, remove the protective cover from the lower part of the connector.
- Follow the instructions for use of the fast public charger and connect the cable from the fast public charger to the vehicle's connector.

The start of charging is confirmed by the flashing green charging indicator light in the flap.
If this is not the case, charging has not started; restart the procedure, ensuring that the connection is properly established.
The red indicator light in the flap comes on to indicate that the nozzle is locked.

Disconnection



Before disconnecting the nozzle from the charging connector:

- If the vehicle is unlocked, **lock it and then unlock it.**
- If the vehicle is locked, unlock it.

The red indicator light in the charging flap goes out to confirm that the charging nozzle is unlocked.

- In modes 2 and 3, remove the charging nozzle within **30 seconds.**

The charging indicator light comes on in white.

NOTE

With selective door unlocking activated, press the unlocking button twice to disconnect the charging nozzle.

NOTE

When charging is complete, the green charging indicator light in the flap goes out after about 2 minutes.

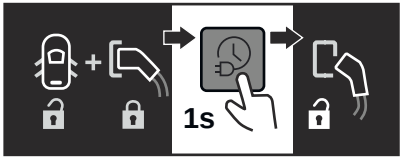
DANGER

After charging

Check that the charging flap is closed.
Do not leave the cable connected to the domestic power socket - risk of short-circuit or electrocution in the event of contact with or immersion in water!

Manual unlocking of the charging connector

If the nozzle stays locked in the charging port, press and hold the deferred charging button inside the charging flap to unlock it.



Deferred charging

Deferred charging allows to set a specific time for the start of the charge.
By default, the deferred charging start time is set to be around midnight.
This time can be changed.

Settings

1. In the **Energy** touch screen application, select the **Charging** tab.
2. Set the charging start time.

- Press **OK** to confirm.

The setting is saved in the system.

You can also program the deferred charging function using a smartphone, via the **MYPEUGEOT APP** application.

For more information on **Remotely operable additional functions**, refer to the corresponding section.

Battery Charge limiter

The Battery Charge Limiter function is part of the systems designed to preserve the battery's integrity and performance for the whole duration of the vehicle's life.

This limit is set at **80%** for daily use.

If you exceptionally want to change the charging limit, e.g. for longer journeys, you can disable this limit and charge up to 100%.

NOTE

This limit does not apply for DC fast charging (Mode 4).

NOTE

Upon delivery of a new vehicle, it is possible that the charge limiter is not activated. Check and activate the limiter if required.

Activation

If the Battery Charge Limit is not enabled, it is possible to manually enable it.

- Open the **Energy** App
- Go to the **Charging** Tab

- Enable the **Charge Limit**.

Deactivation

- Open the **Energy** App
- Go to the **Charging** Tab
- Disable the **Charge Limit**.

CAUTION

It is not recommended to leave the charging limit disabled, it will negatively impact the battery's health over time and reduce overall performance.

Battery Care Mode

Battery Care Mode automates the management of the charge limiter.
If the charge limiter is disabled, once the charge to 100% is complete, Battery Care Mode will reactivate it for the next charge.

Disabling Battery Care Mode

To permanently disable Battery Care Mode:

- Open the **Energy** app
- Open the **Charging** tab
- Tap on the cogwheel next to the charge limiter
- Tap to disable Battery Care Mode

NOTE

After 1500km with Battery Care Mode disabled, a pop-up will be displayed every time the vehicle is started to advise the driver to reactivate Battery Care Mode.

For more information on **Battery preconditioning**, refer to the corresponding section.
⇨156

Plug & Charge

Plug&Charge is specific for BEV models.
This feature enables automatic authentication and payment when the vehicle is connected to a compatible charging station.
Functionalities (based on the vehicle model):

- **Automatic payment method for charging events,** the vehicle authorizes and processes payments without user intervention.
- **Ability for user to enable and disable the feature,** the customer has full control over Plug&Charge settings.
- **Review all charging transactions,** possibility to access detailed charging session history.
- **Onboard & offboard customer experience,** a fully integrated system across in-vehicle displays and external digital platforms ensures a seamless charging journey.

Battery preconditioning

To achieve the best charging performance for the battery and provide consistent charging times, the battery needs to achieve a specific temperature.
Battery preconditioning allows to heat up the battery up to this temperature in preparation for a charging stop.

NOTE

If the battery charge level is below 30%, preconditioning is not available.

NOTE

Activating the preconditioning will use a small portion of the battery charge, impacting the range of the vehicle.

Manual preconditioning

Manual battery preconditioning is activated by the driver when a charging stop is expected.

- Open the **Energy** App.
- Go to the **Charging** Tab.
- Activate the **Battery preconditioning**.

NOTE

Thermal preconditioning is most effective when it is activated 30-45 minutes before starting a charge to allow the battery to reach its ideal temperature.

Automatic Preconditioning with Trip Planner

(Depending on version)
When a trip including charging stops is entered in the navigation system, the system will automatically start the preconditioning process to reach the charging station with the battery ready to charge in optimal conditions.

Automatic Activation before departure

Battery pre-heating will turn on only when all of the following conditions are met:

- The battery state of charge (SOC) is above 90% (or above 80% if the AC charge setting is disabled).
- All windows and doors are closed, vehicle is locked.

If the vehicle is plugged in (mode 2 or mode 3) and the battery 80% limit charge is disabled, programming a departure time in the screen or via the smartphone app will program both the cabin and battery preconditioning to reach ideal preset temperatures before starting a trip.
This is useful if a charge shortly after departure is expected.

Vehicle to Load (V2L)

Vehicle to Load (V2L) is a function that allows the use of the traction battery to power or charge external devices as long as the battery is above 30% charge. If the battery reaches 30%, the energy transfer will stop automatically.

The adapter plugs into the charging port of the vehicle and offers a standard 230V / 16A plug for connecting the external device.

WARNING

Misuse of the adapter can cause electric shocks or start a fire.

WARNING

The device is waterproof against rainfall, but it is not advisable to connect it in bad weather as it can damage the external device. The V2L adapter does not resist being submerged.

NOTE

Using the device will drain the battery, check that the vehicle is charged sufficiently to reach a charging point.

NOTE

Pay attention to the vehicle and the external device when using V2L so that only the intended persons use the system.

NOTE

For more information, please refer to the manual supplied with the V2L device.

Activation

1. Press the button on the adapter.
2. When the LED on the adapter is illuminated steady green, plug the external device into the adapter

is flashing green when the external device is being charged. A dedicated page will be shown on the touchscreen.

Deactivation

1. Press the button on the adapter to stop charging the external device.
2. Disconnect the external device.

3. Disconnect the adapter.
4. Close the charging port flap by pressing it firmly to latch properly.

Vehicle Loading

Roof Bars

WARNING

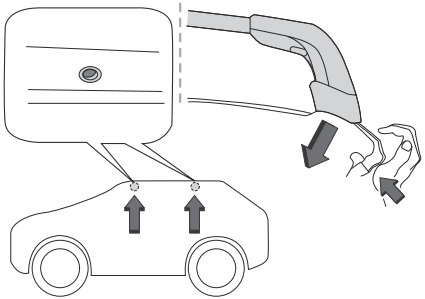
As a safety measure and to avoid damaging the roof, it is essential to use transverse roof bars approved for your vehicle.
Observe the instructions on fitting and use contained in the guide supplied with the roof bars.

WARNING

Maximum load distributed over the transverse roof bars, for a loading height not exceeding 40 cm (except bicycle carrier): **80 kg**.

As this value may change, please verify the maximum load quoted in the guide supplied with the roof bars.
If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars and the fixings on the vehicle.
Be sure to refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations for transporting objects that are longer than the vehicle.

Direct fitting on roof

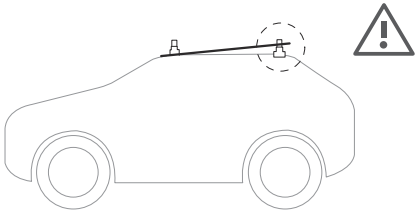


The transverse bars must only be fixed at the four anchorage points located on the roof frame.
These points are concealed by the vehicle doors when the doors are closed.
The roof bar fixings have a stud which must be inserted into the opening of each anchorage point.

WARNING

Recommendations

Distribute the load uniformly, taking care to avoid overloading one of the sides.
Arrange the heaviest part of the load as close as possible to the roof.
Secure the load firmly.
Drive gently: the vehicle will be more susceptible to the effects of side winds and its stability may be affected.
Regularly check the security and tight fastening of the roof bars, at least before each trip.
Remove the roof bars once they are no longer needed.



WARNING

Sunroof

If the sunroof remains open, the vehicle is locked with exterior perimeter monitoring activated but without interior volumetric or anti-tilt monitoring.

Load Reduction Mode

This system manages the use of certain functions according to the level of charge remaining in the battery.
When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as the air conditioning and the heated rear screen.
The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

Trailer Towing

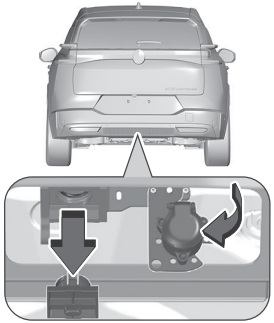
Towing Device

⚠ CAUTION

When operating without a trailer, remove the coupling ball bar.

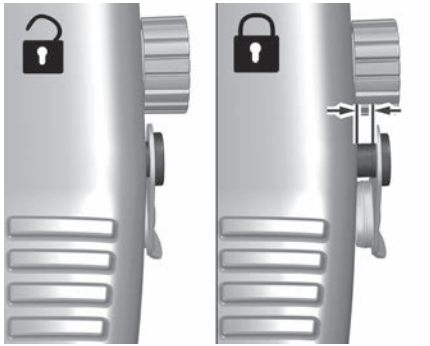
Fitting the coupling ball bar

Stowage of the coupling ball bar with double load floor Lift the double load floor and stow the bag with the coupling ball bar underneath.

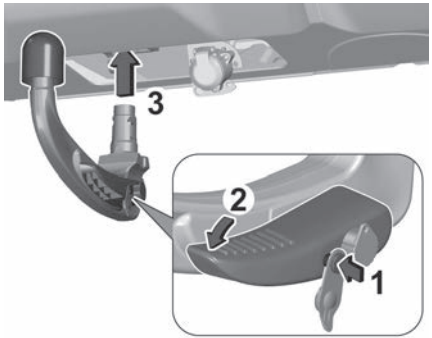


- Remove the sealing plug from the opening for the coupling ball bar and stow it.

Inserting the coupling ball bar

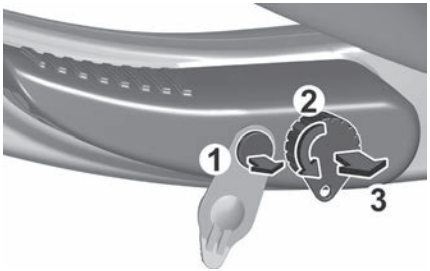


- Make sure the mechanism is unlocked (only red mark is visible).

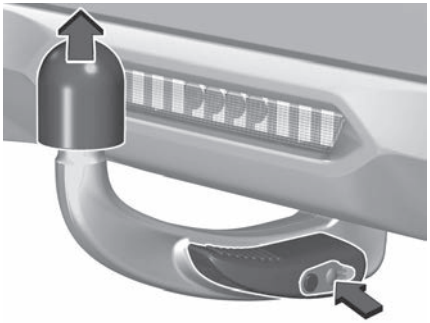


- Insert the coupling ball bar in the opening and push firmly upwards until it audibly engages.

The handle should snap upwards.



- Close the lock using the key by turning it anti-clockwise and pulling it.



- Clip the cap onto the lock.
- Remove the protective cover from the tow-ball.

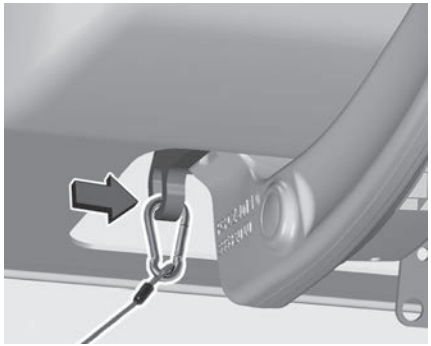
Checking the correct installation of the coupling ball bar

- The mechanism must be locked (green mark is fully visible).
- The lock must be closed.
- The key must be removed. The key can only be removed when the lock is closed.
- The cap must be clipped onto the lock
- The protective cover must be removed

WARNING

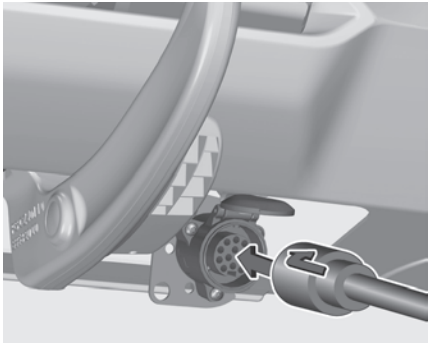
Towing a trailer is permitted only when a coupling ball bar is fitted correctly. If the coupling ball bar does not engage correctly, seek the assistance of a workshop.

Eye for break-away stopping cable



- Attach the breakaway stopping cable to eye.

Connecting the power socket



- Open the protective cover for the plug. Insert the plug and perform a clockwise quarter turn to lock it in place.

Dismounting the coupling ball bar

- Grasp the power plug, perform an anticlockwise quarter turn and pull it out of the socket.
- Detach the breakaway stopping cable from the safety eye.
- Unclip the cap from the lock.
- Insert the key and open the lock by turning clockwise.
- Hold the towball with one hand and push on the lever to release it.
- Replace the protective cover on the towball and the sealing plug in the opening on the carrier.
- Replace the towball in its bag to protect it and stow it.

Trailer Loads

The permissible trailer loads are vehicle and engine-dependent maximum values which must not be exceeded. The actual trailer load is the difference between the actual gross weight of the trailer and the actual coupling socket load with the trailer coupled.
The permissible trailer loads are specified in the vehicle documents. In general, they are valid for inclines up to 12%.
The permissible trailer load applies up to the specified incline and at sea level. Since engine power decreases as altitude increases due to the air becoming thinner, therefore reducing climbing ability, the permissible gross train weight also decreases by 10% for every 1000 m of altitude. The gross train weight does not have to be reduced when driving on roads with slight inclines (less than 8%, e.g. motorways).
The permissible gross train weight must not be exceeded. This weight is specified on the identification plate. ⇨ 261

Vertical coupling load

WARNING

If attaching accessories to the trailer hitch such as bicycle carriers, tow boxes etc., do comply with the maximum permissible vertical coupling load.
When using a bicycle carrier, do not transport more than four conventional bicycles or two electric bicycles. Make sure to place the heaviest bicycle as close as possible to the vehicle.

The vertical coupling load is the load exerted by the trailer on the coupling ball. It can be varied by changing the weight distribution when loading the trailer.
The maximum permissible vertical coupling load 80 kg is specified on the towing equipment identification plate and in the vehicle documents.
Always aim for the maximum vertical coupling load, especially in the case of heavy trailers. The vertical coupling load should never fall below 25 kg.

Rear axle load

When the trailer is coupled and the towing vehicle fully loaded, the permissible rear axle load (see identification plate or vehicle documents) may be exceeded by 60 kg, the gross vehicle weight rating must not be exceeded. If the permissible rear axle load is exceeded, a maximum speed of 100 km/h (60 mph) applies.

Driving characteristics and towing tips

Before attaching a trailer, lubricate the coupling ball. However, do not do so if a stabilizer, which acts on the coupling ball, is being used to reduce snaking movements.
During trailer towing do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h. A maximum speed of 100 km/h is only appropriate if an oscillation damper is used and the permissible gross trailer weight does not exceed the vehicle's curb weight.
For trailers with low driving stability and caravan trailers, the use of an oscillation damper is strongly recommended.
If the trailer starts snaking, drive more slowly, do not attempt to correct the steering and brake sharply if necessary.

When driving downhill, drive in the same gear as if driving uphill and drive at a similar speed. Adjust tire pressure to the value specified for full load.

Trailer stability assist

If the system detects snaking movements, engine power is reduced and the vehicle / trailer combination is selectively braked until the snaking ceases. While system is working keep steering wheel as still as possible. The system operates from 60 km/h to 160 km/h.

WARNING

In some situations, the system may not detect trailer snaking, e.g. when towing a light trailer. On slippery or poor surfaces, the system may not be able to prevent sudden trailer snaking.

Driving Tips

Important!

WARNING

Never leave the engine running in a closed space without sufficient ventilation. Internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases such as carbon monoxide.

Danger of poisoning and death!

WARNING

In very severe wintry conditions (temperature below -23°C), let the engine run for 4 minutes before moving off, to ensure the correct operation and durability of the mechanical components of the vehicle (engine and gearbox).

WARNING

Never drive with the parking brake applied. Risk of overheating and damaging the braking system!

WARNING

Never park the vehicle and never leave the engine running on a flammable surface (e.g. dry grass, dead leaves). The vehicle exhaust system is very hot, even several minutes after the engine stops. Risk of fire!

WARNING

Never drive on surfaces covered with vegetation (e.g. tall grass, accumulated dead leaves, crops, debris) such as a field, a country lane overgrown with bushes or a grassy verge. This vegetation could come into contact with the vehicle's exhaust sys-

tem or other systems which are very hot. Risk of fire!

WARNING

Make sure not to leave any item in the passenger compartment which could act like a magnifying glass under the effect of the sun's rays and cause a fire. Risk of fire or damage to interior surfaces!

WARNING

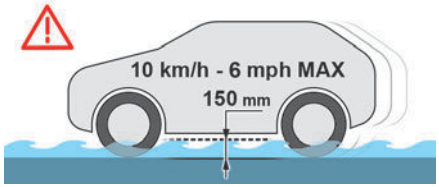
Never leave the vehicle unattended, with the engine running. If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and put the automatic gearbox into position **N** or **P**.

WARNING

Never leave children inside the vehicle unsupervised.

On flooded roads

We strongly advise against driving on flooded roads, as this could cause serious damage to the internal combustion engine or electric motor, the gearbox and the electrical systems of the vehicle.



If the vehicle absolutely must drive through a flooded section of road:

- Check that the depth of the water does not exceed 15 cm, taking account of waves that might be generated by other users.
- Deactivate the Stop & Start function.
- Drive as slowly as possible without stalling. In all cases, do not exceed 6 mph (10 km/h).
- Do not stop and do not switch off the engine. On leaving the flooded road, as soon as safety conditions allow, make several light brake applications to dry the brake discs and pads. If in doubt about the state of your vehicle, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Noise (BEV)

On the outside

Due to the vehicle's quiet operation when driving, the driver must pay particular attention. When maneuvering, the driver must always check the vehicle's immediate surroundings. At speeds of up to 19 mph (30 km/h), the pedestrian horn warns other road users of the vehicle's presence.

NOTE

Cooling the traction battery

The cooling fan comes on during charging to cool the on-board charger and the traction battery.

On the inside

During use, you may hear certain perfectly normal noises specific to electric vehicles, such as:

- Traction battery relay when starting.
- Vacuum pump when braking.
- Vehicle tires or aerodynamics when driving.
- Jolting and knocking noise during hill starts.

Towing

WARNING

Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and particular care must be taken.

NOTE

Do not exceed the maximum towable weights.

At altitude: reduce the maximum load by 10% per 1,000 metres of altitude; the lower air density at high altitudes decreases engine performance.

WARNING

New vehicle: do not tow a trailer until the vehicle has driven at least 620 miles (1,000 kilometres).

NOTE

If the outside temperature is high, let the engine idle for 1 to 2 minutes after the vehicle comes to a stop, to help it to cool.

Before setting off

Nose weight

- Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are located as close as possible to the axle, and the nose weight (at the point where it joins your vehicle) approaches the maximum permitted, without exceeding it.

Tires

- Check the tire pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

Lighting

- Check the electrical signalling on the trailer and the headlight beam height of your vehicle.

When driving

Cooling

Towing a trailer uphill causes the coolant temperature to increase. The maximum towable load depends on the gradient and the exterior temperature. The fan's cooling capacity does not increase with engine speed.

- Reduce speed and lower the engine speed to limit the amount of heating produced.
- Pay constant attention to the coolant temperature.

If this warning light and the **STOP** warning light are sim warning light are simu, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

Brakes

Using the engine brake is recommended to limit the overheating of the brakes. Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer.

Side wind

Bear in mind that the vehicle will be more susceptible to wind when towing.

Legal Obligations

In order to comply with European GSR v2 regulations and for safety reasons, these functions cannot be partially or totally deactivated by the driver:

- Speed Limit Information in the Road signs recognition system.
- Active Safety Brake/Collision Risk Alert.
- Lane keeping assist.
- Driver Attention Warming.
- Observe the driving regulations and remain vigilant whatever the traffic conditions.
- Monitor your environment and keep your hands on the wheel to be able to react to anything that may happen any time.
- Drive smoothly, anticipate the need for braking and maintain a longer safety distance, especially in bad weather.
- Stop the vehicle before performing operations that require sustained attention (e.g. settings).
- During long trips, take a break every 2 hours.

ADVANCED DRIVING ASSISTANCE SYSTEMS (ADAS)

Introduction to Assistance Systems

General Information

NOTE

Driving and manoeuvring aids cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
The driver must comply with the Highway Code, must remain in control of the vehicle in all circumstances and must be able to retake control of it at all times. The driver must adapt the speed to climatic conditions, traffic and the state of the road.
It is the driver's responsibility to constantly monitor traffic conditions, assess the distance and relative speed of other vehicles, and anticipate their manoeuvres before using the direction indicator and changing lanes.
These systems do not make it possible to exceed the laws of physics.

NOTE

Driving aids

You should hold the steering wheel with both hands, always use the door and interior mirrors, always leave your feet close to the pedals and take a break every 2 hours.

NOTE

Manoeuvring aids

The driver must always check the surroundings of the vehicle before and during the whole manoeuvre, in particular using the mirrors.

Legal Obligations

In order to comply with European GSR v2 regulations and for safety reasons, these functions cannot be partially or totally deactivated by the driver:

- Speed Limit Information in the Traffic signs recognition system.
- Active Safety Brake/Collision Risk Alert.
- Lane Keeping Assist.
- Driver Attention Warning by Camera.
- Parking sensors.

WARNING

The operation of the radar(s), along with any associated functions, may be affected by the accumulation of dirt (e.g. mud, ice), in poor weather conditions (e.g. heavy rain, snow), by the masking of the detection zone with adhesive labels or other objects, or if the bumpers are damaged.
If the front or rear bumper is to be repainted, contact a STELLANTIS dealer; certain types of paint could interfere with the operation of the radar(s).
Take care not to cover the detection zones on the front and rear bumpers with adhesive labels or other objects; they may hamper correct operation of the associated system.

WARNING

Driving aids camera

This camera and its associated functions may be impaired or not work if the windshield area in front of the camera is dirty, misty, frosty, covered with snow, damaged or masked by a sticker.
In humid and cold weather, demist the windshield regularly.
Poor visibility (e.g. inadequate street lighting, heavy rain, thick fog, snowfall), dazzle

(e.g. headlights of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light) can also impair detection performance.
In the event of a windshield replacement, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to recalibrate the camera; otherwise, the operation of the associated driving aids may be disrupted.

NOTE

Other cameras

The images from the camera(s) displayed on the touch screen or on the instrument panel may be distorted by the terrain.
In the presence of areas in shade, or in conditions of bright sunlight or inadequate lighting, the image may be darkened and with lower contrast.
Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are.

WARNING

Parking Sensors

The operation of the parking sensors, as well as any associated functions, may be disrupted by noise pollution such as that emitted by noisy vehicles and machinery (e.g. lorries, pneumatic drills), by the accumulation of snow or dead leaves on the road or in the event of damaged bumpers and mirrors.
When reverse gear is engaged, an audio signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty.
A front or rear impact to the vehicle can upset the sensors' settings, which is not always detected by the system: distance measurements may be distorted.
The sensors do not systematically detect obstacles that are too low (pavements, studs) or too thin (trees, posts, wire fences).
Certain obstacles located in the sensors' blind spots may not be detected or may no longer be detected during the manoeuvre.
Certain materials (fabrics) absorb sound waves: pedestrians may not be detected.

NOTE

Maintenance

Clean the bumpers and door mirrors and the field of vision of the cameras regularly.
When washing your vehicle at high pressure, direct the spray from at least 30 cm away from the radar, sensors and cameras.

WARNING

Mats/Pedal trims

The use of mats or pedal trims not approved by the Manufacturer may interfere with the operation of the speed limiter or cruise control.
To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:

- Ensure that the mat is secured correctly.
- Never fit one mat on top of another.

NOTE

Units of speed

Ensure that the units of speed displayed on the instrument panel (mph or km/h) are those for the country you are driving in.
If this is not the case, when the vehicle is stationary, set the display to the required units of speed so that it complies with what is authorised locally.
In case of doubt, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Shortcuts for driving aids

The full list of available driving aids can be found in the **Functions** tab.

Driving aids can be accessed directly to quickly activate/deactivate them.

By default, driving aids are already stored in the **Shortcuts** tab (e.g. Stop & Start, Lane keeping assist).

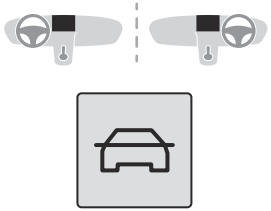
Other driving aids can be added or deleted from this tab.

It is configured in the **ADAS>Functions** touch screen application.

Press the button corresponding to the driving assistance concerned:

- Full symbol: the function is added to the **Shortcuts** tab.
- Empty symbol: the function is deleted from the **Shortcuts** tab.

Check the modification in the **Shortcuts** tab.



- Press this button to access directly to the **Shortcuts** tab.

Multiple Deactivations

⚠ WARNING

Depending on version and due to legal requirements, the system can only be deactivated in the vehicle personalisation menu until the next ignition cycle. The system is automatically activated by default each time the electric motor is ready or the engine is started, even if it was deactivated during the previous ignition cycle.

It is possible to deactivate several driver assistance functions simultaneously.
This is done in two steps:

- First of all, the selection of all the functions that you want to deactivate.
- Secondly, the simultaneous deactivation of all these functions.

Selection of functions

Press this button on the dashboard to display the **ADAS** tabs.

Select the **Functions** tab.

Press this button to display the list of available functions.

- Select the functions that will be deactivated by a long press on the **ADAS** button at each start (e.g. Stop&Start, Lane Keeping Assist, Automatic Braking System (Active Safety Brake).

Press this button to return to the previous page.

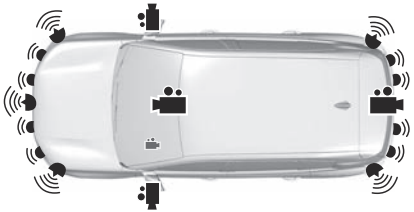
The functions to deactivate are saved in the system.

Deactivation of these functions

Press and hold this button on the cluster.

All previously selected functions are deactivated until the vehicle is next restarted (confirmed by an audible signal).

Detection Sensors



Camera

Radar

Ultrasonic sensor

Infrared Camera

Radar

The vehicle is fitted with radars in each corner, contained within the bumpers. They provide distance and closing speed to the system and allow to detect incoming objects in front and behind the vehicle.

WARNING

Radars

The operation of the radars, along with any associated functions, may be affected by the accumulation of dirt (e.g. Mud, ice), in poor weather conditions (e.g. Heavy rain, snow) by the masking of the detection zone with adhesive labels or other objects, or if the bumpers are damaged.
If the front or rear bumper is to be repainted, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop; certain types of paint could interfere with the operation of the radars.
Take care not to cover the detection zones on the front and rear bumpers with adhesive labels or other objects; they may hamper correct operation of the associated systems.

Video Cameras

The vehicle is fitted with multiple cameras that enable monitoring of the road, the driver and the immediate surroundings during parking maneuvers.

WARNING

Driving aids camera

This camera and its associated functions may be impaired or not work if the windshield area in front of the camera is dirty, misty, frosty, covered with snow, damaged or masked by a sticker.
In humid and cold weather, demist the windshield regularly.
Poor visibility (e.g. inadequate street lighting, heavy rain, thick fog, snowfall), dazzle (e.g. headlights of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light) can also impair detection performance.
In the event of a windshield replacement, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to recalibrate the camera; otherwise, the operation of the associated driving aids may be disrupted.

NOTE

Other cameras

The images from the camera(s) displayed on the touch screen or on the instrument panel may be distorted by the terrain.
In the presence of areas in shade, or in conditions of bright sunlight or inadequate lighting, the image may be darkened and with lower contrast.
Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are.

NOTE

The Driver Attention Assist system uses a camera placed on top of the steering column to monitor the driver for signs of distraction and somnolence.

NOTE

Maintenance

Clean the bumpers and door mirrors and the field of vision of the cameras regularly.
When washing your vehicle at high pressure, direct the spray from at least 30 cm away from the radar, sensors and cameras.

Ultrasonic Sensors

Ultrasonic sensors are fitted to the bumpers to detect obstacles at short range during parking maneuvers.

WARNING

Sensors

The operation of the sensors, as well as any associated functions, may be disupted by noise pollution such as emitted by :

- Noisy vehicles and machinery (e.g. Trucks, pneumatic drills)

- Accumulation of snow or dead leaves on the road
- Damaged bumpers and mirrors

When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty.
A front or rear impact to the vehicle can upset the sensors' settings, which is not always detected by the system: distance measurements may be distorted.
The sensors do not systematically detect obstacles that are too low (pavements, studs), or too thin (trees, posts, wire fences).
Certain obstacles located in the sensors? Blind spots may not be detected or may no longer be detected during the maneuver.
Certain materials absorb sound waves: pedestrians may not be detected.

Steering wheel with Hands On detection

NOTE

For more information, refer to the **General Information** on the **Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS)** chapter.

The steering wheel is equipped with a hands-on detection system to avoid distraction on the part of the driver.
It is prohibited to cover or attach anything to the steering wheel.

WARNING

The driver must always check the surroundings of the vehicle and supervise the whole manoeuvre.
Any use of a system built into Drive Assist Plus 2.0 must remain under the driver's vigilance.
The system also detects the presence of hands when using the Lane Positioning assist system with Drive Assist Plus.

NOTE

The system may suffer interference or not work correctly if:

- the steering wheel is covered by some protection.
- the driver wears thick gloves (e.g. ski gloves).

In the event of improper detection of hands on the steering wheel, Drive Assist Plus is not activated or is deactivated after a few seconds.

WARNING

Installation of mechanical anti-theft devices on the steering wheel is prohibited - risk of damage!

Speed Control Assistance System

Speed Limiter

NOTE

For more information, refer to the **General Information** on the **Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS)** chapter.

This system prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver (speed setting).

The Speed Limiter is switched on manually. The minimum speed setting is 30 km/h (19 mph). The speed setting remains in the system memory when the ignition is switched off.

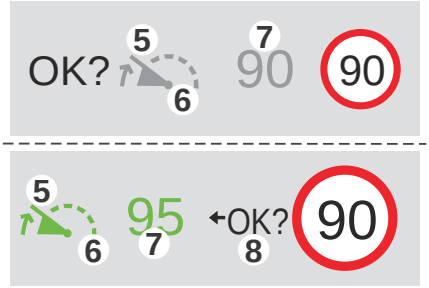
Steering-mounted controls

1. Speed Limiter selection
2. Switch on/pause the Speed Limiter at the previously saved speed setting
3. Increase/Decrease the speed setting
4. Activate the Speed Limiter at the previously saved speed setting

   Use the speed suggested by the **Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)** function

For more information on the **Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)** function, refer to the corresponding section.

Information displayed on the instrument panel



5. Speed Limiter mode selection indication
6. Speed Limiter on (green)/pause (grey) indication
7. Speed setting value
8. Speed suggested by the Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR) function (depending on version)

Switching on/Pausing

1. Press **(1)** LIMIT to select the Speed Limiter mode; the function is paused (grey).
2. If the limit speed setting is suitable (most recent speed setting programmed in the system), press **(2)** ||▶ or **(4) OK** to switch the Speed Limiter on (green).
3. Pressing **(2)** ||▶ again temporarily pauses the function

NOTE

When the speed setting remains below the vehicle's speed for a prolonged period of time, an audible warning is emitted.

Adjusting the speed setting

You do not have to switch the Speed Limiter on in order to set the speed.
To change the speed setting using the vehicle's current speed:

- For steps of **+/-** 1 km/h (1 mph), make successive short presses upwards/downwards on **(3)** to increase/decrease.
- For steps of **+/-** 5 km/h (5 mph), press and hold upwards/downwards on **(3)** to increase/decrease. When the function is activated, the limit speed value can be changed using the speed suggested by the Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR) function displayed on the instrument panel:

When passing the sign:

- Press **(4) OK** to save the suggested speed. This value is then immediately shown as the new speed setting on the instrument panel.

After passing the sign:

- Press **(4) OK**. The message "**OK?**" is displayed to confirm the request to save.
- Press **(4) OK** again to save the suggested speed. The new speed setting value is displayed on the instrument panel.

Temporarily exceeding the speed setting

- Fully depress the accelerator pedal.

The Speed Limiter is temporarily deactivated and the displayed speed setting flashes.

- Release the accelerator pedal to return to below the speed setting.

When exceeding the speed is not due to the driver's action (e.g. in case of a steep slope), an audible signal is triggered immediately.

WARNING

On a steep descent or in the event of sharp acceleration, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the speed setting.
If necessary, apply the brakes to control your vehicle's speed.

When the vehicle speed returns to the speed setting level, the Speed Limiter operates again: the speed setting display becomes steady again.

Off

- Press (**1**) LIMIT: the Speed Limiter information display disappears.

Fault

In the event of a Speed Limiter fault, the speed is cleared resulting in flashing of the dashes.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Cruise Control

NOTE

For more information, refer to the **General Information** on the **Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS)** chapter.

ASSIST

This system automatically maintains the vehicle's speed at the value programmed by the driver (speed setting), without the use of the accelerator pedal.

Cruise Control is switched on manually.
It requires a minimum vehicle speed of 40 km/h (25 mph)
With an automatic gearbox, mode **D** or second gear or higher in mode **M** must be engaged.
With a drive selector, mode **D** or **B** must be engaged.

NOTE

Cruise control remains active after changing gear, regardless of the gearbox type, on engines fitted with the Stop & Start function.

NOTE

Switching off the ignition cancels any speed setting.

Specific recommendations

WARNING

The cruise control function does not guarantee compliance with the maximum authorised speed and the safety distance between vehicles, the driver remains responsible for their driving.
In the interest of public safety, only use cruise control if the traffic conditions enable vehicles
to drive at a steady speed and maintain an adequate safety distance.

Remain vigilant while cruise control is activated. If you press and hold one of the speed setting modification buttons, your vehicle may change speed very abruptly.

When **descending a steep hill**, the cruise control system cannot prevent the vehicle from exceeding the set speed. Brake if necessary to control the vehicle speed.

On **steep climbs** or when towing, the set speed may not be reached or maintained.

NOTE

Exceeding the programmed speed setting

You can **temporarily** exceed the speed setting by pressing the accelerator pedal (the pause signal will appear). To return to the speed setting, press SET+/SET-, the set speed will be equal to the current vehi-

cle speed (when the set speed is reached again, the pause signal disappears).

⚠ WARNING

Operating limits.

Never use the system in the following situations:

- In an urban area with the risk of pedestrians crossing the road.
- In heavy traffic (except versions with the Stop & Go function).
- On winding or steep roads.
- On slippery or flooded roads.
- In poor weather conditions.
- In the event of restricted visibility for the driver.
- Driving on a racetrack.
- Driving on a rolling road.
- When using a 'space-saver' type spare wheel.
- When using snow chains or non-slip covers.

Steering-mounted controls

1 Cruise Control selection

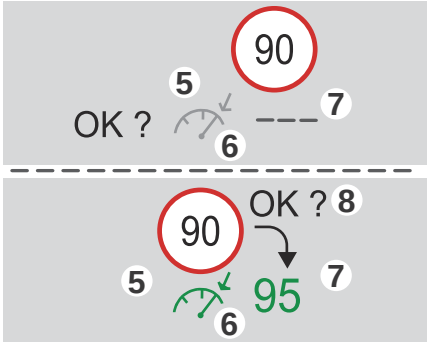
2 Switch on/pause Cruise Control at the previously saved speed setting

3 Increase/Decrease the speed setting (if Cruise Control activated)
Activation of Cruise Control in progress (if Cruise Control deactivated)

4 Activation of Cruise Control in progress
Use the speed suggested by the Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)

For more information on the **Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)** function, refer to the corresponding section.

Information displayed on the instrument panel



5 Cruise Control mode selection indication

6 Cruise Control on (green)/pause (gray) indication

7 Speed setting value

8 Speed suggested by the Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR) function (depending on version)

Switching on/pausing

1. Press button (**1**) ASSIST to select the Cruise Control mode; the function is paused (gray).
2. Press (**3**) upwards/downwards, or press (**4**) **OK** to activate the Cruise Control and save a speed setting as soon as the

vehicle speed reaches the desired level (green).

3. Pressing button (**2**) ||▶ temporarily pauses the function.
4. Pressing (**2**) ||▶, (**3**) or (**4**) **OK** again will reactivate Cruise Control (green).

NOTE

Cruise control operation is also temporarily interrupted (pause):

- by pressing the brake pedal
- automatically, if the electronic stability control (ESC) system is triggered
- by shifting to neutral or engaging reverse gear
- by depressing the clutch pedal for more than 5 seconds
- by using the electric parking brake

Modifying the speed setting

The Cruise Control must be active. To change the speed setting using the vehicle's current speed:

- For steps of +/- 1 km/h (1 mph), make successive short presses upwards/downwards on (**3**) to increase/decrease.
- For steps of +/- 5 km/h (5 mph), press and hold upwards/downwards on (**3**) to increase/decrease.

WARNING

Prolonged pressing and holding upwards/downwards on (**3**) causes a very rapid change in vehicle speed.

WARNING

As a precaution, we recommend setting a cruise speed fairly close to the current speed of your vehicle, to avoid any sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle.

When the function is activated, the speed setting value can be changed using the speed suggested by the Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR) function displayed on the instrument panel:

When passing the sign:

- Press (**4**) **OK** to save the suggested speed. This value is then immediately shown as the new speed setting on the instrument panel.

After passing the sign:

- Press (**4**) **OK**. The message " **OK?** " is displayed to confirm the request to save.
- Press (**4**) **OK** again to save the suggested speed. The new speed setting value is displayed on the instrument panel.

Off

- Press (**1**) ASSIST: the Cruise Control information display disappears.

Fault

In the event of a malfunction, dashes are displayed flashing and then fixed instead of the speed setting.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

NOTE

For more information, refer to the **General Information** on the **Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS)** chapter and **Specific recommendations** on **Cruise Control**.

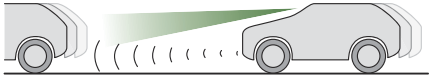
This system automatically maintains the vehicle speed at a value set by the driver (speed setting), while respecting a safety distance from the vehicle in front (target vehicle) previously set by the driver. The system automatically manages the acceleration and deceleration of the vehicle.

With the **Stop & Go function** (with the e-DCS7 automatic gearbox or drive selector), the system manages braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop and restarts the vehicle.

WARNING

The brake lamps come on if the vehicle is slowed down by the system.

The system is not operational in the event of a brake lamp failure.



To do this, the system uses a camera fitted at the top of the windshield and a radar fitted in the front bumper.

WARNING

Primarily designed for driving on main roads and motorways, this system only works with moving vehicles driving in the same direction as your vehicle.

NOTE

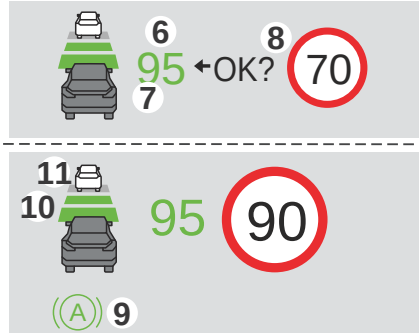
If the driver activates the direction indicator to overtake a slower vehicle, cruise control may temporarily reduce the distance to the target vehicle to facilitate overtaking, without exceeding the speed setting.

Steering-mounted controls

1. Selection/deselection of Adaptive Cruise Control only or Drive Assist (depending on version)
2. Pause/resume Cruise Control at the previously saved speed setting
   Confirmation of vehicle restart after automatic stop (version with Stop & Go function)
3. Increase/Decrease the speed setting (if Cruise Control activated)
   Activate the feature with the current speed as setting
4. Activation of Cruise Control
   Use the speed suggested by the Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR) function
5. Display and configuration of the inter-vehicle distance setting

For more information on the **Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)** function, refer to the corresponding section.

Information displayed on the instrument panel



6. Cruise Control activated (green)/ paused (grey)
7. Speed setting value
8. Speed suggested by the Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR) function
9. Vehicle held stationary (version with Stop&Go function)
10. Inter-vehicle distance setting
11. Position of the vehicle detected by the system

Use

Selecting the system

- With the engine running, press successively on (**1**) ASSIST until Cruise Control mode is displayed on the instrument panel.

After a few seconds, Cruise Control mode is selected. The Driving aids mini-view is displayed (gray) and Cruise Control is ready to be activated.

Switching on cruise control

With an automatic gearbox or a drive selector, your speed must be between 0 km/h and 180 km/h (0 and 112 mph).
System activation is also subject to the following conditions:

- Driver's door closed.
- Driver's seat belt fastened.
- Mode **D** selected on the automatic gearbox.
- Parking brake released.
- If the vehicle is stationary, brake pedal depressed.

A message **OK?** is displayed if all activation conditions are met.

- Press (**4**) **OK**: the current speed becomes the speed setting (minimum 30 km/h (19 mph)) and Cruise Control is immediately activated (green display).

Modifying the speed setting

To change the speed setting using the vehicle's current speed:

- For steps of +/- 1 km/h (1 mph), make successive short presses upwards/downwards on (**3**) to increase/decrease.
- For steps of +/- 5 km/h (5 mph), press and hold upwards/downwards on (**3**) to increase/decrease.

WARNING

Prolonged pressing and holding upwards/downwards on (**3**) causes a very rapid change in vehicle speed.

When the function is activated, the speed setting value can be changed using the speed suggested by the Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR) function displayed on the instrument panel:

When passing the sign:

- Press (**4**) **OK** to save the suggested speed. This value is then immediately shown as the new speed setting on the instrument panel.

After passing the sign:

- Press (**4**) **OK**. The message " **OK?** " is displayed to confirm the request to save.
- Press (**4**) **OK** again to save the suggested speed. The new speed setting value is displayed on the instrument panel.

Pausing/Resumption of cruise control

- Press (**2**) ||▶ or depress the **brake pedal**. The symbol " ||▶ " is displayed if all activation conditions are met.

Cruise Control may also have been paused:

- automatically, if the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system is triggered.
- by shifting to neutral or engaging reverse gear.
- by using the electric parking brake.
- by unfastening the seat belt.
- by opening the driver's door.
- Press (**2**) ||▶ or (**4**) **OK** to reactivate Cruise Control.

With an automatic gearbox or a drive selector, following braking that has brought the vehicle to a complete stop, if the traffic conditions do not allow the vehicle to begin moving again within 3 seconds of stopping, press (**2**) ||▶ or the accelerator pedal to move off.

NOTE

Cruise control remains active following a gear change.

WARNING

When cruise control is paused and the driver tries to reactivate it, the message "**Activation not possible, conditions not met**" is temporarily displayed if reactiva-

tion is impossible (required conditions not met).

Changing the programmed speed setting with the Traffic Signs Recognition function

- Press (**4**) **OK** to accept the speed suggested by the function on the instrument panel, then press again to confirm.

CAUTION

If the selected speed is far from the current vehicle speed, a strong acceleration or deceleration is felt.

Changing the inter-vehicle distance

- Press (**5**) to display the distance setting thresholds ("**Distant**", "**Normal**" or "**Close**"), then make successive short presses upwards/ downwards to select a threshold.

After a few seconds, the option is accepted and will be memorized when the ignition is switched off.
The driver must keep a sufficient safety distance from the vehicle in front.

Temporarily exceeding the speed setting

- Depress the accelerator pedal. The system is suspended as long as the acceleration is maintained. When the accelerator pedal is released, the speed setting flashes while the current vehicle speed is above the speed setting.

Deselecting the system

- Press successively on (**1**) ASSIST until **OFF** mode is displayed on the instrument panel.

After a few seconds, Cruise Control mode is deselected. The Driving aids mini-view disappears.

Messages and alerts

NOTE

The actual order of display of the messages or alerts may be different.

90 (grey)	Cruise Control selected, but cannot be activated. All the operating conditions have not been met.
90 OK? (grey)	Cruise Control selected, awaiting confirmation for activation. All the operating conditions are met.
90 95 (grey)/(grey)	Cruise Control paused, but cannot be reactivated. All the operating conditions have not been met.
90 ▸95 (grey)/(grey)	Cruise Control paused, awaiting confirmation for reactivation. All the operating conditions are met.
90 70 (green)/(green)	Cruise Control active, vehicle detected.
90 95 (green)/(grey)	Cruise Control suspended, following brief acceleration by the driver.

(orange)

"Take control"

- Brake or accelerate, depending on the context.

(red)

"Take control"

- **Take back control of the vehicle immediately:** the system cannot manage the current driving situation.

"Activation refused, conditions unsuitable"

The system refuses to activate Cruise Control, as the necessary conditions are not fulfilled.

Stop function

(grey)/(green)

"Cruise paused" (for a few seconds).

The system has brought the vehicle to a complete stop and is keeping it immobilised: Cruise Control is paused.
The driver must accelerate to move off again, then reactivate Cruise Control.

Stop & Go function

(grey)/(green)

The system has brought the vehicle to a complete stop.

Within 3 seconds of stopping, the vehicle gradually and automatically begins moving again if there is no target detected or if the target detected is far enough.
Beyond 3 seconds of stopping, the driver must accelerate or press (**2**) ||▶ to move off.

NOTE

If the driver takes no action after the vehicle has been stopped, the electric parking brake is applied automatically after about 5 minutes.

WARNING

While the vehicle is immobilized, the following recommendations apply:

- The driver should not leave the vehicle.
- Do not open the boot.
- Do not drop off or pick up passengers.
- Do not engage reverse gear.

WARNING

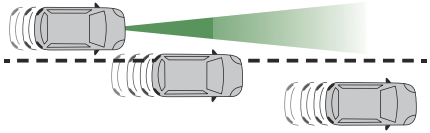
When restarting the vehicle, beware of cyclists, pedestrians or animals who are not taken into account by the system.
The driver must monitor their surroundings.

Operating limits

Cruise Control operates by day and night, in dry weather or moderate rainfall.
Certain situations cannot be managed by the system and require driver intervention.

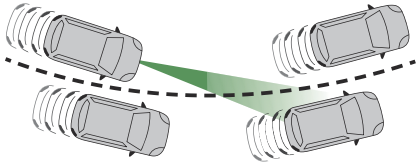
Cases not taken into account by the system:

- Pedestrians, cyclists, animals.
- Stationary vehicles (e.g. traffic jams, breakdown), Truck Mounted Attenuators (TMA).

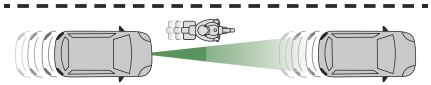


- Vehicles crossing your lane.
- Vehicles driving in the opposite direction.

Situations where the driver must suspend the system:



- Vehicles in a tight bend.
- When approaching a roundabout.

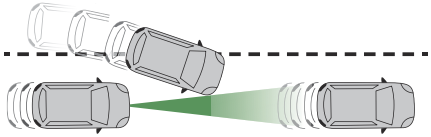


- When following a narrow vehicle.

Reactivate the system when conditions allow.

Situations in which the driver is prompted to immediately resume control:

- Excessively sharp deceleration by the vehicle in front of you.



- When a vehicle cuts in sharply between your vehicle and the one in front.

WARNING

Some vehicles on the road may be poorly perceived or interpreted by the camera and/or the radar (e.g. truck), which can lead to an incorrect evaluation of distances and result in inappropriate acceleration or braking of the vehicle.

WARNING

Pay particular attention:

- When motorcycles are present and when there are vehicles staggered across the traffic lane.
- When entering a tunnel or crossing a bridge.

WARNING

If any of the following faults occurs, do not use the system:

- Following an impact on the windshield close to the camera or on the front bumper.
- If a brake light is not working.

WARNING

If the vehicle has undergone any of the following modifications, do not use the system: carrying long objects on roof bars / towing / front end of the vehicle modified (for example by adding long-range headlights or painting the front bumper) / obstructed radar and/or camera.

NOTE

Non-moving targets are taken into account when they are detected in the path of the vehicle at speeds below 50 km/h (30 mph).

Fault

In the event of a malfunction, dashes are displayed (orange) instead of the speed setting.

This warning light comes on, accompanied by a message and an audible signal, to confirm the malfunction.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Drive Assist Plus

This system automatically adjusts the speed and corrects the trajectory of the vehicle, using Adaptive Cruise Control with Stop&Go function in conjunction with Lane Positioning Assist. These two functions must be activated and in operation.

For more information on **Adaptive Cruise Control** and **Lane Positioning Assist**, refer to the corresponding sections.

WARNING

The system assists the driver by acting on the steering, acceleration and braking within the physical limits and capacities of the vehicle. Certain road infrastructure elements or vehicles in the surroundings may not be properly seen or may be poorly interpreted by the camera and radar, resulting in an unexpected change in direction, a lack of steering correction and/or inappropriate management of acceleration or braking.

WARNING

Primarily designed for driving on main roads and motorways, this system only works with moving vehicles driving in the same direction as your vehicle.

Selecting/Deselecting the system

- Press this button successively until the Drive Assist Plus mode is displayed on the instrument panel.

After a few seconds, the Drive Assist Plus mode is selected. The Driving aids area is displayed on the instrument panel.

The colour of the symbols, representing the steering wheel and the side lines, depends on the operating state of the system:

(grey) One or more operating conditions is not met; the system is paused.

(green) All operating conditions are met; the system is active.

(orange) System malfunction.

- Press this button successively again until the **OFF** mode is displayed on the instrument panel.

After a few seconds, the Drive Assist Plus mode is deselected. The Driving aids area disappears.

Drive Assist Plus 2.0

This system automatically regulates the speed and corrects the trajectory of the vehicle by combining the following functions:

- Drive Assist Plus with Adaptive Cruise Control with Stop&Go function and Lane Positioning Assist.
- Semi-automatic lane changing.
- Speed setting advance recommendation.

For more information on these functions, refer to the corresponding sections.
The availability of the system depends on the country you are driving in.
This system is only to be used on eligible motorways and main roads.

Selecting/Deselecting the system

It is configured in the **ADAS** touch screen application.

- Select the **Functions** tab, then select/ deselect **Drive Assist.**

The system's status is saved when the ignition is switched off.

Collision Avoidance Assistance System

NOTE

For more information, refer to the **General Information** on the **Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS)** chapter.

This collision avoidance assistance system:

- warns the driver that their vehicle is at risk of collision with the preceding vehicle, a pedestrian or a cyclist.
- reduces the vehicle's speed to avoid a collision or to limit its severity.

NOTE

The system also takes motorcyclists into account.
It may also react on animals. Animals (especially animals smaller than 0.5 m) and objects on the road are not necessarily detected.

This system includes three functions:

- Collision Risk Alert
- Active Emergency Braking (AEB).

- Automatic Braking

The vehicle has a multifunction camera located at the top of the windshield and, depending on version, a radar located in the front bumper.

WARNING

This system does not replace the need for driver vigilance.
This system is designed to assist the driver and improve road safety.
It is the driver's responsibility to continuously monitor traffic conditions in accordance with applicable driving regulations.

NOTE

As soon as the system detects a potential collision, it prepares the braking circuit. This may cause a slight noise and a slight sensation of deceleration.

Operating conditions and limits

- Vehicle moving forward without trailer.
- Brake system operational.
- ASR system activated.
- Seat belts fastened for all passengers.
- Stabilized speed on roads with no or low curvature.

This warning lamp illuminates on the instrument panel without any additional message, to indicate that the automatic braking system is not available.

This is a normal behavior indicating that a condition is not fulfilled and which does not request the support of a workshop.
In any situations with ignition on where automatic braking presents a risk, deactivating the system via the driving aids touch screen application is recommended, for instance:

- Carrying long objects on roof bars.
- Using an automatic car wash.
- Performing any maintenance (e.g. changing a wheel, working inside the engine compartment).
- Placing the vehicle on a rolling bench in a workshop.
- Towing the vehicle.
- Following a damage of the windshield close to the detection camera.

NOTE

The system is automatically deactivated once the use of a different diameter "space-saver" type spare wheel is detected, or if a fault with the right or left brake light is detected.
Following a severe crash (e.g. with airbag deployment), the system is automatically deactivated. Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

The system performance may be degraded or not available by:

- Sensor covered with snow, ice, slush, mud or dirt.
- Windshield damaged or smeared, with blurred view or covered with foreign items (e.g. stickers).
- Damaged front bumper (or deformed in the past) or covered with foreign items (e.g. stickers).
- Front camera out of regular position or missing cover.
- Brake discs cooling process is on-going.
- In curves.
- System initialization process after battery disconnection.
- Sun or lights shining into the front camera lens.
- Adverse environmental conditions (e.g. rain, fog or snow).
- Vehicle ahead creating road spray.

The system performance may be affected by:

- Vehicle stability system in progress.
- Vehicle battery voltage out of range.
- Wet road reflecting lights.
- Close vehicles ahead.
- Tractors, muddy vehicles or vehicles with a trailer.
- Banked roads.
- Winding or hilly roads.
- Poor lighting conditions.
- Sudden lighting changes.
- Vehicle modifications (e.g. tires).

NOTE

In case the detection is degraded or temporarily unavailable by environment conditions, then a driver indication is not displayed (because a driver action is not requested).

WARNING

It can be dangerous to drive if the brake lights are not in perfect working order.

WARNING

The driver must not overload the vehicle (keep within the GVW limit and load height limits for roof bars).

Collision Risk Alert

This function warns the driver if there is a risk of collision with the preceding vehicle, or with a pedestrian or cyclist.

Modifying the alert trigger threshold

The trigger threshold determines the sensitivity with which the function warns of the risk of collision.

In the **ADAS** touch screen application, select **Functions>Automatic Braking System.**

- Select one of the 3 preset thresholds: **"Far"**, **"Medium"** or **"Near"**.

The selected threshold is memorized when the ignition is switched off.

Operation

Depending on the collision risk detected by the system and the alert trigger threshold chosen by the driver, different levels of alert may be triggered and displayed on the instrument panel.
The system takes into account the vehicle dynamics, the difference speed of the own vehicle and the object identified for the collision risk, and the operation of the vehicle (e.g. actions on the pedals, steering wheel) to trigger the alert at the most relevant moment.

(orange)

Level 1: visual alert only, warning that the preceding vehicle is very close.

The message **"Vehicle close"** is displayed.

(red)

Level 2: visual and audible alert, warning that a collision is imminent.

The message **"Brake!"** is displayed.

Level 3: a micro-braking may be given, confirming the risk of collision (optional).

NOTE

While approaching a vehicle too quickly, the level 2 alert may be displayed directly.

Important: the level 1 alert depends on the trigger threshold selected. It reacts only on moving vehicles. It is disabled automatically at lower speed.

NOTE

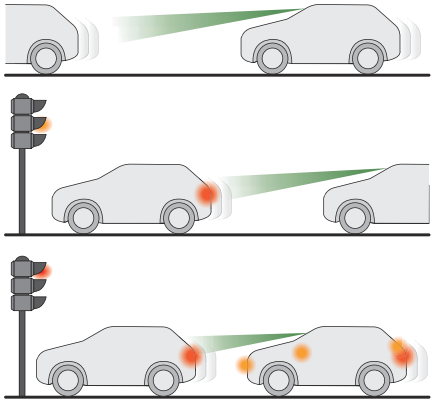
If you select "**Far**" in the touch screen, then the system warns sooner. This increases the safety but also increases the amount of alerts if the legal safety distance is not kept.

To reduce the alert occurence, you can change the setting to either of the other two.

CAUTION

It is possible that collision warnings are not given, are given too late or seem unjustified.
The driver must always stay in control of the vehicle and be prepared to react at any time to avoid an accident.

Active Emergency Braking (AEB)



This function, also called "Active Safety Brake (ASB)", intervenes after the acoustic alert if the driver does not operate the brake pedal quickly enough.
The system aims at reducing the speed of impact or avoiding a collision if the driver fails to react.

NOTE

Below a speed of 30 mph (50 km/h), automatic emergency braking may slow down the vehicle to a complete stop.
Automatic emergency braking may reduce the speed by a maximum of 30 mph (50 km/h) speed.

Operation

The system operates subject to the following conditions:

- The vehicle's speed is between 8 km/h and 80 km/h (5 mph and 50 mph) when a pedestrian, cyclist, or motorcyclist is detected.
- The vehicle's speed is between 8 km/h and 80 km/h (5 mph and 50 mph) when a stationary vehicle or motorcyclist is detected.
- The vehicle's speed is between 8 km/h and 140 km/h (5 mph and 87 mph) when a moving vehicle is detected.

This warning light flashes (for approximately 10 seconds) as soon as the function applies the vehicle's brakes.

During the flashing time, the function is not available.
With an automatic gearbox or drive selector, in the event of automatic emergency braking, keep the brake pedal depressed, also after a complete stop is reached, to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

NOTE

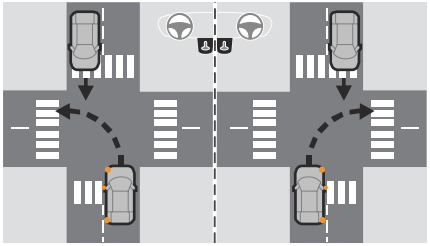
The driver can override the automatic emergency braking at any time by strongly turning the steering wheel (evasive manoeuver) and/or by firmly pressing the accelerator pedal.

NOTE

The brake pedal may feel hard and vibrate slightly while the function is operating.
If the vehicle comes to a complete stop, automatic braking is maintained for 1 to 2 seconds.

Turning scenarios

Turning and crossing the path of oncoming vehicle

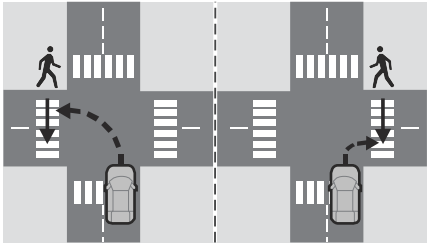


The system may operate when the vehicle turns and detects another vehicle, on the adjacent lane, approaching from the opposite direction if:

- The corresponding turn signal indicator is activated.
- Then the vehicle is about to cross the path of an oncoming vehicle or motorcyclist.
- The speed of the own vehicle is between 8 km/h and 25 km/h (5 mph and 15 mph).
- A collision on the side of the other vehicle (or motorcyclist) is predicted.

The system also takes into account motorcyclists and may react accordingly.

Crossing road with a pedestrian

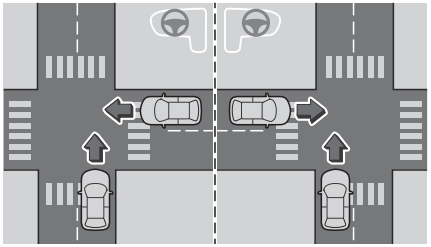


The system may operate when the vehicle is turning left or right and detects a crossing pedestrian if:

- The pedestrian is crossing in front of the vehicle.
- The pedestrian can clearly be detected by the sensors.
- The scenery is detectable by the sensors (e.g. brightness, contrast vs background).
- The vehicle speed is between 8 km/h and 25 km/h (5 mph and 15 mph).

The system also takes into account cyclists and may react accordingly.

Vehicle crossing the path



The system may operate when a visible vehicle is crossing your path and if:

- The visible vehicle is crossing your path and can clearly be detected by the sensors.
- The visible vehicle speed is below 65 km/h (40 mph).
- The vehicle speed is below 65 km/h (40 mph).

Activation/Deactivation

By default, the system is automatically activated at every ignition cycle.

It is configured in the **ADAS** touch screen application.

Deactivation of the system is signalled by the illumination of this warning light, accompanied by the display of a message in the instrument panel.

NOTE

The system cannot be deactivated above 10 km/h.

Fault

This warning light lights up on the instrument panel with the message **"Audible Warning System fault: Repair needed"** if the audible warning system is in failure.

The system may be disturbed or unavailable. Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

This warning light illuminates on the instrument panel with the message **"Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual"** if the sensor is masked.

This is a normal behavior, which does not request the support of a qualified workshop. In this case, stop the vehicle and verify if the front camera or the front radar is covered by dirt, mud, sand, snow, ice or anything preventing the sensing.
The system is operational again after the detection field has been cleaned.

In the event of a malfunction, this warning light illuminates on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

If these warning lights come on after the engine has been switched off and then restarted, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

These warning lights illuminate on the instrument panel and/or in the warning light display for seat belts and front passenger airbag to indicate that the driver's and/ or front passenger's seat belt is not fastened (depending on version).

The automatic braking system is deactivated until the seat belts are fastened.

Automatic Braking

NOTE

For more information, refer to the **General Information** on the **Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS)** chapter.

Just before the imminent collision, this function automatically applies limited braking to reduce the impact speed of the collision or prohibit a crash.

Flashes when automatic braking is applied.
Flashes for a few seconds after automatic braking is finished.

During this time, active emergency braking cannot be applied if there is a risk of a further collision.
Below a speed of 50 km/h (30 mph), emergency automatic braking may slow down the vehicle to a complete stop. If the speed exceeds this limit, automatic braking reduces the speed. However, the driver must apply the brake to come to a complete stop.

If the vehicle comes to a complete stop, automatic braking is maintained for a certain time. **Keep the brake pedal depressed to prevent the vehicle from starting off again.**

Cruise Control will be deactivated when an automatic braking occurs.
In some cases, the driver may wish to override the automatic braking provided by the Active Emergency Braking system.
Firmly apply the accelerator pedal or firmly turn the steering wheel to override the automatic braking if the situation and the surroundings permit.

WARNING

Do not rely on the system to brake the vehicle. Active emergency braking will not brake automatically outside of its operating speed range.

In-Crash Braking (ICB)

If an accident is detected, the vehicle initiates automatic in-crash braking. The goal of this system is to reduce the risk of further collisions if the driver does not react.
The system is not operational if the capability of the vehicle to trigger and execute the automatic in-crash braking is not available, as it can occur in destructive accidents or in other specific accident scenarios.
It is possible to override the automatic braking by pressing the accelerator pedal.

Operating conditions

The system operates, if the following conditions are met:

- Airbags or pyrotechnic seat belt pretensioners have been deployed by the collision.
- Braking systems and electric functions remain continuously operational during and after collision.
- Driver has not depressed the accelerator pedal.

Fault

In the event of a malfunction, one of these warning lights will come on steady on the instrument panel, accompanied by the Service warning light, the display of a message and an audio signal.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Wrong Pedal Prevention (WPP)

NOTE

For more information, refer to the **General Information** on the **Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS)** chapter.

This function shall prevent or reduce damages in case of a strong press on the accelerator pedal instead of the brake pedal if an obstacle is detected in front or behind the vehicle by performing emergency braking.
This function, operating at a standstill or moving at very low speed, uses the parking sensors for detection.

Operation

The function brakes if:

- While in Drive mode, accelerator is quickly and strongly pressed and a target is detected by front sensors.

or

- While in reverse gear, accelerator is quickly and strongly pressed and a target is detected by rear sensors.

Functionality

Function is signaled by the illumination of this warning light and brake lights, accompanied by the display of a message and an audio signal.

The emergency brake is stopped and the active state is left, if the brake pedal is pressed.

If the system is active and the driver does not press the brake pedal to deactivate the feature within 90s, Electronic park brake (EPB) is engaged automatically and the indication "**Parking Brake Applied**" is displayed.

The function can be deactivated in the ADAS touch screen application (selected again after ignition cycle).

Deselection by the driver of the WPP system is indicated by this indicator light on the instrument panel coming on and the display of a message.

Operating Limits

The system may not operate in the following situations:

- Sensor covered in mud, dirt, ice, leaves from the road
- External coverage of the vehicle surface near the parking sensors (e.g. stickers)
- Damage of the vehicle surface near the parking sensors
- New coating of the vehicle surface near the parking sensors
- Adverse environmental conditions (e.g. heavy rain, snow or fog).
- Vehicle ahead creating massive air disturbances
- Heavily loaded trunk
- Very high slope
- Blocked parking sensors
- Very small or thin obstacles
- Extreme temperature changes
- Attached bicycle carrier or trailer
- Objects surfaces that reflects or absorbs ultrasonic waves

CAUTION

The system is not deactivated when trailer is attached, but does not react to obstacles behind the trailer. Depending on the trailer, the trailer could be detected as near object. A full acceleration in rear direction is not possible.

CAUTION

Any damage of the vehicle surface near the parking sensors should be repaired in a qualified workshop to preserve full performance.

WARNING

The system cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance and controls from the driver. The driver remains responsible for their driving by monitoring their surroundings.
The driver is responsible for correct use of the brake and accelerator pedals, as well as the gear selector. Never intentionally attempt to drive toward an obstacle

to test the system's function, as this is extremely dangerous.

⚠ WARNING

The system can only work properly in its physical limits.

Fault

In the event of a malfunction, these warning lights illuminate on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audio signal. In case of sensor fault in one direction the system is not deactivated for the other direction.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

In the event of a malfunction when engaging reverse gear, during reversing or when the driver attempts to activate the system, the message " **Parking Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual** " appears on the instrument panel accompanied by an audio signal if the sensor is masked. This is a normal behavior, which does not request the support of a qualified workshop. In this case, stop the vehicle and check if the parking sensors are covered by dirt, mud, sand, snow, ice or anything preventing the sensing. The system is operational again after the detection field has been cleaned.

Vehicle Stability Assistance

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

The Electronic Stability Control programme includes the following systems:

- Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR)/Dynamic stability control (DSC).

Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR)/ Dynamic Stability Control (DSC)

Anti-Slip Regulation (or Traction Control) optimises traction by using engine braking and by applying the brakes on the driving wheels to avoid one or more wheels spinning. It also enhances the vehicle's directional stability.
If there is a difference between the vehicle's trajectory and the path desired by the driver, the Dynamic Stability Control system automatically uses engine braking and the brakes on one or more wheels to return the vehicle to the desired path, within the limits of the laws of physics.
These systems are activated automatically every time the vehicle is started.

These systems are activated in the event of a problem with grip or trajectory (confirmed by this warning light flashing on the instrument panel).

Deactivation/Reactivation

In exceptional conditions (e.g. moving a vehicle that is bogged down in mud, stuck in snow, on loose soil), it may prove useful to deactivate the DSC/ASR systems, so that the wheels can move freely and regain grip.
Reactivate the system as soon as the level of grip permits.

The ASR system is deactivated/ reactivated in the **ADAS** touch screen application.

Deactivation/reactivation of the ASR system is indicated by this indicator light on the instrument panel coming on/going out and the display of a message.

The ASR system is automatically reactivated every time the ignition is switched off or at speeds over 50 km/h (31 mph).
Reactivation is manual below 50 km/h (31 mph).

Fault

In the event of a malfunction, this warning light illuminates on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

⚠ WARNING

ASR/DSC

These systems enhance safety during normal driving, but should not encourage the

driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.
It is in conditions of reduced grip (rain, snow, ice) that the risk of loss of grip increases. It is therefore important for your safety to keep these systems activated in all conditions, and particularly in difficult conditions.
Correct operation of these systems depends on compliance with the manufacturer's recommendations relating to the wheels (tires and rims), braking and electronic components, as well as the assembly and repair procedures provided by dealers.
In order to ensure that these systems remain effective in wintry conditions, the use of snow or all-season tires is recommended. All four wheels must be fitted with tires approved for your vehicle.

All tire specifications are listed on the tire/paint label. For more information on **Tire Markings - Designations**, refer to the corresponding section.

Braking Performance Assistance Systems

The braking performance assistance includes the following systems:

- Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)
- Emergency Braking Assistance (EBA)

Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)/Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBFD)

These systems enhance the vehicle's stability and handling during braking, and enable greater control while cornering, particularly on poor or slippery road surfaces.
ABS prevents wheel locking in the event of emergency braking.
EBFD manages overall braking pressure on each individual wheel.

- **When braking in an emergency, depress the pedal very firmly and maintain this pressure.**

NOTE

Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibrations of the brake pedal.

The fixed illumination of this warning lamp signals that there is a fault with the ABS.

The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at a moderate speed.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

This warning lamp, when lit together with the **STOP** and ABS warning lamps, accompanied by a message and an audible signal, indicates an EBFD malfunction.

You must stop the vehicle.

Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

WARNING

When changing wheels (tires and rims), ensure that these are approved for your vehicle.

After an impact

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Emergency Braking Assistance (EBA)

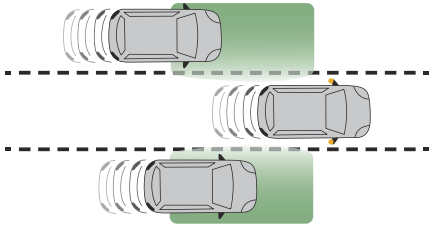
This system reduces the emergency stopping distance, by optimizing the braking pressure.
It is triggered in relation to the speed at which the brake pedal is depressed. The effect of this is a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in braking efficiency.

Visibility Enhancement Assistance System

Blind Spots Monitoring (BSM)

NOTE

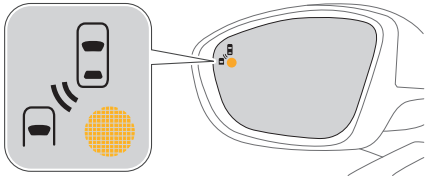
For more information, refer to the **General Information** on the **Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS)** chapter.



This system warns the driver of vehicles approaching rapidly from the rear in adjacent lanes (up to around 75 m) and of the presence of a vehicle in the blind spots of their vehicle, using corner radars located in the rear bumper.

NOTE

This system takes into account vehicles such as cars, lorries and motorcycles by monitoring the blind spots or areas hidden from the driver's field of vision.



A warning lamp appears in the door mirror on the side in question:

- **Steady**, immediately when another vehicle is in the blind spot or is approaching in an adjacent lane.
- **Flashing**, after about 1 second when the direction indicator is used.

Activation/Deactivation

It is configured in the **ADAS** touch screen application.

When starting the vehicle, the warning lamp comes on in each mirror to indicate that the system is activated.
The status of the system is memorised when the ignition is switched off.

NOTE

The system is automatically deactivated when towing with a towing device approved by the Manufacturer.

Operating conditions

- All vehicles are moving in the same direction and in adjacent lanes.
- When overtaking a vehicle, the speed difference is less than 15 km/h (9 mph).
- Traffic is flowing normally.
- Overtaking a vehicle over a certain period of time and the vehicle being overtaken remains in the blind spot.

Operating limits

No alert is triggered in the following conditions:

- presence of stationary objects (e.g. parked vehicles, safety rails, lampposts, signs).
- vehicles traveling in the opposite direction.
- if the rear bumper is damaged.

WARNING

It is possible that warnings are not given, are given too late or seem unjustified.
This system does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. Always check in the mirrors and look over your shoulders before changing lanes to avoid an accident.
If the rear bumper is to be repainted, contact a dealer or qualified workshop; certain types of paint could interfere with the operation of the radars.

Fault

If the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp illuminates on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

NOTE

The system may be temporarily disturbed by certain weather conditions (e.g. heavy rain, hail or extreme temperature changes). In particular, driving on a wet road or going from a dry to a wet area can cause false alerts (e.g. presence of a cloud of water droplets in the blind spot interpreted as a vehicle).

In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the radars are not covered by mud, ice or snow. Take care not to cover the warning zone in the door mirrors, or the detection zones on the rear bumper, with adhesive labels or other objects; they may hamper the correct operation of the system.

Lane Assistance System

Lane Departure Warning (LDW)

NOTE

For more information, refer to the **General Information** on the **Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS)** chapter.

The Lane Departure Warning system supports the driver to avoid unintended leaving of the lane. The front camera observes road edges, as well as the lane markings between which the vehicle is driving. If the vehicle crosses a road edge or a lane marking, the system warns the driver.
Unintended lane departure is not assumed by the system when the turn lights are operated and during few seconds after turn lights have been switched off.
No warning will be issued with a dynamic driving, i.e. pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal or heavy steering.

When the system recognizes an unintended lane departure, the control indicator rapidly flashes yellow.

Operating Conditions

For a correct operation of the system, the following preconditions have to be fulfilled:

- vehicle speed must be between approx. 65 km/h and 180 km/h (40 mph and 112 mph)
- the turn lights are not activated
- no dynamic driving, i.e. pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal
- lane boundaries can be clearly detected by the system
- the vehicle is not driven in a tight corner
- no system fault is present which prevents corrections

Deactivate the system when the vehicle is being towed.

WARNING

The system helps the driver only if there is a risk of the vehicle unintentionally wandering from the lane it is being driven in. It does not manage the safe driving distance, vehicle speed or braking.
The driver must hold the steering wheel with both hands so that they can maintain control when the conditions no longer allow the system to intervene (e.g. in the event that the central dividing line marking on the road surface disappears).

Activation

WARNING

Depending on version and due to legal requirements, the system can only be deactivated in the vehicle personalisation menu until the next ignition cycle. The system is automatically activated by default each time the electric motor is ready or the engine is started, even if it was deactivated during the previous ignition cycle.

It is configured in the **ADAS** touch screen application.

Extinguished if the system is activated.

Deactivation

The system can be deactivated in the vehicle personalization in the Infotainment Display.

System Limitations

The system performance may be affected by:

- covered camera by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, or affected by windshield damage or foreign items, e.g. stickers
- close vehicles ahead
- banked roads
- winding or hilly roads

- poor lighting conditions
- sudden lighting changes
- dazzling light, e.g. caused by the sun or artificial illumination is shining directly into the camera lens
- adverse environmental conditions, e.g. heavy rain, fog, or snow
- vehicle modifications, e.g. tires
- roads with poor lane markings

NOTE

The system performance may be affected by heavy curves and construction areas.

Fault

This warning light illuminates on the instrument panel with the message **" Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual "** if the sensor is masked.

This is a normal behavior, which does not request the support of a qualified workshop. In this case, stop the vehicle and verify if the front camera is covered by dirt, mud, sand, snow, ice or anything preventing the sensing. The system is operational again after the detection field has been cleaned.

In the event of a malfunction, these warning lights illuminate on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

When a failure is detected in the sound module, the warning light appears on the Instrument panel, accompanied by a display message. No warning chime will sound, nor for the drive assistance system.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Unavailability After Battery Reconnection

Lane Departure Warning can be temporarily unavailable or inactive when the power supply of the vehicle is reconnected again.

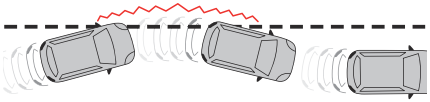
Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)

NOTE

For more information, refer to the **General Information** on the **Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS)** chapter.

The system corrects the vehicle's trajectory by alerting the driver as soon as it detects a risk of involuntary lane departure or crossing of a verge or hard shoulder (depending on version). To do this, the system uses a camera, placed on the upper part of the windshield, identifying the lane markings on the ground and the side of the road (depending on version).

This system is particularly useful on motorways and main roads.



Operating conditions

- Vehicle speed between 65 km/h and 180 km/h (40 mph and 112 mph).
- Road marked with a central dividing line.
- Steering wheel held with both hands.
- Direction indicators off upon activation of the system.
- ESC system activated and operational.

WARNING

The system helps the driver only if there is a risk of the vehicle unintentionally wandering from the lane it is being driven in. It does not manage the safe driving distance, vehicle speed or braking.
The driver must hold the steering wheel with both hands so that they can maintain control when the conditions no longer allow the system to intervene (e.g. in the event that the central dividing line marking on the road surface disappears).

Operation

As soon as the system identifies a risk of involuntarily crossing one of the lane markings detected on the ground or a lane boundary

(e.g. grass verge), it performs the trajectory correction necessary to restore the vehicle to its original lane.
The driver will notice a turning movement of the steering wheel.

This warning light flashes during trajectory correction.

NOTE

The driver can prevent the correction by firmly holding the steering wheel (e.g. during an emergency manoeuvre).
The correction is interrupted immediately if the direction indicators are operated.

While the direction indicators are activated and for a few seconds after switching them off, the system considers that a change of trajectory is intentional and no correction is triggered during this period.
Depending on version, only Lane Departure Warning system is active, when a system fault is present, a spare wheel is used, Electronic Stability Control is not activated or e.g. a trailer is attached.

NOTE

The system performance may be affected by heavy curves and construction areas.

Driving situations and related alerts

The table below describes the alerts and messages displayed in different driving situations. The actual order of display of these alerts may be different.

Function status	Display	Comments
OFF		Function deactivated.
ON	None.	System active, conditions not met: - Speed below 65 km/h (40 mph). - No lane marking recognized. - ESC operation triggered. - "Sporty" driving.
ON		Automatic deactivation/standby of the function (e.g. detection of a trailer, use of the "space-saver" type spare wheel supplied with the vehicle, failure).
ON	None.	Lane marking detected. Speed above 65 km/h (40 mph).
ON		The system corrects the trajectory on the side where the risk of line crossing is detected. The driver's hands are on the steering wheel.
ON	**"Hold the steering wheel " or " Stay in lane"** (depending on version)	If, while correcting the trajectory, the system determines that the correction will not be enough and that a solid line will be crossed: the driver is warned that they must provide additional trajectory adjustment. If the steering wheel is not held properly, an audible warning sounds, accompanied by a message, until the trajectory correction is completed or the driver has grasped the steering wheel correctly. The duration of audible warnings will increase if multiple corrections are performed in quick succession. The warning will become continuous, persisting until the driver responds.

Alert during long intervention

The system will inform the driver with a message and a chime if there is an ongoing correction for more than ten seconds. If the driver is still unable to keep the vehicle in the lane, the correction interrupts after a short time.

Hands-Off

When hands-off driving is detected during a correction within a rolling interval of 180 seconds, the system intervenes:

Intervention 1: flashes until the end of the intervention.

Intervention 2: flashes and a warning chime sounds until the end of intervention but for at least one second.

Further interventions: continuous flashing and the warning chime sounds 10 seconds longer than the previous chime.

A Lane Departure Warning on the cluster alerts when the system cannot hold the vehicle within the lane and immediate driver's action is required.

Operating limits

The system performance may be affected by:

- ESC deactivated or operation triggered.
- Electrical connection to a trailer.
- Use of a "space-saver" spare wheel detected (as detection is not immediate, deactivation of the system is recommended).
- Dynamic driving style detected, pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal.
- Driving over lane markings.
- Crossing the inside line on a bend.
- Driving on a tight bend.
- Inactivity by the driver detected during correction.
- Narrow lane detected.

CAUTION

The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:

- Lane positioning assist is active.
- poor visibility (e.g. inadequate street lighting, heavy rain, thick fog, snowfall).
- dazzle (e.g. headlights of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light).
- windshield area located in front of the camera (e.g. dirty, misted, frost-covered, snowcovered, damaged or masked by a sticker).
- lane markings absent, worn, hidden (e.g. snow, mud, dead leaves) or multiple (roadworks).
- close to the vehicle ahead (lane markings not detected).
- roads that are narrow, winding.

Risk of undesirable operation

The system should be deactivated in the following situations:

- When changing a wheel or working near a wheel.
- Towing or with a bicycle carrier on a towing device, especially with trailer not plugged in or not approved.
- Road in poor condition, unstable or with very poor grip (risk of aquaplaning, snow, ice).
- Adverse weather conditions.
- Driving on racing circuits.
- Driving on a rolling road.
- When the vehicle is being towed.

Activation

WARNING

Depending on version and due to legal requirements, the system can only be deactivated in the vehicle personalisation menu until the next ignition cycle. The system is automatically activated by default each time the electric motor is ready or the engine is started, even if it was deactivated during the previous ignition cycle.

Depending on version, the system is automatically active by default every time the engine is started, even if it was deactivated during the last ignition cycle.

The system can be activated in the vehicle personalization in the infotainment display.

Extinguished if the system is activated.

Deactivation

The system can be deactivated in the vehicle personalization in the Infotainment Display.

Fault

This warning light illuminates on the instrument panel with the message **" Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual "** if the sensor is masked.

This is a normal behavior, which does not request the support of a qualified workshop. In this case, stop the vehicle and verify if the front camera is covered by dirt, mud, sand, snow, ice or anything preventing the sensing. The system is operational again after the detection field has been cleaned.

In the event of a fault, these warning lights illuminate on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

When a failure is detected in the sound module, the warning light appears on the Instrument panel, accompanied by a display message. No warning chime will sound, nor for the drive assistance system.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Unavailability After Battery Reconnection

Lane Keeping Assist can be temporarily unavailable or inactive when the power supply of the vehicle is reconnected again.

Lane Positioning Assist (LPA)

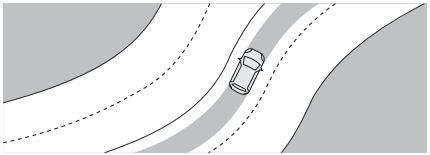
NOTE

For more information, refer to the **General Information** on the **Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS)** chapter.

WARNING

The system assists the driver in managing the steering, acceleration and braking within the limits of the laws of physics and the capabilities of the vehicle.
Some road infrastructure elements or vehicles present on the road may not be properly seen or may be poorly interpreted by the camera and radar, which may lead to an unexpected change in direction, a lack of steering correction and/or inappropriate management of the acceleration or braking.

Lane Positioning Assist is an enhancement of the Lane Keeping Assist system.
The activated system observes the lane markings by using the camera located at the top of the windshield. It steers the vehicle inside the detected lane. The driver will notice a turning movement of the steering wheel.



Thus, the current position of the vehicle within the lane is kept.
This position is not necessarily the center of the lane.
In the case that the vehicle is driving at the outer edge of the lane, the system corrects the trajectory smoothly towards the center of the currently driven lane when a determined speed has been exceeded.
Again, the driver will notice a turning movement of the steering wheel.

Illuminates in green when the vehicle is steered by the system. However, the control of the vehicle can be taken over at any time by the driver.

Therefore, the driver needs to apply some additional force when turning the steering wheel.
If the system detects that the driver is not holding the wheel firmly enough, it triggers a series of gradual alerts.

If the interruption takes too long, the system will be deactivated, the telltale extinguishes on the cluster.

The system has to be reactivated again by the driver. Lane Positioning Assist operates only in combination with Adaptive Cruise Control.

Required Preconditions

- Drive assist must be activated.
- The driver must hold the steering wheel.
- The turn lights are not activated.
- The Electronic Stability Control is activated and not in operation.
- No plug is connected to the power outlet of the trailer hitch.
- No dynamic driving is detected, i.e. pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal.
- Lane boundaries can be clearly detected by the system.
- No temporary spare wheel is used.
- The vehicle is not driven in a tight corner.
- No system fault is present which prevents corrections.

Activation/Deactivation

1. Press successively until Drive Assist Mode is selected. The Drive Assist screen is displayed on the cluster.
2. Press successively again until the mode to switch off assistance is selected.

Pausing/Suspending the system

NOTE

When using semi-automated lane change, setting the turn lights starts a semi-automated lane change manouevre.

Advanced Lane Keep Assist may be paused or suspended in the following situations:

- The Electronic Stability Control is in operation or it has been deactivated.
- At least one of the lane markings is not detected by the system for several seconds. The system will be reactivated once the operating conditions are regained.
- The driver activates the turn lights and turns the steering wheel.
- Driving outside the lane limits.
- The steering wheel is held too tight or moved too dynamically.
- The brake pedal or the accelerator pedal is applied.
- The adaptive cruise control is paused.
- The road is too narrow or wide.
- The lateral acceleration in curves is too high

System Limitations

The system performance may be affected by:

- covered camera by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, or affected by windshield damage or foreign items, e.g. stickers
- close vehicles ahead
- banked roads
- winding or hilly roads
- poor lighting conditions
- sudden lighting changes
- dazzling light, e.g. caused by the sun or artificial illumination is shining directly into the camera lens
- adverse environmental conditions, e.g. heavy rain, fog, or snow
- vehicle modifications, e.g. tires
- roads with poor lane markings

A warning message may appear when the vehicle is traveling in a long straight lane on a smooth road surface even if the driver is holding the steering wheel properly.
Deactivate the system if the system is disturbed by tar marks, shadows, road cracks, temporary or construction lane markings, or other road imperfections.

WARNING

Always keep your attention on the road and maintain proper vehicle position within the lane, otherwise vehicle damage, injury or death could occur.
The system may not keep the vehicle in the lane or give an alert, even if a lane marking is detected.
The steering of the system may not be sufficient to avoid a lane departure.
The system may not detect hands-off driving due to external influences (road condition and surface, weather etc).
The driver has full responsibility to control the vehicle and is always required to keep the hands on the steering wheel while driving.
Using the system on slippery roads could cause loss of control of the vehicle and a crash. Switch the system off.

Fault

In the event of a fault, the Service warning light comes on and this (orange) symbol appears on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Semi-Automatic Lane Change (SALC)

(with Drive Assist 2.0)

NOTE

For more information, refer to the **General Information** on the **Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS)** chapter.

This system assists the driver in changing lanes.
To do this, it uses the camera located at the top of the windshield, the radar located at the front and the four angle radars fitted in the bumpers.

WARNING

The steering wheel is equipped with a hands-on detection system to avoid distraction on the part of the driver.

WARNING

The system cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. The driver remains responsible for their driving by monitoring their surroundings and keeping their hands on the steering wheel. The driver must act promptly if they believe that the traffic conditions or the state of the road surface require their intervention, by moving the steering wheel to temporarily suspend system operation. Any intervention on the brake pedal that causes the Adaptive Cruise Control to be paused or suspended will also cause the system to deactivate.

Selecting the System

For the system to be active, two requirements must be met:

- Drive Assist 2.0 must be activated in the Functions tab of the ADAS app.
- SALC must be selected by pressing ASSIST on the steering wheel successively until Drive Assist 2.0 is selected.

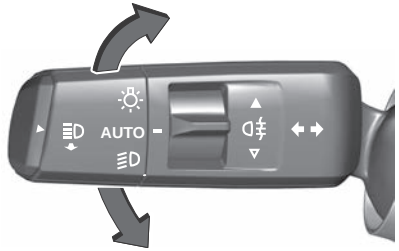
Once SALC is active and if the road the vehicle is currently driving on is eligible, SALC will allow automatic overtaking.

Operating Conditions

(According to country)

- Eligible roads: roads with separate carriageways with prohibited access for pedestrians and cyclists.
- The line separating the lanes must be clear enough to be identified by the system.
- The position and speed of other vehicles must enable the system to safely change lanes.
- Drive Assist 2.0 activated.
- Lane Positioning Assist activated.
- Vehicle speed between 70 km/h and 180 km/h (43 mph and 112 mph).

Activation/Deactivation



- Activate the direction indicator on the side corresponding to the lane change, whether or not passing the resistance point of the lighting control stalk.

The driver can regain control of the vehicle at any time:

- by deactivating the direction indicator if the vehicle has not yet crossed the line.
- by firmly holding the steering wheel.
- by acting on the pedals.

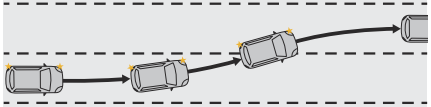
For more information on the **Direction indicators**, refer to the corresponding section.

NOTE

In the event of strong acceleration, the SALC may deactivate automatically.

Authorized lane change request

When operating the direction indicator, if the necessary conditions are met, an animation to initiate the lane changing assistance procedure appears in the instrument cluster.



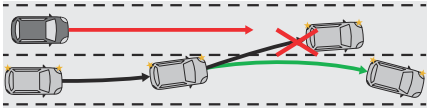
The system then proceeds with the vehicle's lane change.
Once the manoeuvre has been carried out, the system is automatically deactivated and the lane positioning assist takes over.
If the direction indicator has been set beyond the point of resistance, the driver must pull it back.

NOTE

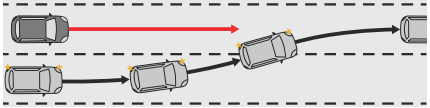
The driver must hold the steering wheel correctly.
As soon as the Semi-Automatic Lane Change begins, the system directs the vehicle to the target lane by small actions on the steering to position it in the destination lane.
You can feel the steering wheel moving.

Interrupting the Lane Change

It is possible that while changing lane, the necessary conditions for the operation of the system may no longer be met.



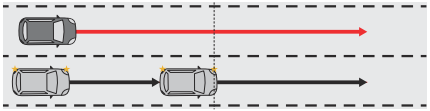
If this occurs before one of the wheels has crossed the line separating the two lanes, the system automatically returns the vehicle to its original lane (confirmed by the display of a maneuver cancellation message on the instrument panel and an audible signal). The system is then automatically deactivated.



If this occurs when the lane change has started, the system prompts the driver to immediately retake control of the vehicle (confirmed by the display of a message on the instrument panel and an audible signal), and the system is automatically deactivated.

Refused Lane Change Request

When operating the direction indicator , if the necessary conditions are not met, the lines appear in orange on the instrument panel.



The system keeps the vehicle in the original lane. The system is deactivated and the semi-automatic lane change is not carried out.

Messages and Alerts

The actual order of display of the messages or alerts may be different.

Display	Comments
(gray)/(continuous gray)/(gray)	System awaiting selection.
(gray)/(continuous green)/(green)	System selection request.
(green)/(continuous green)/(green)	System selected.
(green)/(broken green)/(green)	Confirmation request for a lane change manoeuvre.
(green)/(broken green)/(green)	Lane change manoeuvre in progress.
(green)/(continuous orange)/(green)	Refused lane change manoeuvre when operating the direction indicator.

(orange)

" **Lane change interrupted: Stay in the lane** "

The system cannot manage the current driving situation.
Brake or use the steering wheel, depending on the context.

(blue)

"**Lane change canceled** "

Continuation of the systems: Lane positioning assist and Adaptive cruise control.
or
Interruption at the initiative of the driver.

(red)

" **Take back control** "

The system cannot manage the current driving situation.
Brake, accelerate or use the steering wheel, depending on the context.

Operating limits

The system should only be used on driving lane. The system may not work in the following situations:

- Wearing thick gloves.
- Poor visibility (insufficient road lighting, snowfall, rain, fog).
- Dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a wet road surface, leaving a tunnel, alternating light and shade).
- Windshield area in front of the camera dirty, misted up, frost-covered, snow-covered, damaged or covered by a sticker.
- Lane markings eroded, partially hidden (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks, surface joints).
- Traveling in a tight bend.
- Winding roads.
- Road surface repairs.

⚠ WARNING

The system should be deactivated in the following situations:

- When changing a wheel or working near a wheel.
- Towing or with a bicycle carrier on a towing device, especially with trailer not plugged in or not approved.
- Adverse weather conditions.

- Road with low grip (risk of aquaplaning, snow, ice).
- Road works and toll areas.
- Driving on racing circuits.
- Driving on a rolling road.

WARNING

If the system detects that the driver is not holding the wheel firmly enough, it triggers a series of gradual alerts and then deactivates itself if there is no response from the driver.

Fault

In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp illuminates on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

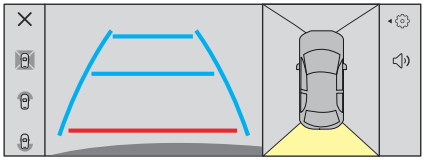
Parking and Reverse Operations Assistance System

Surround Vision

NOTE

For more information, refer to the **General Information** on the **Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS)** chapter.

This system allows you to view your vehicle's close surroundings on the touch screen using cameras, located at the front and rear of the vehicle, as well as under the door mirrors.



The screen is divided into 4 parts with two side menus, a contextual view and a view from above the vehicle in its close surroundings.
The parking sensors supplement the information in the view from above the vehicle.
Depending on the view angle chosen in the left-hand side menu, the system provides specific visual assistance in particular driving conditions, such as entering a blind intersection or maneuvering in areas with reduced visibility.

Different contextual views are available for the rear or for the front:

- Automatic zoom view.
- Standard view.
- Panoramic view.

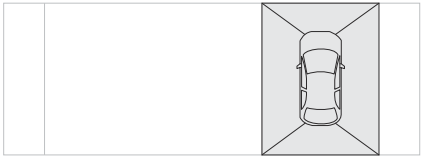
Depending on the context, the system chooses the best view to display (standard or automatic zoom).
The view type can be changed at any time during the maneuver.
The system status is not saved when the ignition is switched off.

Operating Principle

Reconstructed view

The cameras are activated and a reconstruction of a view from above your vehicle in its close surroundings is displayed on the touch screen.

Live view



The front, rear and side views automatically appear in the view from above the vehicle.
It is also possible to display any live view by selecting the corresponding zone.
The front view can be selected in forward gear up to 16 km/h (10 mph).

NOTE

Installing the very cold climate screen can alter the image transmitted by the front camera.

Settings

In the side menu:

This window allows to adjust the volume of the audible signal.

This button allows to mute/unmute the audible signal.

Activation/Deactivation

Automatic

With the rear camera, engine running and vehicle stationary, rear vision is displayed automatically if reverse gear is engaged.
With the front camera, engine running and speed below 16 km/h (10 mph), rear vision is displayed automatically if a gear is engaged.

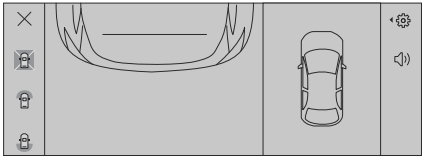
Manual

In the **ADAS** touch screen application, select **Functions>Panoramic Camera**

The system is deactivated:

- automatically for the rear, when changing out of reverse gear.
- automatically for the front, above approximately 16 km/h (10 mph).
- by pressing the cross in the top left-hand corner of the touch screen.

Automatic zoom view



The front or rear camera records the surroundings during the maneuver to create a front or rear view from above the vehicle in its close surroundings, making it possible to maneuver the vehicle around the surrounding obstacles. Using the sensors located on the front or rear bumper, the automatic zoom view is displayed when approaching an obstacle at the red line (less than 30 cm) during the maneuver.
This view is only available automatically.

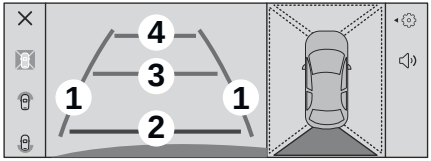
Depending on version, it can be activated/deactivated in the **ADAS** application of the touch screen.

NOTE

Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are.
It is important to monitor the sides of the vehicle during the manoeuvre, using the mirrors.

Parking sensors also provide additional information about the area around the vehicle.

Standard view

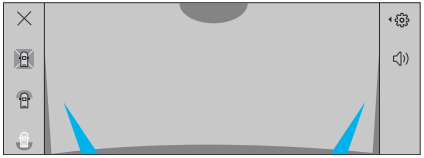


Depending on the context, the area behind or in front of your vehicle is displayed on the screen.

The blue lines (at the rear)/orange lines (at the front) (**1**) represent the width of your vehicle, with the mirrors unfolded; their direction changes according to the position of the steering wheel.

The red line (**2**) represents a distance of 30 cm from the rear or front bumper; the two blue lines (at the rear)/orange lines (at the front) (**3**) and (**4**) represent 1 m and 2 m respectively.
This view is available automatically or by selection in the left-hand side menu.

Panoramic View

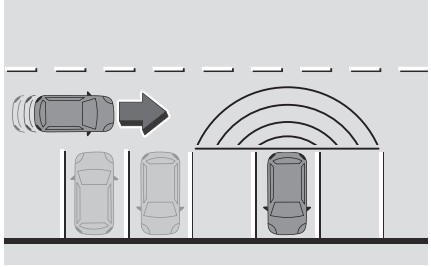


The rear or front panoramic view allows you to leave a parking space by anticipating the arrival of vehicles, pedestrians or cyclists.
This view is not recommended for carrying out a complete maneuver.
This view is only available by selection in the left-hand side menu.

Rear Cross Traffic Alert

NOTE

For more information, refer to the **General Information** on the **Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS)** chapter.



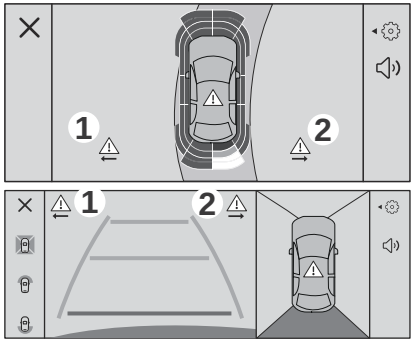
When engaging reverse gear with the engine running, or when reversing at up to 10 km/h (6 mph), this system warns of approaching obstacles (e.g. pedestrian, cyclist, vehicle, truck, motorcycle) in the rear blind spots of the vehicle, using the radars installed in the bumper.

The system detects obstacles moving more than 3 km/h (2 mph) at a maximum distance of 40 m.
The system operates in addition to the Parking sensors, Reversing camera or Surround vision functions (depending on version).

WARNING

The driver must monitor their surroundings before and during the whole manoeuvre. Drive slowly and carefully in reverse gear in case of reduced or no visibility.

Operating principle



When an approaching obstacle is detected, the symbol (**1**) or (**2**) flashes on the touch screen, in the Parking sensors view or in the various contextual views of the Reversing camera or Surround vision functions (depending on version).

The symbol is complemented by an audible signal when the vehicle is reversing.

An obstacle is approaching in the blind spot on the rear right-hand/ left-hand side or on both sides of the vehicle.

In the event of a malfunction of these visual display functions, the touch screen, or if the driver deactivates the views of these functions on the touch screen, detection of an approaching obstacle is still indicated by the audible signal when the vehicle is reversing.

Activation/Deactivation

It is configured in the **ADAS** touch screen application.

The system's status is saved when the ignition is switched off.

Operating Limits

The system may not work in the following cases:

- Towing a trailer.
- Using a bicycle carrier on a towing device.
- Extreme temperature changes.
- Damaged rear bumper.
- Accumulation or projection of external elements (e.g. mud, frost, snow), stickers application.

WARNING

It is possible that warnings are not given, are given too late or seem unjustified. Consequently, always stay in control of your vehicle and be prepared to react at any time to avoid an accident.

WARNING

In the event of repainting the rear bumper, consult the dealer or a qualified workshop; certain types of paint could interfere with the operation of the radars.

Fault

In the event of a malfunction when engaging reverse gear, during reversing or when the driver attempts to activate the system, a message appears on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

This message appears on the instrument panel **"Parking Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual"** if the sensor is masked.

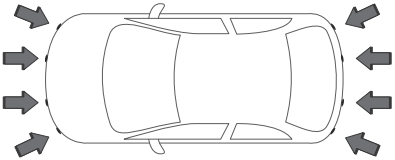
This is a normal behavior, which does not request the support of a qualified workshop.
In this case, stop the vehicle and verify if the corner radars, the reversing camera and/or parking rear sensors are covered by dirt, mud, sand, snow, ice or anything preventing the sensing.

The system is operational again after the detection field has been cleaned.

Parking Sensors

NOTE

For more information, refer to the **General Information** on the **Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS)** chapter.



This system detects and signals the proximity of obstacles (e.g. pedestrian, vehicle, tree, barrier) using sensors located in the bumper.

Rear Parking Sensors

System startup is available under the following conditions:

- when reverse gear is engaged.
- when the vehicle is moving backwards (e.g. downhill, in neutral).

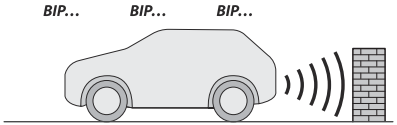
It is indicated by an audio confirmation signal and a display indication.

NOTE

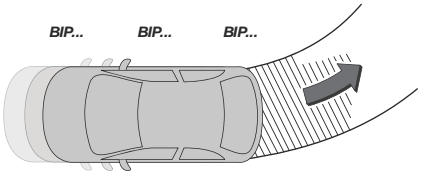
If an obstacle is detected as soon as the reverse gear is engaged, an audible detection signal is given directly instead of the audible confirmation signal.

If no audio signal is given, the display indication is not shown or a warning message appears, the system has a failure.

Audio assistance



The system signals the presence of obstacles which are both within the sensors' detection zone and in the vehicle path defined by the direction of the steering wheel.



Depending on version, in the example shown, only the obstacles present in the shaded area will be signaled by the audio assistance.

The proximity information is given by an intermittent audio signal, the frequency of which increases as the vehicle approaches the obstacle.
When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle becomes less than about thirty centimeters, the audio signal becomes continuous.
The sound emitted by the speaker (right or left) indicates the side on which the obstacle is located.
The audio signal is automatically suspended when the vehicle is stationary for a few seconds.
The audio signal is automatically restored when the vehicle is moving again or if the obstacle approaches the vehicle.

Adjusting the audio detection signal

Pressing this button opens the window for adjusting the volume of the audio signal.

Pressing this button mutes/unmutes the audio signal.

Visual assistance

This supplements the audible signal, without taking account of the vehicle's trajectory, by displaying bars on the screen whose location represents the distance between the obstacle and the vehicle (white: more distant, orange: close, red: very close).

When the obstacle is very close, the **"Danger"** symbol is displayed on the screen.

Closing the system display window

Pressing this button closes the system display window.

This warning light flashes during obstacle detection on the instrument panel.

NOTE

Muting the audible assistance / Closing the visual assistance

If the audible detection signal is muted or the system display window is closed by the driver during the obstacle detection, only the warning lamp continues to flash on the instrument panel.

Front Parking Sensors

Supplementing the rear parking sensors, the front parking sensors are triggered when an obstacle is detected in front and the speed of the vehicle is below 10 km/h (6 mph).

Front parking sensor operation is suspended if the vehicle stops for more than three seconds in forward gear, if an obstacle is no longer detected or the vehicle speed exceeds 10 km/h (6 mph).

NOTE

The sound emitted by the speaker (front or rear) locates the obstacle relative to the vehicle, whether in front of or behind it on its path.

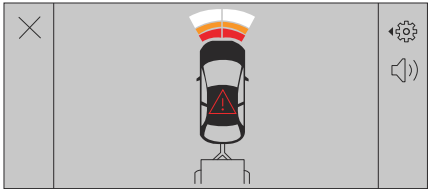
Activation/Deactivation

(Depending on country of sale)
By default, the audible signal is automatically activated at each backing movement of the vehicle.

NOTE

The system cannot be deactivated.

You can start the system manually and activate/deactivate the audible signal in the **ADAS** touch screen application.



NOTE

The rear parking sensors are deactivated automatically if a trailer or bicycle carrier is connected to a towing device installed in accordance with the Manufacturer's recommendations.
In this case, the outline of a trailer is displayed at the rear of the image of the vehicle.

NOTE

When starting the vehicle, the graphic and audible aids are only available after the touch screen has started up.

Operating limits

If the trunk is heavily loaded, the vehicle may tilt, affecting distance measurements.
In case of a gearbox failure, the system is not active, when the reverse gear is engaged.

Fault

NOTE

In case of display or speakers fault, the system may be disturbed or unavailable.

WARNING

In the event of vehicle fault, the system may be deactivated.

In the event of a malfunction, this warning light illuminates on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal (short beep).

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

This warning light illuminates on the instrument panel with the message **" Parking Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual "** if the sensor is masked.

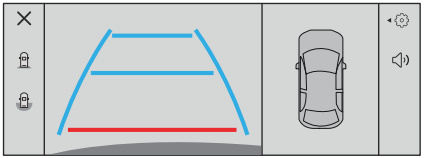
This is a normal behavior, which does not request the support of a qualified workshop.
In this case, stop the vehicle and verify if the front and/or rear sensors are covered by dirt, mud, sand, snow, ice or anything preventing the sensing.
The system is operational again after the detection field has been cleaned.

Rear Vision Camera (RVC)

NOTE

For more information, refer to the **General Information** on the **Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS)** chapter.

When reverse gear is engaged, with the engine running, this system displays views of the vehicle's close surroundings on the touch screen using a camera located at the rear of the vehicle.



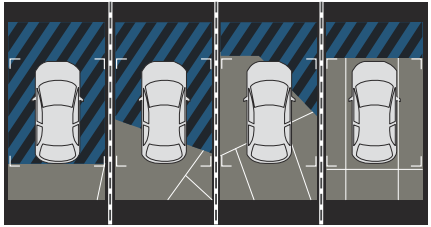
The screen is divided into 4 parts with two side menu, a contextual view and a view from above the vehicle in its close surroundings.
The parking sensors supplement the information in the view from above the vehicle.
Different contextual views are available:

- Automatic zoom view.
- Standard view.
- Panoramic view.

Depending on the context, the system chooses the best view to display (standard or automatic zoom).
The view type can be changed at any time during the maneuver.

The system status is not saved when the ignition is switched off.

Operating principle



Using the camera, the vehicle's close surroundings are recorded during low speed maneuvers.
An image from above the vehicle in its close surroundings is created in real time (on the side of the screen), as the vehicle progresses.
This view makes it easier to align the vehicle when parking and to perceive nearby obstacles.
It is automatically deleted if the vehicle remains stationary for too long.

NOTE

An additional jet is fitted above the number plate to clean the reversing camera (depending on version).

Settings

In the side menu:

This window allows to adjust the volume of the audible signal.

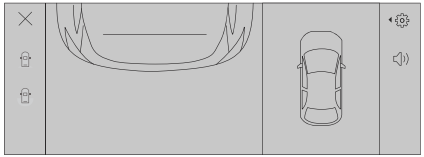
This button allows to mute/unmute the audible signal.

Activation/Deactivation

To activate the camera, engage reverse gear.
The system is deactivated:

- when changing out of reverse gear.
- by pressing the cross in the top left-hand corner of the touch screen.

Automatic zoom view

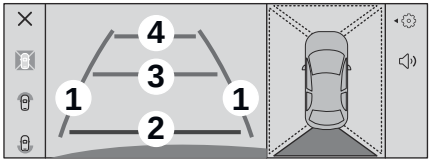


The rear camera records the vehicle's surroundings during the maneuver in order to create a view from above the rear of the vehicle in its close surroundings, allowing the vehicle to be maneuvered around nearby obstacles.
Using the sensors located on the rear bumper, the automatic zoom view is displayed when approaching an obstacle at the red line (less than 30 cm) during the maneuver.
This view is only available automatically.

NOTE

Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are.
It is important to monitor the sides of the vehicle during the manoeuvre, using the mirrors.
Parking sensors also provide additional information about the area around the vehicle.

Standard view

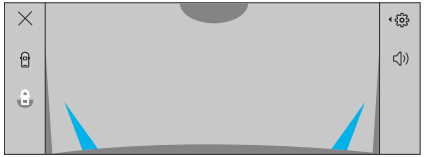


The area behind the vehicle is displayed on the screen.

The blue lines (**1**) represent the width of your vehicle, with the mirrors unfolded; their direction changes according to the position of the steering wheel.

The red line (**2**) represents a distance of 30 cm from the rear bumper; the two blue lines (**3**) and (**4**) represent 1 m and 2 m, respectively.
This view is available automatically or by selection in the side menu.

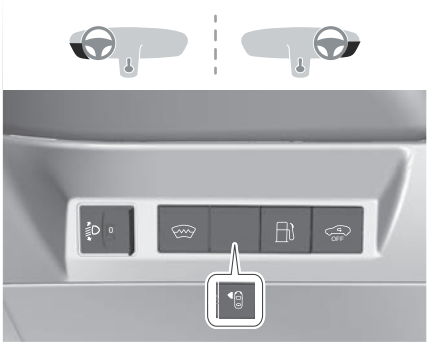
Panoramic view

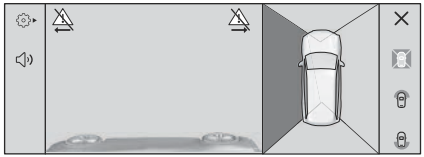


The panoramic view allows you to leave, in reverse, a parking space by anticipating the arrival of vehicles, pedestrians or cyclists.
This view is not recommended for carrying out a complete maneuver.
This view is only available by selection in the side menu.

Lateral View

(Depending on version)
Using a camera on the outside rearview mirror on the passenger side, the vehicle can display a view designed to enhance the visibility of the driver when parking close to an obstacle on the passenger side.
With a speed below 16km/h (10 mph), pressing the Lateral View button opens the Lateral View mode.





To exit Lateral view :

- Shut the engine off.
- Exceed 16 km/h (10 mph).
- Press the cross on the Infotainment Display to exit the mode.

Driver's Attention Assistance System

NOTE

For more information, refer to the **General Information** on the **Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS)** chapter.

The Driver's Attention Assistance System monitors the driving time and the vigilance of the driver. Monitoring the vigilance of the driver is based on the trajectory variations of the vehicle compared to the lane markings, and on analyzing the face of the driver (depending on version).
The system cannot replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

WARNING

These systems are in no way designed to keep the driver awake or to prevent the driver from falling asleep at the wheel.
It is the driver's responsibility to stop if feeling tired.
Take a break if you are feeling tired or at least every 2 hours.

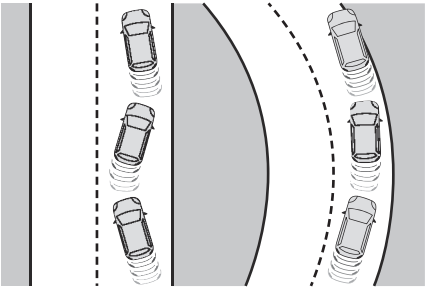
Driver Attention Warning by timer

Illuminates as part of a message, accompanied with an audible chime. 2h of driving at speeds above 70 km/h (43 mph) have elapsed.
Take a break.

The alert is repeated hourly until the vehicle is stopped, no matter how vehicle speed evolves. The counting of driving time alert is reset when:

- the ignition has been switched off for a few minutes
- or the driver's seat belt has been unfastened
- the driver's door has been opened.

Driver Attention Warning by Front View Camera



The system monitors the driver's level of vigilance at speeds above 70 km/h (43 mph).

The system may perform a learning procedure for up to 30 minutes after the start of the monitoring. During this period, the driver's individual driving behaviour is analyzed and no alert is given.
In some driving conditions such as poor road surface or strong winds etc., the system may give alerts independent of the driver's level of vigilance.

Alerting the driver

Illuminates, accompanied by a message and an audible chime.
Drowsiness or distraction has been detected.

After three alerts, the telltale illuminates again, accompanied by a message and a more pronounced audible chime.

Driver Attention Warning with Driver Monitoring Camera

WARNING

To avoid risk of eye damage: Do not sit closer than 25 cm to the steering wheel.

The system monitors the driver's level of vigilance at speeds above 20 km/h (13 mph).

The system monitors and analyses visual signs of drowsiness or distraction of the driver by monitoring facial, head and eye movements. The system does not record any video nor is it capable of identifying the driver.
The visual signs of drowsiness or distraction may be the following:

- driver diverts his gaze longer or more frequently away from traffic
- eyelids closing or blinking
- microsleep patterns

If the system detects certain facial movements, e.g. a complete closure of the eyes for a certain time, or analyses a certain level of drowsiness or distraction, an alert is triggered.

Alerting the driver

The driver is alerted by a message and an audible signal is given.

Illuminates, accompanied by a message and an audible chime.
Drowsiness or distraction has been detected.

Illuminates, accompanied by a message and a pronounced audible chime.
Severe distraction or drowsiness is detected (micro-sleep, sleep events).

Drowsiness and microsleep alerts will only occur after a couple of minutes of driving and above a certain vehicle speed.

Activation/Deactivation

By default, the function is automatically activated at every engine start.

The settings are changed via the **ADAS** touch screen application.

or

Direct access to the **Shortcuts for driving aids.**

Deactivation is confirmed by the illumination of this indicator light on the instrument panel.

WARNING

Driver Attention Warning Safety mode

If drowsiness of the driver is detected, the **Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)** and the **Active Emergency Brake (AEB)** systems are automatically reactivated (if they have been deactivated by the driver in the **ADAS** app) and the **Collision Risk Alert** function trigger threshold is set to its most sensitive value.
It is recommended to deactivate distraction detection in the **ADAS** app in the same cases for which it is recommended to deactivate the **Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)** and the **Active Emergency Brake (AEB)** systems.

Reinitialization

Depending on version, the driver drowsiness and distraction detection is reinitialized in the following situations:

- the ignition has been switched off for a few minutes
- the driver has changed
- the system is reselected

System limitations

In the following situations, the system with front camera may not operate properly or even not operate at all:

- Poor visibility caused by inadequate lighting of the roadway, falling snow, heavy rain, dense fog etc.
- Dazzle caused by headlights of oncoming vehicles, low sun, reflections on damp roads, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light etc.
- No lane markings detected or multiple lane markings due to roadworks.
- Close vehicles ahead.
- Winding roads or narrow roads.
- Advanced lane keeping assist is active.
- Front view camera covered by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, or affected by windshield damage or foreign items, e.g. stickers.

In the following situations, the system with driver monitoring camera may not operate properly or even not operate at all:

- Driver monitoring camera covered by dirt or foreign items, e.g. stickers.
- The driver is wearing eyeglasses or sunglasses with certain characteristics (e.g. high infrared protection, etc.).
- The driver monitoring camera is exposed to extremely high temperatures.

Fault

In the event of a malfunction, this warning light illuminates on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Illuminates with the message " **Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual** " if the sensor is masked.

This is a normal behavior, which does not request the support of a qualified workshop.
In this case, stop the vehicle and verify if the front camera is covered by dirt, mud, sand, snow, ice or anything preventing the sensing.
The system is operational again after the detection field has been cleaned.
If the warning light still illuminates after cleaning the camera, have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Illuminates on the cluster, accompanied by a message.
The driver monitoring camera is not able to detect facial and/or eye movements due to e.g. sunglasses.

Offroad and Low-Range Operations Assistance System

Hill Assist Descent Control (HADC)

Hill Assist Descent Control system for medium to steep slopes, on tarmac or other road surfaces (e.g. gravel, mud).
This system reduces the risk of slip or loss of control of the vehicle when descending, whether going forward or in reverse.
During a descent, the system assists the driver in maintaining a constant speed, depending on the gear engaged, while progressively releasing the brakes.

NOTE

For the system to activate, the gradient must be greater than 5%. The system can be used with the transmission in neutral. Otherwise, engage a gear corresponding to the speed to prevent the engine stalling. With an automatic transmission, the system can be used with the selector at **N**, **D** or **R**.

NOTE

When the system is regulating, the Active Emergency Braking system is automatically deactivated.

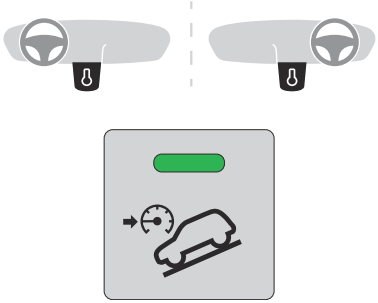
NOTE

The system is no longer available if the speed of the vehicle is:

- above 70 km/h (43 mph).
- managed by the Adaptive Cruise Control, depending on the type of transmission.

Switching on

By default, the system is not selected. The state of the function is not saved when the ignition is switched off.



To select the system, at speeds below 50 km/h (31 mph), press this button until its green indicator light lights up; this light appears in grey on the instrument panel.

The system becomes active at speeds below 30 km/h (19 mph); this light lights up in green on the instrument panel.

- When the vehicle begins its descent, the driver can release the accelerator and brake pedals; the system regulates the speed:

If the transmission is in first or second gear, the speed decreases and the indicator light flashes rapidly.

If the transmission is in neutral or if the clutch pedal is depressed, the speed decreases and the indicator ight flashes slowly; in this case, the maintained descent speed is lower.
On a downward slope, with the vehicle stationary, if the driver releases the accelerator and brake pedals, the system will release the brakes to set the vehicle gradually in motion.
The brake lights light up automatically when the system is regulating.
If the speed exceeds 30 km/h (19 mph), regulation is paused automatically, the indicator light goes back to grey in the instrument panel, but the green indicator light in the button remains on. Regulation resumes automatically when the speed falls below 30 km/h (19 mph) again, if the slope and pedal release conditions are met.
You can depress the accelerator or brake pedal again at any time.

Switching off

- Press the button until its indicator laight goes off; the indicator light on the instrument panel goes off.

At speeds above 70 km/h (43 mph), the system is automatically deactivated; the indicator light in the button goes off.

Fault

In the event of a malfunction, this warning light comes on in green on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Hill Start Assist (HSA)

This system keeps the vehicle briefly stationary (for approximately 2 seconds) when making a hill start, while you transfer your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal. The system is only active when:

- The vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal.
- Certain slope conditions are met.
- The driver's door is closed.

WARNING

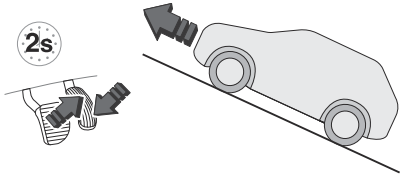
Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held temporarily by hill start assist.

If someone needs to get out of the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake manually. Then check that the parking brake indicator and the **P** indicator in the electric parking brake control illuminate steadily.

WARNING

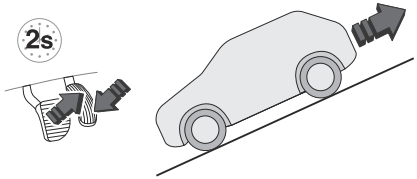
The hill start assist function cannot be deactivated. However, using the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle interrupts its operation.

Operation



Facing uphill, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a short time when the driver releases the brake pedal:

- If mode **D**, **M** or **B** is selected on an automatic transmission.
- If mode **D** is selected on the drive selector.



Facing downhill, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held for a short time when the driver releases the brake pedal.

Fault

If the event of a malfunction, these warning lights illuminate on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message.

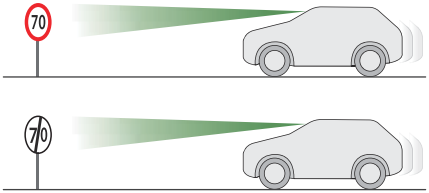
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Utility Assistance Features

Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)

NOTE

For more information, refer to the **General Information** on the **Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS)** chapter.



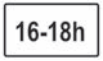
This system displays the maximum speed authorised locally on the instrument panel, using:

- Speed limit signs detected by the camera.
- Speed limit information from the on-board navigation system's mapping.
- Speed limit information from the connected services.
- Signs indicating a shared traffic zone detected by the camera.

Sign detected	Suggested speed (calculated)
Entry into a shared traffic zone Example: 	**Without Connect Nav** 20 km/h (12 mph) (depending on the units on the instrument panel) **With Connect Nav** Display of the speed in force in the country you are driving in.

Some supplementary traffic signs detected by the camera.

Supplementary traffic sign detected	Display of the speed associated with the supplementary traffic sign
Speed limit when raining Examples: 	If the wiper control stalk is in the "intermittent wipe" or "automatic wipe" position (in order to activate the rain sensor): 110 km/h (68 mph) (for example)
Speed limit when towing 	If an approved towing device is fixed to the vehicle: 90 km/h (56 mph) (for example)
Speed limit applicable over a certain distance Example: 	70 km/h (43 mph) (for example)

Supplementary traffic sign detected	Display of the speed associated with the supplementary traffic sign
Speed limit for vehicles with a gross vehicle weight or gross train weight less than 3.5 tonnes 	90 km/h (56 mph) (for example)
Speed limit in case of snow Example: 	If the outside temperature is below 3°C: 30 km/h (19 mph) (for example) with a "snowflake" symbol
Speed limit at certain times of the day Example: 	30 km/h (19 mph) (for example) with a "clock" symbol

NOTE

To get valid speed limit information, the vehicle's current position is sent via the telematics unit and is immediately deleted after processing.
Tracking of the vehicle position is not possible at any time.

This is not impacted by the privacy settings of the connected services.

WARNING

On-board navigation mapping should be regularly updated in order to receive accurate speed limit information from the system.

WARNING

The units for the speed limit (mph or km/h) depend on the country you are driving in. This should be taken into account to ensure you observe the speed limit.
For the system to work properly when changing countries, the speed unit of the instrument panel must match that of the country you are driving in.
Country selection is only available for audio systems without on-board navigation.

WARNING

Automatic sign reading is a driving aid system and does not always display the correct speed limits.
The speed limit signs present on the road always take priority over those displayed by the system.

The system is designed to detect signs that conform to the Vienna Convention on road signs.

NOTE

Specific speed limits, such as those for heavy goods vehicles, are not displayed.
The display of the speed limit on the instrument panel is updated when passing a speed limit sign intended for cars (light vehicles).

Information displayed on the instrument panel

1 End of speed limit indication

or

2 Detected speed limit indication

The system is active but is not able to detect the speed sign or the speed limit information is currently unknown.

On detecting speed limit information, the system displays the value, accompanied by an audio signal.

NOTE

The audio signal can be deactivated in the ADAS touch screen menu.

For a suggested maximum speed, when the vehicle exceeds it, the speed is displayed and flashes for 3 seconds.

If the vehicle continues to exceed it, the speed is displayed and flashes for 8 seconds, accompanied by an audio signal.

Operating limits

The system does not take account of reduced speed limits, especially those imposed in the following cases:

- Atmospheric pollution.
- Towing.
- Driving with a space-saver type spare wheel or snow chains fitted.
- Tire repaired using the temporary puncture repair kit.
- Young drivers.

The system may not display the speed limit if it does not detect a speed limit sign within a preset period and in the following situations:

- Non-standard traffic signs.
- Traffic signs that are obstructed, damaged or bent.

Settings

Activation/Deactivation

By default, the overspeed alert sound is automatically activated at every engine start.

You can activate/deactivate the overspeed alert and the speed limit change sound.

or Direct access to the **Shortcuts for driving aids.**

NOTE

The system cannot be deactivated. The speed limit change sound is saved when the ignition is switched off.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, this warning light illuminates on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audio signal.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

This warning light illuminates on the instrument panel with the message "**Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual**" if the sensor is masked. This is a normal behavior, which does not request the support of a qualified workshop.

In this case, stop the vehicle and verify if the front camera is covered by dirt, mud, sand, snow, ice or anything preventing the sensing. The system is operational again after the detection field has been cleaned.

Speed setting recommendations

The driver can select the speed displayed by the **Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)** system as the speed setting for the Speed Limiter, Cruise Control or Adaptive Cruise Control using the **OK** button.
If rain is detected, the system proposes a speed setting to the driver which is lower than the speed read/sent from the mapping system in order to adapt to the weather conditions (e.g. on motorways, the proposed speed is 110 km/h (68 mph) instead of 130 km/h (81 mph).

NOTE

For more information on the **Speed limiter**, **Cruise control** or **Adaptive cruise control**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Speed Limiter ⇨ 168
Cruise Control ⇨ 170
Adaptive Cruise Control ⇨ 172

Speed setting advance recommendations

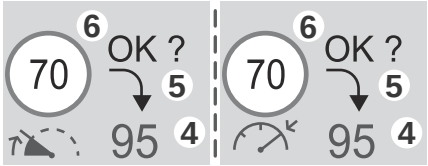
With Drive Assist Plus 2.0 activated, the system detects the next speed limit sign, displays it in the background and proposes this new speed as the speed setting.
Once memorised:

- If the speed setting is lower than the previous one, the vehicle slows down to reach this new speed when it gets to the sign.
- If the speed setting is higher than the previous one, the vehicle speeds up to reach this new speed when it passes the sign.

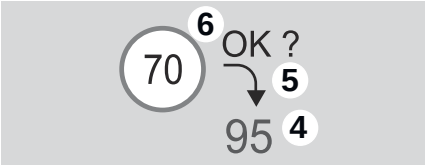
Steering-mounted controls

1. Select Speed Limiter mode
2. Select Cruise Control mode
3. Memorise the speed setting

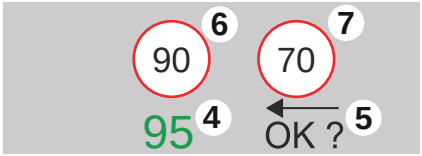
Information displayed on the instrument panel



Without speed setting advance recommendation



With speed setting advance recommendation



4. Current speed setting
5. Speed memorization prompt
6. Current speed limit indication
7. Next speed limit indication

Operating conditions

- Eligible roads: roads with separate carriageways with prohibited access for pedestrians and cyclists.
- Drive Assist Plus 2.0 activated.
- Vehicle speed between 0 km/h and 180 km/h (0 mph and 112 mph).
- Steering wheel properly held by the driver.

Memorising the speed setting

- Switch on the Speed Limiter **(1)** LIMIT or Cruise Control **(2)** ASSIST.

Information related to the Speed Limiter or Cruise Control is displayed.

When a new speed setting is detected, the system displays the value and " **OK?** " to suggest saving it as a new speed setting.

NOTE

If there is a difference of less than 5 km/h (3 mph) between the speed setting and the speed displayed by the Traffic signs recognition, the "**OK?**" symbol is not displayed.

Depending on the road conditions, several speeds may be displayed.

- Press **(3)** **OK** to confirm the new speed setting.

The display then reverts to its previous state.

Extended Traffic Sign Recognition

NOTE

For more information, refer to the **General Information** on the **Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS)** chapter.

This additional system recognises these road signs and displays them on the instrument panel.
As you approach it, the symbol of the corresponding sign is displayed on the instrument panel.

WARNING

The actual traffic signs always take priority over those displayed by the system.
The signs must comply with the Vienna Convention on traffic signs.
The signs may differ depending on the configuration of the vehicle.

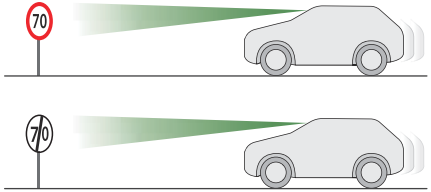
Activation/Deactivation

It is configured in the **ADAS** touch screen application.

Traffic Sign Assist (TSA)

NOTE

For more information, refer to the **General Information** on the **Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS)** chapter.



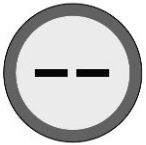
This system displays the maximum speed authorized locally on the instrument panel, using:

- Speed limit signs detected by the camera.
- Speed limit information from the on-board navigation system's mapping.
- Speed limit information from the connected services.
- Signs indicating a shared traffic zone detected by the camera.

Intelligent Speed Assistance

Using the camera at the top of the windshield and the vehicle's integrated navigation system, this system detects and reads speed limit signs and end of speed limits on the cluster. Up to two speed limit signs including supplementary signs are displayed in the cluster.
If several speed limits are recognized, the vehicle may analyze and display the valid speed limit.
When a traffic sign for a certain area, e.g. city or motorway, is recognized and the vehicle is fitted with integrated navigation, the corresponding speed limit will also be displayed.

If the system is activated but does not detect a speed limit sign, the following sign is displayed:



If the vehicle exceeds the speed limit by at least 5 km/h (3 mph), the speed limit displayed flashes about 10 seconds.

Activation/deactivation

- Press this button successively until the Drive Assist Plus mode is displayed on the instrument panel.

After a few seconds, the Drive Assist Plus mode is selected. The Driving aids area is displayed on the instrument panel.

The color of the symbols, representing the steering wheel and the side lines, depends on the operating state of the system:

(gray) One or more operating conditions is not met; the system is paused.

(green) All operating conditions are met; the system is active.

(orange) System malfunction.

- Press this button successively again until the **OFF** mode is displayed on the instrument panel.

After a few seconds, the Drive Assist Plus mode is deselected. The Driving aids area disappears.

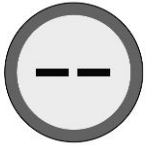
Advanced Intelligent Speed Assistance

This system displays permanently speed limit information in the cluster independent of vehicle speed.
Providing the speed limit information involves the following systems, depending on version:

- camera at the top of the windshield
- vehicle's integrated navigation system
- telematics service

If traveling on a road with no speed restrictions, e.g., on German motorways, the following sign is displayed:

If no speed limit information can be provided, the following sign is displayed:



If a new speed limit is provided, a confirmation chime is given. The confirmation chime can be activated/deactivated on the Infotainment Display.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

This system alerts the driver if one or more tires suffer a drop in pressure.
The alert is raised when the vehicle is moving, not when stationary.

It compares the information given by the wheel speed sensors with **reference values, which must be reinitialized every time the tire pressures are adjusted or a wheel changed.**

It takes into account the last values stored during the reinitialization request. It is therefore essential that the tire pressure is correct during the operation. This operation is the driver's responsibility.

WARNING

The TPMS does not, under any circumstances, replace the driver's vigilance or the need to regularly check the tire pressures (including the spare wheel), especially before a long journey.
Driving with under-inflated tires, particularly in adverse conditions (heavy load, high speed, long journey):

- worsens roadholding
- increases braking distances
- causes excessive wear on the tires
- increases energy consumption

NOTE

The inflation pressures defined for the vehicle can be found on the tire pressure label.

For more information on the **Tire Markings - Designations**, refer to the corresponding section.

WARNING

Checking tire pressures

This check should be done monthly when the tires are "cold" (vehicle stopped for 1

hour or after a journey of less than 10 km (6 miles) at moderate speeds).
Otherwise, add 0.3 bar to the pressures shown on the label.

NOTE

Snow chains. The system does not have to be reinitialised after fitting or removing snow chains.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System Low Pressure Warning

This is signaled by the fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and, depending on equipment, the display of a message.

- Reduce speed immediately, avoid excessive steering movements and avoid sudden braking.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

WARNING

The loss of pressure detected may not always cause visible deformation of the tire.
Do not rely on just a visual check.

- Using a compressor, such as the one in the temporary puncture repair kit, check the pressures of all four tires when cold.
- If it is not possible to carry out this check immediately, drive carefully at reduced speed.
- In the event of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the spare wheel (depending on equipment).

WARNING

When driving below 40 km/h (25 mph) or when using a dynamic driving style, the TPMS alert may be delayed.
After a sudden loss of pressure or tire blowout, the alert is not immediately triggered. This is because analysis of the values read by the wheel's speed sensors can take several minutes.

NOTE

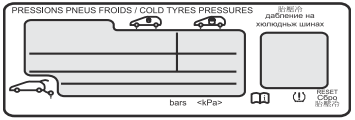
The alert is kept active until the system is reinitialised.

Reinitialization

The system must be reinitialized after any adjustment to the pressure of one or more tires, and after changing one or more wheels.

WARNING

Before reinitialising the system, make sure that the pressures of the four tires are correct for the conditions of use of the vehicle and conform to the values written on the tire pressure label. Check the pressures of the four tires before performing the reinitialisation. The system does not advise if a pressure is incorrect at the time of reinitialisation.



With the vehicle stationary, the system can be reinitialized in the **Settings>Vehicle** touch screen application.

- Then select **Safety > Tire Pressure Setup.**
- Press **YES** to confirm.

The reinitialization is confirmed by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Fault

In the event of a malfunction, these warning lamps illuminate on the instrument panel.

A message appears, accompanied by an audible signal.
In this case, the tire pressure monitoring function is no longer performed.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

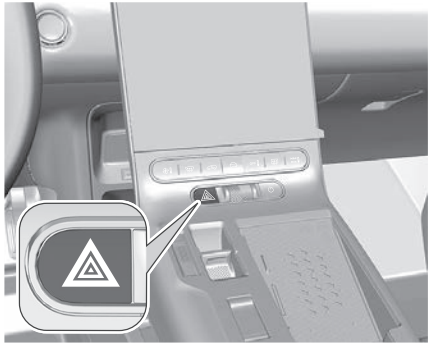
NOTE

Non-standard or 'space-saver' spare wheel.

The use of this type of spare wheel may suspend tire pressure monitoring.
In this case, the fault warning light comes on and disappears once the wheel has been replaced by one of uniform size (the same as the others), the pressure readjusted and the reinitialisation carried out.

IN CASE OF EMERGENCY

Hazard Warning Lights



- Pressing this red button causes all the direction indicators to flash.

They can work with the ignition switched off.

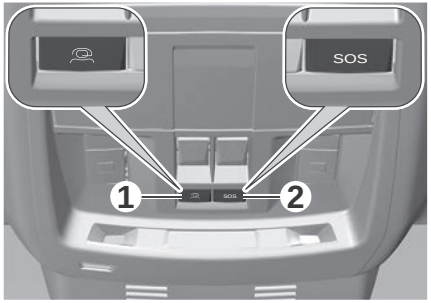
Automatic Hazard Warning Lights

When braking in an emergency, depending on the rate of deceleration, the hazard warning lights come on automatically. They switch off automatically when you next accelerate.
They can be switched off by pressing the button.

Assist And SOS

NOTE

In order to be available and operational, the system requires functioning vehicle electric, mobile service and GPS or GLONASS satellite link. Depending on equipment, a backup battery is used.



1. ASSISTANCE
2. eCall (SOS)

Emergency Call (eCall)

Your vehicle may be fitted with the eCall (SOS) system either as standard or as an option.

The emergency call function will establish a connection to the nearest Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP).
A minimum set of data including vehicle and location information will be sent to the PSAP.

The eCall (SOS) system provides direct contact to the emergency services and is fully built into the vehicle. This contact is made either automatically via the sensors built into the vehicle, or by pressing button **2**.

According to the country of sale, the eCall (SOS) system corresponds to the systems PE112, ERAGLONASS, 999, etc.

NOTE

The eCall (SOS) system is a public service of general interest and is free-of-charge.

Operation of the system

- Upon switching on the ignition, the indicator light lights up for a few seconds and then goes out: the system is operating correctly.
- The indicator light flashes red: emergency battery is flat. This will be recharged after a few minutes' driving.
- The indicator light is steady red: system malfunction. The emergency and assistance call services may not work.

- If the indicator light does not light up when the ignition is turned on, this is also a system malfunction.

If the problem persists, contact a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

NOTE

The malfunction of the system does not prevent the vehicle from driving.

NOTE

When an onboard system update is being performed, the eCall (SOS) function is not available.

NOTE

Data processing

All processing of personal data by the eCall (SOS) function complies with the framework for protection of personal information established by Regulation 2016/679 (General Data Protection Regulation - GDPR) or by UK GDPR (Data Protection, Privacy and Electronic Communications) Regulations 2019 and Directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and the Council, and in particular, seeks to protect the vital interests of the data subject, in accordance with Article 6 (1) d) GDPR.

The processing of personal data is strictly limited to the purpose of handling the eCall (SOS) function used with the "112" single European emergency call number.
The eCall (SOS) function is only able to collect and process the following data relating to the vehicle: vehicle identification number, vehicle type (passenger vehicle or light commercial vehicle), fuel type or power source, three most recent locations and direction of travel, number of passengers and a timestamped log file of the automatic activation of the system and its timestamp.
The recipients of the processed data are the emergency call handling centres designated by the relevant national authorities in the territory in which they are located, enabling priority routing and handling of calls to the "112" emergency number.

For more information on eCALL and Personal Data refer to the **Customer Information** chapter.

NOTE

Data storage. Data contained in the system's memory is not accessible from outside the system until a call is made. The system is not traceable and is not continuously monitored in its normal operating mode.

The data in the system's internal memory is automatically and continuously erased. Only the vehicle's three most recent locations, necessary for the normal functioning of the system, are stored.
When an emergency call is triggered, the data log is stored for no more than 13 hours.

NOTE

Access to data. You have the right of access to data and as appropriate to request the rectification, erasure or restriction of processing of any personal data not processed in accordance with the provisions of GDPR. Third parties to which data has been disclosed shall be notified of any rectification, erasure or restriction carried out in compliance with the corresponding GDPR, unless it proves impossible or involves a disproportionate effort.

You also have the right to lodge a complaint with the respective data protection supervisory authority.
If you want to claim your above-mentioned rights please contact us per email at: privacyrights@stellantis.com.

For more information regarding our contact details please take a look at our **Privacy & Cookies Policy** on the brand's website.

Manual Emergency Call

In case of an emergency, press the red SOS button **2** in the overhead console for more than two seconds.

The LED flashes green to confirm that a connection to the nearest PSAP is being established. The LED illuminates steadily as long as the call is active.
Pressing the SOS button immediately a second time will terminate the call.
The LED switches off.

Automatic Emergency Call (eCall)

Automatic crash notification

In case of an accident with airbag deployment and without damage of needed hardware, an automatic emergency call is established and an automatic crash notification will be transmitted to the next PSAP.

Assistance Call

- If the vehicle breaks down, press button **1** for more than two seconds to request assistance. A voice message will confirm that a connection is being established.
- Pressing again immediately cancels the request.

NOTE

Language depends on the geographic coverage of the eCall And Assistance Call systems and the system language of the vehicle.

NOTE

Privacy mode allows you to manage the level of sharing (data and/or location) between your vehicle and dealer.

It can be configured in the **Settings** touch screen application.

NOTE

If you purchased your vehicle outside the dealer network, you are invited to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modify it as required.
In a multilingual country, services can be configured to use the official national language of your choice.

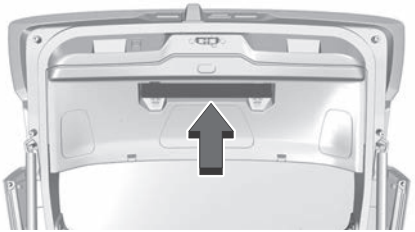
NOTE

For technical reasons and in particular to improve the quality of telematics services provided to customers, the Manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematics system at any time.

NOTE

During an update to the vehicle's on-board telematics system, the ASSISTANCE system will be unavailable.

Warning Triangle



There is a compartment in the interior trim of the tailgate to store a warning triangle.
After opening the tailgate, unhook the retaining elastic to release the case containing the warning triangle.

Warning Triangle Kit

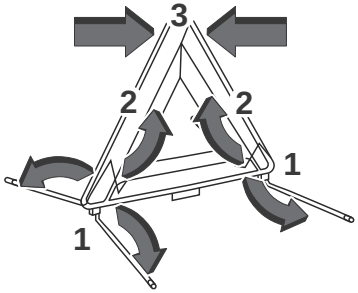
This reflective and dismantable device is to be installed on the side of the road when a vehicle is broken down or damaged.

WARNING

Before getting out of the vehicle. Turn on the hazard warning lamps, then put on

the safety vest to assemble and install the triangle.

Assembling The Triangle



For versions supplied with a triangle as original equipment, refer to the illustration above.
For other versions, refer to the assembly instructions provided with the triangle.

Placing The Triangle

Put the triangle in place behind the vehicle, as required by local legislation.

Jacking the Vehicle and Wheel Changing

Wheel Changing Toolkit

Set of tools supplied with the vehicle.
Its content depends on your vehicle's equipment:

- Chock and towing eye.
- Spare wheel.
- Temporary puncture repair kit.

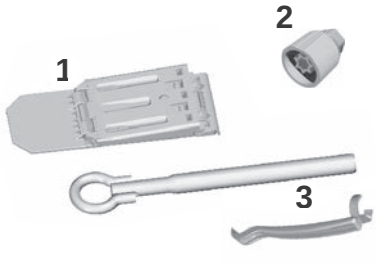
⚠ CAUTION

The tool kit is specific to the vehicle and may vary depending on version.
Do not use it for any other purposes.

The tool kit is stored in the trunk, under the floor.
To access them:

1. Open the trunk.
2. Lift the trunk floor past the two retractable stops.
3. Place the trunk floor onto these two stops to hold it up.
4. Take the storage bag from the trunk, then open the zip.

List of tools



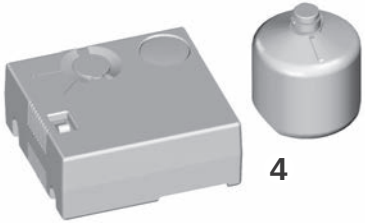
1 Chock to immobilize the vehicle (depending on equipment)

2 Socket for the security bolts (located in the glove box, depending on equipment) to adapt the wheelbrace to the special "security" bolts

3 Removable towing eye and tool to open the front and rear protective covers (depending on equipment)

For more information on **Towing the vehicle** and using the removable towing eye, refer to the corresponding section.

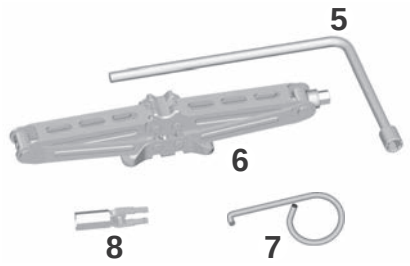
With Temporary Puncture Repair Kit



4 12 V compressor with cartridge of sealant and speed limit sticker For temporary repair of a tire and to adjust the tire pressure.

For more information on the **Temporary puncture repair kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

With Spare Wheel



5. Wheelbrace to remove the wheel bolts.
6. Jack with integrated handle to raise the vehicle.
7. Central bolt cover removal tool to remove the central bolt cover from alloy wheels.
8. Wheel bolt cap removal tool (depending on equipment) to remove the wheel bolt head finishers on alloy wheels.

For more information on the **Spare wheel**, refer to the corresponding section.

WARNING

The jack must only be used to change a wheel with a damaged or punctured tyre. Do not use any jack other than the one supplied with the vehicle.
If the vehicle does not have its original jack, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain the one that was intended by the manufacturer.
The jack meets European standards, as defined in the Machinery Directive 2006/42/CE, and also complies with UKCA requirement, as defined by the Supply of Machinery (Safety) Regulations 2008 No.1597.
The jack does not require any maintenance.

Spare Wheel

(Depending on version)
The spare wheel can be classified as a temporary spare wheel depending on the size compared to the other mounted wheels and country regulations. In this case a permissible maximum speed applies, even though no label at the spare wheel indicates this.
If there is a label on the spare wheel, the permissible speed still depends on the country regulations.
Only mount one temporary spare wheel. Take curves slowly. Do not use for a long period of time.
Depending on version the spare wheel is located in the load compartment beneath the floor covering or in a holder beneath the vehicle floor.

NOTE

For more information on the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

NOTE

Spare wheel tire pressure

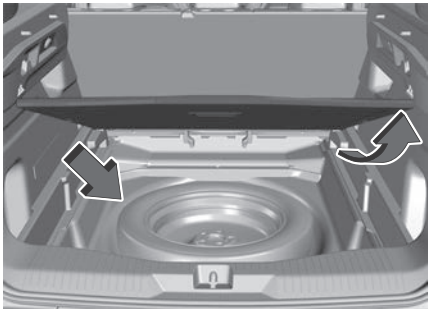
The inflation pressure for the spare wheel is indicated on the tire pressure label - ensure that its inflation pressure is checked regularly.

For more information on **Identification markings**, particularly the tire pressure label, refer to the corresponding section.

CAUTION

The use of a spare wheel that is smaller than the other wheels or in combination with winter tires could affect driveability. Have the defective tire replaced as soon as possible.

Accessing the spare wheel

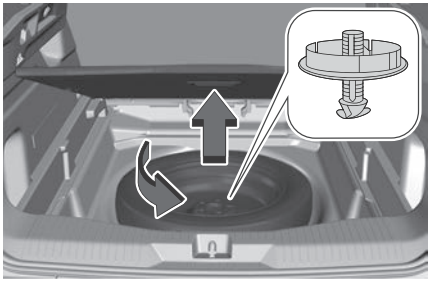


The spare wheel is stored in the trunk, under the floor.

NOTE

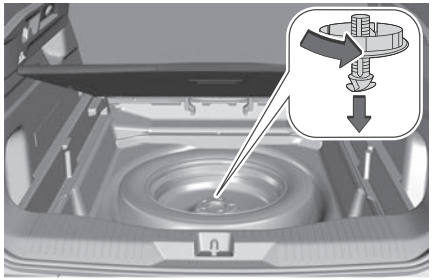
Depending on version, the spare wheel may be a standard steel, non-standard or space-saver wheel.

Removing the spare wheel



1. Loosen the central nut.
2. Remove the fastening device (nut and bolt).
3. Lift the spare wheel towards you from the rear.
4. Take the wheel out of the trunk.

Putting the spare wheel back in place



1. Put the spare wheel back in place in its housing.
2. Loosen the nut on the bolt by a few turns.
3. Position the fastening device (nut and bolt) in the middle of the wheel.

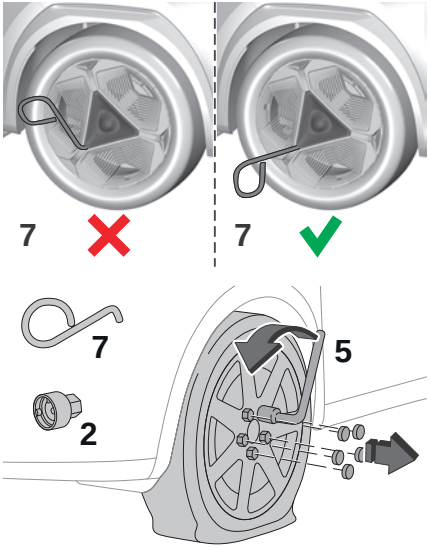
Wheel Removal

WARNING

Parking the vehicle.

Immobilise the vehicle where it does not obstruct traffic: the ground must be level, stable and non-slippery.
Apply the parking brake, unless it is set to automatic mode, and switch off the ignition.
The occupants must get out of the vehicle and wait where they are safe.
If necessary, place a wheel chock against the wheels that are not being replaced.
Never go underneath a vehicle raised using a jack; use an axle stand.

The foot of the jack must be on the ground directly below the front or rear jacking point provided on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.

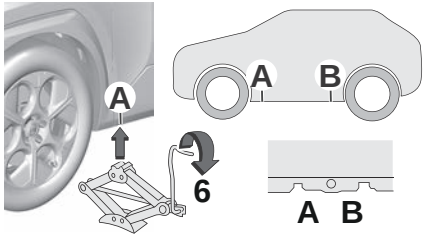


1. If the vehicle has wheel covers, remove them.
2. If the vehicle has alloy wheels, remove the central bolt cover using tool **7**.
3. If the vehicle is so equipped, fit security bolt socket **2** to wheelbrace **5** to slacken the security bolt.
4. Slacken the other bolts using the wheelbrace **5** only.

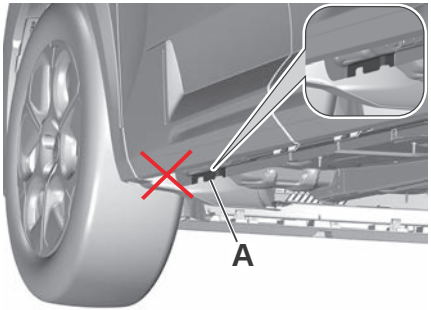
WARNING

Never use an impact wrench on the security bolt socket.

For ICE / MHEV/ PHEV versions



5. Place the foot of jack **6** on the ground and ensure that it is directly below the front **A** or rear **B** jacking point on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.



6. Extend jack **6** until its head comes into contact with jacking point **A** or **B**; contact area **A** or **B** on the vehicle must be properly inserted into the central part of the head of the jack.
7. Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to easily admit the spare (not punctured) wheel.

For BEV versions

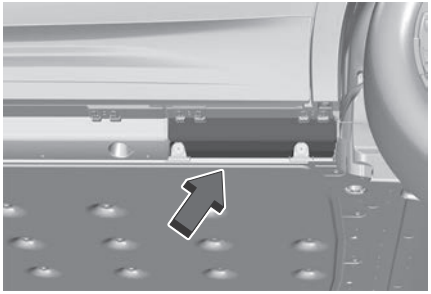
8. For front wheel to be changed, place the foot of jack **6** on the ground and ensure that it is directly below the front **A** jacking point on the underbody.

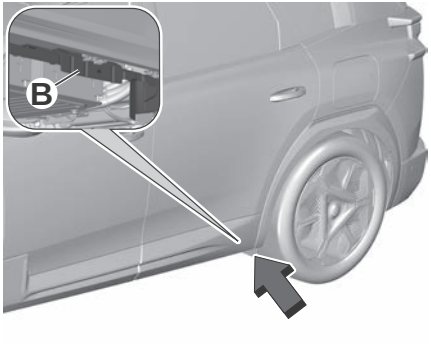
NOTE

For high range electric versions, it is normal to observe that the flexible cover is pushed by the jack when it is deployed in the front **A** jacking point.

9. For rear wheel to be changed, ensure that the cover located on the rear jacking point **B** is removed before placing the jack.

   After removing the cover, place the foot of jack **6** on the ground and ensure that it is directly below the rear **B** jacking point on the traction battery mounting rail.



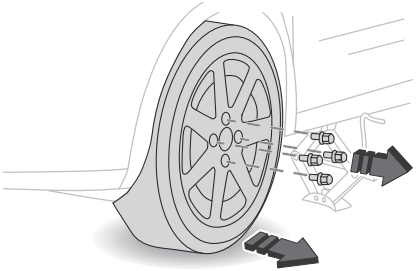


10. Extend jack **6** using the wheelbrace **5**, until its head comes into contact with jacking point **A** or **B**; contact area **A** or **B** on the vehicle must be properly inserted into the central part of the head of the jack.

11. Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to easily admit the spare (not punctured) wheel.

WARNING

Ensure that the jack is stable. If the ground is slippery or loose, the jack may slip or collapse - risk of injury.
Take care to position the jack strictly at one of the jacking points **A** or **B** under the vehicle, ensuring that the head of the jack is centred under the contact area on the vehicle.
Otherwise, there is a risk of damage to the vehicle and/or of the jack collapsing - risk of injury.



12. Remove the bolts and store them in a clean place.

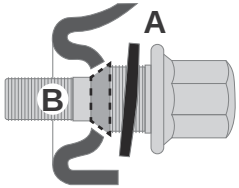
13. Remove the wheel.

Wheel Installation

1. Reverse the steps of removing the wheel to install the replacement.
2. Once the vehicle is lowered from the jack, check pressure of the replacement wheel before setting off.

ICE/Hybrid 48V versions

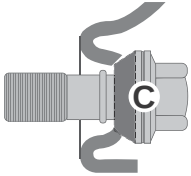
NOTE



If the vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, the washers **A** do not make contact with the steel or "space-saver" type spare wheel. The wheel is held in place by the conical contact surface **B** of each bolt.

PHEV and BEV versions

NOTE



If the vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, the wheel is held in place by the spherical contact surface **C** of each bolt. If the vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, the washers

C do not come into contact with the steel or "space-saver" type spare wheel.

After Wheel Changing

The punctured wheel cannot be stored in place of the spare wheel, place it in the trunk.

WARNING

With a non-standard or 'space-saver' spare wheel

Deactivate certain driving aid functions (Active Safety Brake, Adaptive cruise control, etc.).
Do not exceed the maximum authorized speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) or the maximum distance of 125 miles (200 km).
Driving with more than one spare wheel of this type is prohibited.
The wheel trim from the replaced wheel must not be refitted.

WARNING

Go to a dealer or a qualified workshop.
Have the tightening of the spare wheel's bolts and its tire pressure checked.
Have the punctured tire examined. After inspection, the technician will advise you on whether the tire can be repaired or if it must be replaced.

Tire Repair Kit

Tire Repair Toolkit

NOTE

Visit this link to view explanatory videos:
http://q-r.to/bagGl9

Minor damage to the tire tread can be repaired with the tire repair kit.
Do not remove foreign bodies from the tires.
Tire damage exceeding 4 mm or that is at tire's sidewall cannot be repaired with the tire repair kit.

Made up of a compressor and a sealant cartridge, it allows you to carry out a **temporary repair** of the tire so that you can drive to the nearest garage.

It is designed to repair most punctures located on the tire tread.

NOTE

Damage which is either located on the tire wall or larger than 4 mm cannot be repaired using this type of kit.

To prevent discharging the vehicle battery, it is recommended to use the tire repair kit only when:
In the case of a flat tire:

1. Apply the parking brake and engage first gear, reverse gear or P.
2. Pick up the tire repair kit, located in the load compartment below the trunk floor.

To avoid discharging the vehicle battery, we recommend to use the tire repair kit only when the internal combustion engine is running or when the electric motor is READY.

NOTE

The vehicle electric system allows the connection of the compressor to the 12 V power supply for long enough to repair a tire after a puncture.

NOTE

If the pressures of one or more tires have to be adjusted, it is necessary to reinitialize the under-inflation detection system.

WARNING

With a tire repaired using this type of kit, do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) and do not drive more than 50 miles (80 km).
You must contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to have the repair checked and, if necessary, have the tire changed.

WARNING

Should the pressure of one or more tires be adjusted, it is necessary to reinitialize the under-inflation detection system.

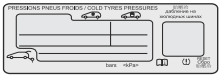
For more information on **Tire under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

NOTE

For more information on the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

NOTE

Tire inflation pressures are indicated on this label.

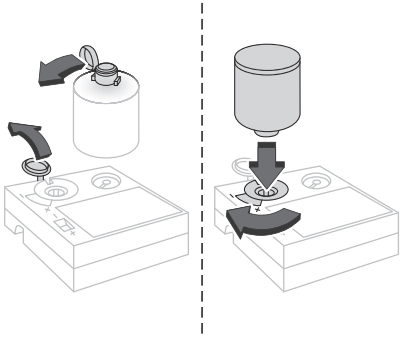


Tire Repair Procedure

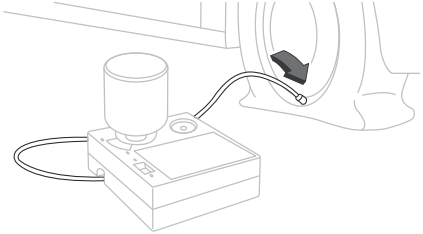
WARNING

Do not remove any foreign body (e.g. nail, screw) which has penetrated the tire.

1. Park the vehicle without obstructing traffic and apply the parking brake.
2. Follow the safety instructions (hazard warning lamps, warning triangle, high visibility jacket, etc.) according to the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.
3. Switch the ignition off.



4. Remove the transparent cap from the bottle of sealant.
5. Lift the protective cover before installing the bottle of sealant on the compressor.
6. Turn the bottle of sealant over and screw it a quarter turn into the compressor.
7. Remove the valve cap from the tire to be repaired, and place it in a clean place.



8. Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.
9. Connect the pipe from the compressor to the valve of the tire to be repaired and tighten firmly.
10. Check that the compressor switch is in position "**O**".
11. Fully uncoil the electric cable stowed under the compressor.

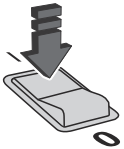
12. Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.

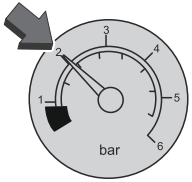
13. Affix the speed limit sticker.

WARNING

The speed limit sticker must be affixed inside the vehicle in the area close to the driver, to remind them that a wheel is in temporary use.

14. Switch the ignition on.
To avoid discharging the vehicle battery, we recommend to use the tire repair kit only when the combustion engine is running or when the electric motor is ready.





15. Switch on the compressor by moving the switch to position "**I**" until the tire pressure reaches 2 bar. The sealant product is injected under pressure into the tire; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of blow-back).

WARNING

If after 7 minutes the pressure of 2 bar is not reached, the tire is damaged; contact a dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

16. Move the switch to position "**0**".

17. Disconnect the compressor's electric plug from the vehicle's 12 V socket.

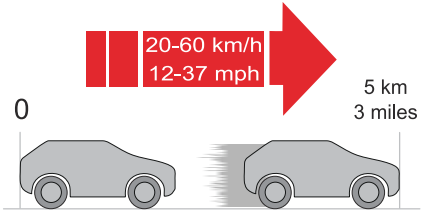
18. Remove the kit.

19. Refit the cap on the valve.

20. Remove and store the bottle of sealant.

WARNING

The sealant product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes.
Keep this product out of the reach of children.
The use-by date of the fluid is marked on the bottle.
After use, do not discard the bottle into the environment; take it to a dealer or an authorised waste disposal site.
Do not forget to obtain a new bottle of sealant, available from a dealer or a qualified workshop.



21. Drive immediately for approximately 3 miles (5 kilometers) at reduced speed (between 12 and 37 mph / 20 and 60 km/h) to plug the puncture.

22. Stop to check the repair **and the tire pressure** using the kit:
    - If the tire pressure is incorrect, contact a dealer to have the tire changed.
    - If the tire pressure is correct, drive a second time for approximately 3 miles (5 kilometers) at reduced speed (between 12 and 37 mph / 20 and 60 km/h), stop then check again the tire pressure using the kit to confirm the effective repair of the tire

WARNING

With a tire repaired using this type of kit, do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) and do not drive more than 125 miles (200 km).
You must contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to have the repair checked and the tire changed.

Checking - Adjusting Tire Pressure

The compressor can be used, **without injecting sealant**, to check and, if necessary, adjust the tire pressures.

- Remove the valve cap from the tire and keep it in a clean place.
- Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.
- Screw the pipe onto the valve and tighten firmly.
- Check that the compressor switch is in position "**0**".
- Fully uncoil the electric cable stowed under the compressor.
- Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Switch the ignition on.
- Start the compressor by placing the switch at position "**I**" and adjust the pressure to the value shown on the vehicle's tire pressure label. To deflate: press the black button located on the compressor pipe, near the valve connection.
- Once the correct pressure is reached, put the switch in position "**0**".
- Remove the kit and stow it.
- Refit the cap on the valve.

WARNING

If after approximately 7 minutes, the pressure of 2 bar is not reached, this indicates that the tire is not repairable contact a dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

WARNING

Should the pressure of one or more tires be adjusted, it is necessary to reinitialise the under-inflation detection system.

For more information on **Tire under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

Jump Starting

If the vehicle's battery is flat, the engine can be started using a backup battery (either external or from another vehicle) and jump leads or using a battery booster.

WARNING

If the battery fails (after warranty coverage), replace it with a battery of the same specification as the one used in the vehicle.
All battery information can be found online at:
https://public.servicebox-parts.com/ACddb/index.html or https://service.citroen.com/ACddb/index.html

BEV versions

NOTE

Flat accessory battery. It is no longer possible to start the motor or recharge the traction battery.

WARNING

Precautions before working on the accessory battery. Select mode **P**, switch

off the ignition, check that the instrument panel is off and that the vehicle is not being charged.

WARNING

Jump-starting another vehicle

Do not use the 12 V battery to jumpstart another vehicle or to charge another vehicle's battery.

MHEV recommendation

On MHEV versions, recharging the 12 V battery allows starting of the engine and charging the 48 V traction battery via the DC-DC converter.

WARNING

Do not try to charge the hybrid system directly.

The hybrid system is connected to the 12 V network through the DC/DC converter. Any operation may affect the overall behaviour of the system.

NOTE

The hybrid system starts the vehicle, but a 12 V supply is required. There are several reasons why the vehicle cannot be started.

WARNING

Driving immediately without having reached a sufficient level of charge may affect some of the vehicle's functions (e.g. e-Auto mode).

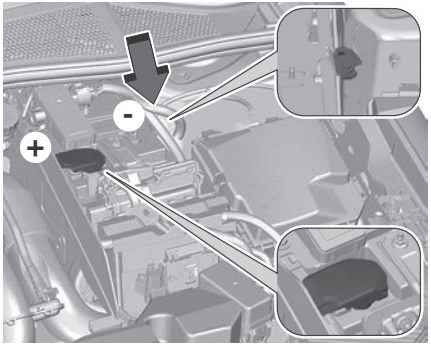
WARNING

Only use a specific 12 V battery charger capable of maintaining 13.5 V with a high level of current 40-50 A (approx. 600 W).
To charge the vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries with a nominal voltage of 12 V.
Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster.

Accessing the 12 V battery

The 12 V battery is located under the hood.

- (+) Positive terminal
- (–) Negative terminal



NOTE

Refer to the "**Engine compartment - Opening the Hood**" section.

Starting Using Another Vehicle Battery

WARNING

Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery.
All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, to avoid any risk of explosion or fire.
Wash your hands afterwards.

WARNING

Always check in advance for leaks, cracks or any evident sign of damage on the flat battery before proceeding.

WARNING

Electronic control units/LED technology headlamps

Never connect the negative jump lead to the metal part of the electronic control units or at the back of the headlamps.
Risk of destroying the electronic control units and/or headlamps! Connect to the remote earth point provided for this purpose.

WARNING

Never start the engine by connecting a battery charger.
Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster.
Check beforehand that the backup battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery.
The two vehicles must not be in contact with each other.
Switch off all electricity-consuming equipment on both vehicles (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.).
Make sure that the jump leads are well away from the engine's moving parts (fan, belt, etc.).
Do not disconnect the (+) terminal while the engine is running.

WARNING

Frozen battery

Never try to charge a frozen battery - risk of explosion!
If the battery has frozen, have it checked by a dealer or by a qualified workshop, who will verify that the internal components have not been damaged and that the case has not cracked, which could lead to a risk of leakage of toxic and corrosive acid.

NOTE

If the 12 V battery is completely discharged, the electric door locks will not function and prevent access to the hood release lever.

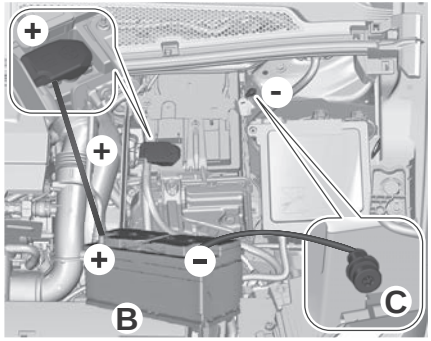
Refer to **Keys- Central locking not functioning** for more information.

NOTE

It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

Before starting the procedure

1. Never expose the vehicle battery to naked flames or sparks.
2. A discharged vehicle battery can already freeze at a temperature of 0 °C. Defrost the frozen battery before connecting jump leads.
3. Use a booster battery with the same voltage (12 V). Its capacity (Ah) must not be much less than that of the discharged vehicle battery.
4. Use jump leads with insulated terminals and a cross section of at least 16 mm^2.
5. Do not disconnect the discharged vehicle battery from the vehicle.
6. Switch off all unnecessary electrical consumers.
7. Do not lean over the vehicle battery during jump starting.
8. Do not allow the terminals of one lead to touch those of the other lead.
9. The vehicles must not come into contact with each other during the jump starting process.
10. Apply the electric parking brake, automatic transmission in **P**.



Starting procedure

1. Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.
2. Connect the red cable to the (+) terminal of flat battery **A** (at the metal elbow), then to the (+) terminal of the backup battery **B** or of the booster.
3. Connect one end of the green or black cable to the (–) terminal of the backup battery **B** or of the booster (or to an earth point on the assisting vehicle).
4. Connect the other end of the green or black cable to the earth point **C**.
5. If using another vehicle or a battery charger, start the device and leave it running for a few minutes.
6. Operate the Engine START/STOP button on the broken down vehicle; then start the motor. In case of a BEV vehicle wait for a **READY** light before attempting to start the motor. If the vehicle does not start immediately, wait a few moments before trying again.

Starting operation

1. Start the engine on the assisting vehicle and leave it running for a few minutes.
2. For **ICE, PHEV** or **MHEV**, operate the starter of the broken-down vehicle and let the engine run.
3. For **BEV**, press the **START/STOP** button on the broken-down vehicle and wait for the **READY** indicator to appear.
4. After five minutes, start the other engine. Start attempts should be made for no longer than 15 seconds at an interval of one minute.
5. Allow both engines to idle for approx. three minutes with the leads connected.
6. Switch on electric consumers e.g. headlights, heated rear window.
7. Reverse above sequence exactly when removing leads.

Disconnecting the leads

1. Disconnect the jump leads in **reverse order**.
2. Refit the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if fitted.
3. Let the engine run for at least 30 minutes (vehicle stationary) to allow the battery to accumulate an adequate amount of charge.

WARNING

Driving immediately without having reached a sufficient level of charge may affect some of the vehicle's functions (e.g. Stop & Start).

WARNING

Depending on the power source:

- Make sure the generator is switched off before connecting the cables.
- Make sure the donor vehicle is switched off and not in contact with the receiving vehicle.
- Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.

12 V Battery Charger

For optimum service life of the battery, it is essential to maintain an adequate state of charge.
In some circumstances, it may be necessary to charge the battery:

- when using the vehicle mainly for short journeys
- if the vehicle is to be taken off the road for several weeks

Consult a dealer or a qualified workshop.

⚠ WARNING

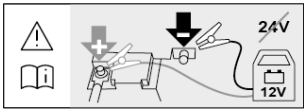
To charge the vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries with a nominal voltage of 12 V.

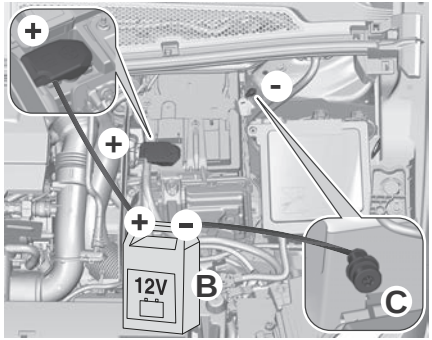
⚠ WARNING

Follow the instructions provided by the Manufacturer of the charger.
Never reverse polarities.

⚠ CAUTION

If this label is present, use only a 12 V charger to avoid causing irreversible damage to the electrical components.





1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, lighting, wipers, etc.).
3. Switch off the 12 V battery booster **B** before connecting the cables to the battery, so as to avoid any dangerous sparks.
4. Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.
5. Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.
6. Connect the cables of 12 V battery booster **B** as follows:
   - the positive (+) red cable to the (+) terminal of battery **A**.
   - the negative (–) black cable to the chassis (non coated metal) or the (–) terminal of the battery **C**.
7. Turn on the battery booster **B** (some models automatically turns on when connected).
8. Wait a few seconds for the booster to stabilise.
9. Attempt to start the vehicle. Do not crank the engine for more than 5 seconds. If does not start, wait 30 seconds to try again.
10. Once the engine starts, let it run to allow the battery to recharge.
11. At the end of the charging operation, switch off charger (**B**) before disconnecting the cables from battery (**A**).
12. Disconnect the jump leads **in reverse** order.
13. Refit the plastic cover to the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.
14. Allow the engine to run for at least 30 minutes, with the vehicle stationary, so that the battery reaches an adequate state of charge.

ⓘ NOTE

It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

Charging Another Vehicle

Procedure for starting another vehicle is identical to the procedure of "**Starting Using Another Vehicle Battery**", under the point of view of the assisting vehicle.

WARNING

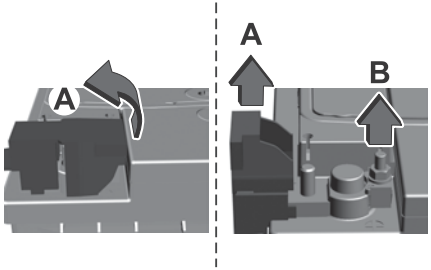
Ensure the supplying battery is fully charged and in optimal operating conditions.

WARNING

Ensure the flat vehicle can be jump started (i.e. it is not a BEV vehicle).

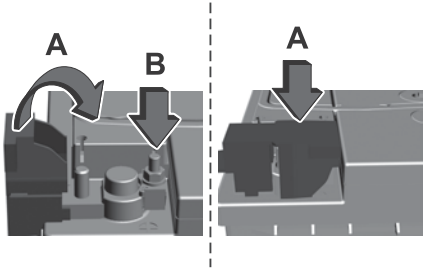
Quick-Release Battery Clamp

Disconnecting the (+) terminal



1. Lift the plastic cover **A** on the **(+)** terminal.
2. Use a 10 mm wrench or socket to unscrew the nut **B** and detach the plastic cover.
3. Remove the plastic cover **A** by lifting it off.

Reconnecting the (+) terminal



1. Refit the plastic cover **A** on the **(+)** terminal.
2. Use a 10 mm wrench or socket to screw the nut **B** back.
3. Close the plastic cover **A** to cover the terminals.

NOTE

Do not force the lever when pressing on it, as if the clamp is not positioned correctly, locking will then not be possible. Start the procedure again.

Disconnecting - Connecting Battery

To maintain sufficient charge for vehicle starting, it is recommended to disconnect the 12 V battery if the vehicle will remain unused for an extended period..
Before disconnecting the 12 V battery:

1. close all openings (doors, trunk, windows, roof).
2. switch off all electrical devices (infotainment system, wipers, lights, etc.).
3. switch off the ignition and wait for 4 minutes.

When accessing the battery, it is only necessary to disconnect the **(+)** terminal.

NOTE

The Stop & Start system may not be operational during the trip following the first engine start.
In this case, the system will only be available again after a continuous period with the vehicle immobilised, the duration of which depends on the exterior temperature and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

After Being Recharged - Restarted

After reconnecting the battery, turn on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting the engine, to enable the electronic systems to initialise.
If minor issues persist after this procedure, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.
Referring to the relevant section, reinitialize certain equipment:

- Electronic key.
- Sunroof.
- Electric windows.
- Date and time.
- Preset radio stations.
- Tire under-inflation detection

NOTE

After reconnecting the battery, the message "**Collision risk detection system fault**" is displayed on the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on. This operation is perfectly normal. The message will disappear while driving.

Towing

NOTE

General recommendations

Observe the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.
Check that the towing vehicle is heavier than the towed vehicle.
The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence.
When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towbar; ropes and straps are prohibited.
The towing vehicle must move off gently.
When the vehicle is towed with its engine off, there is no longer braking and steering assistance.

WARNING

A professional recovery service must be called in the following cases:

- broken down on a motorway or main road
- not possible to put the transmission into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake
- not possible to tow a vehicle with an automatic transmission, with the engine running
- towing with only two wheels on the ground
- four-wheel drive vehicle
- no approved towbar available

WARNING

Before towing the vehicle, it is essential to put the vehicle in free-wheeling mode.

For more information on **Free-wheeling** , refer to the corresponding section.

WARNING

Special feature of towing for hybrid vehicles

With both rear wheels on the ground: it is only authorized for short distances (about 9 miles (15 km)) and at reduced speed (maximum 15 mph (25 km/h)).

With all four wheels on the ground: the vehicle can be towed a maximum of 0.06 mile (100 metres) at a maximum speed of 6 mph (10 km/h) (automatic gearbox in mode **N** and **N** displayed in the instrument panel).

WARNING

PHEV vehicles

Before any intervention, with the ignition on, depress the brake pedal and select mode **N**, then switch off the hybrid system (**READY** indicator light off).
Always call on professionals for recovery of the vehicle on a flatbed lorry or trailer.

Use the towing eye **only** to free the vehicle if it is stuck, or to secure it for recovery on a flatbed lorry or trailer.

NOTE

BEV vehicles

A BEV vehicle cannot under any circumstances be used to tow another vehicle. However, it may be used, for example, to exit a rut.

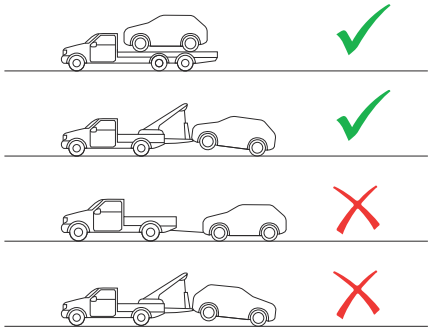
NOTE

In case of battery or electric parking brake failure, it is essential to call a professional using flatbed recovery vehicles.

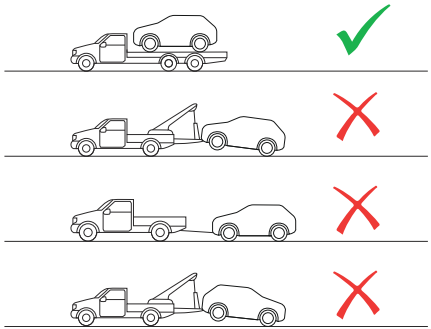
Towing Constraints

When towing the vehicle, lift any driven wheels off the ground.

ICE/MHEV/PHEV/BEV (2WD)



BEV 4WD (4-wheel drive)



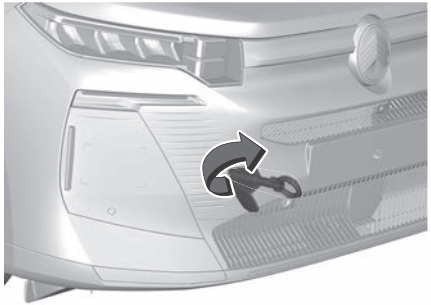
Towing the vehicle

To access the front screw thread:

1. Unclip the cover by pressing at its top left-hand corner.
2. Release the cover downwards.

CAUTION

When towing the vehicle with engine off, always lift the driven wheels off the road.



To be towed:

1. Screw the towing eye in fully.
2. Install the towbar.
3. Put the transmission into neutral.

WARNING

Failure to observe this instruction could result in damage to certain components (e.g. braking, transmission) and to the absence of braking assistance the next time the engine is started.

WARNING

Never tow the vehicle with the driving wheels on the ground and the engine off.

4. Unlock the steering and release the parking brake.
5. Switch on the hazard warning lights on both vehicles in accordance with the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.

⚠ CAUTION

Deactivate the driver assistance systems like active emergency braking, otherwise the vehicle may automatically brake during towing.

6. Move off gently, drive slowly and only for a short distance.
7. After towing, unscrew the towing eye.
8. Insert cover cap again.

⚠ CAUTION

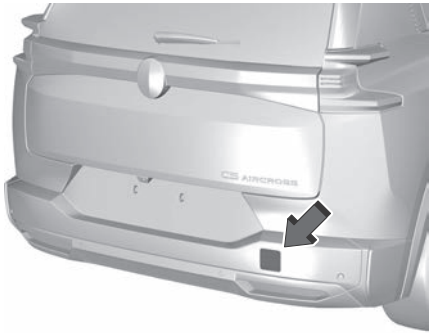
Drive slowly. Do not drive jerkily.
Excessive tractive force can damage the vehicle.

When the engine is not running, considerably more force is needed to brake and steer.
To prevent the entry of exhaust gases from the towing vehicle, switch on the air recirculation and close the windows.
The towing eye is stowed with the vehicle tools ⇨ 221.

Towing another vehicle

To access the rear screw thread:

1. Unclip the cover by pressing at its right-hand section.
2. Release the cover downwards.



To tow:

1. Screw the towing eye in fully.
2. Install the towbar.
3. Switch on the hazard warning lights on both vehicles.
4. Move off gently, drive slowly and only for a short distance.

The towing eye is stowed with the vehicle tools ⇨ 221.

MAINTENANCE AND VEHICLE CARE

Introduction To Maintenance And Vehicle Care

WARNING

For all work on your vehicle, use a qualified workshop that has the technical information, skills and equipment required, all of which a dealer is able to provide.

General information

We recommend the use of genuine parts and accessories and factory approved parts specific for your vehicle type. We cannot assess or guarantee reliability of other products - even if they have a regulatory or otherwise granted approval.
Any modification, conversion or other changes made to standard vehicle specifications (including, without limitation, software modifications, modifications of the electronic control units) may invalidate the warranty offered by Manufacturer. Furthermore, such changes may affect driver assistance systems, may impact fuel or electric power consumption, CO2 emissions and other emissions of the vehicle and cause the vehicle to no longer conform to the operating permit, impacting the validity of your vehicle registration.

CAUTION

Access to the diagnostic socket associated with the on-board electronics is reserved for qualified technicians and approved tools.

CAUTION

When transporting the vehicle on a train or on a recovery vehicle, the mud flaps might be damaged.

Very Cold Climate Covers

(Depending on engine and on country of sale)
This removable device prevents the accumulation of snow around the radiator cooling fan.
It consists of two elements for the upper part of the front grille and two other elements for the lower part.

NOTE

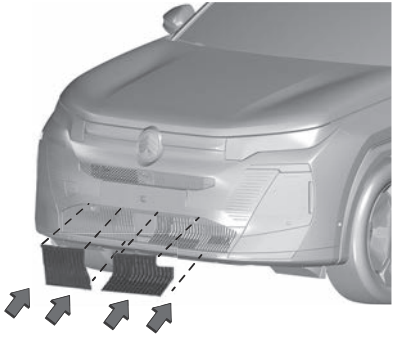
In case of difficulty with installation/ removal

Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

WARNING

Before any operation, ensure that the engine is off and the cooling fan has stopped.

Fitting



1. Place one of the screens against the corresponding side of the lower bumper grille.
2. Insert the lower mounting tabs into the bumper so you can see the back of it.
3. Position and insert the two upper mounting tabs.
4. Check that the unit is held firmly in place by pressing around the edges.

Repeat the same operations for the other lower screen.

NOTE

It is necessary to leave one vertical bar on either side of the radar cover (central cover on the bumper): two spaces away from the radar cover on either side.

Removing

1. Insert a screwdriver into the slots located on the top of the screens to detach them from the grille.
2. Gently tilt the screens downwards.
3. Pull the unit towards you and support it as it becomes unclipped.

WARNING

It is essential to remove them when:

- the outside temperature exceeds 10°C.
- recovery is in progress.
- the speed is above 120 km/h (75 mph).

End-Of-Life Vehicle Disposal

Information on end-of-life vehicle recovery centres and the recycling of end-of-life vehicles is available on our website, where legally required. Only entrust this work to an authorised recycling centre.

Service Information

In order to ensure economical and safe vehicle operation and to maintain the value of your vehicle, it is of vital importance that all maintenance work is carried out at the proper intervals.
The detailed, up-to-date service schedule for your vehicle is available at the workshop.
Severe operating conditions exist if one or more of the following circumstances occur frequently: Cold starting, stop and go operation, e.g. for taxis and police vehicles, trailer operation, mountain driving, driving on poor and sandy road surfaces, increased air pollution, presence of airborne sand and high dust content, driving at high altitude and large variations of temperature.
Under these severe operating conditions, certain service work may be required more frequently than the regular service interval indicated in the service display. Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop for customised service schedules.

Scheduled Servicing

Periodic Checks

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the Manufacturer's service schedule and according to your engine.
Otherwise, have them checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

WARNING

Only use products recommended by the Manufacturer or products of equivalent quality and specification. In order to optimise the operation of components as important as those in the braking system, the Manufacturer selects and offers very specific products.

Checking Fluid Levels

Check all of the following levels regularly in accordance with the Manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if required, unless otherwise indicated.
If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

WARNING

The fluids must comply with the Manufacturer's requirements and with the vehicle's engine.

WARNING

Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

Used products

WARNING

Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.
Most of these fluids are harmful to health and very corrosive.

Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.
Empty used oil into the containers reserved for this purpose at a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Engine Oil

The level is checked, with the engine having been switched off for at least 30 minutes and on level ground, either using the oil level indicator in the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on (for vehicles equipped with an electric gauge), or using the dipstick.

It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). It is recommended that you check the level, and top up if necessary, every 5,000 km (3,000 miles).
The maximum engine oil consumption is 0.6 l per 1000 km.

WARNING

In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emissions control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

Checking Oil Level ⇨ 244
Fluids And Lubricants ⇨ 269

Brake fluid

The level of this fluid should be close to the "**MAX**" mark. If not, check the brake pads for wear.

To know how often the brake fluid should be replaced, refer to the manufacturer's servicing schedule.

WARNING

Clean the cap before removing it to refill.
Use only DOT4 brake fluid from a sealed container.

Engine coolant

MHEV/PHEV versions

It is normal to top up this fluid between two services.

The check and top-up must only be done with the engine cold.

A level of coolant that is too low risks causing major damage to the engine; the coolant level must be close to the "**MAX**" mark without ever going above it.

If the level is close to or below the "**MIN**" mark, it is essential to top it up.

When the engine is hot, the temperature of the coolant is regulated by the fan. As the cooling system is pressurized, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.
In order to avoid the risk of scalding if you need to top up in an emergency, wrap a cloth around the cap and unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop.
Once the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up to the required level.

BEV version

WARNING

Do not top up the coolant.

If the level is close to or below the "**MIN**" mark, it is essential to contact a dealer or qualified workshop.

Windshield washer fluid

Top up to the required level when necessary.

Fluid specification

The fluid must be topped up with a pre-mixed product.
In winter (temperatures below zero), a fluid containing an anti-freeze agent which is appropriate for the temperature conditions must be used in order to protect the system's components (pump, tank, ducts, jets).
Use only washer fluid approved for the vehicle to prevent damage of wiper blades, paintwork, plastic and rubber parts. Consult a workshop.

WARNING

Filling with pure water is prohibited in all circumstances (risk of freezing, limescale, etc.). The use of vinegar or any other non-dedicated product will cause irreversible damage to the windshield washer system.

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts

Only use products that meet the recommended specifications.

WARNING

Operating materials are hazardous and could be poisonous. Handle with care. Pay attention to information given on the containers.

Engine Oil

Engine oil is identified by its quality and its viscosity. Quality is more important than viscosity when selecting which engine oil to use. The oil quality ensures e.g. engine cleanliness, wear protection and oil aging control, whereas viscosity grade gives information on the oil's thickness over a temperature range.
Use the appropriate engine oil given on the service schedule sheet handed over by the selling dealer.

Topping up engine oil

NOTE

In case of any spilled engine oil, wipe it up and dispose of it properly.

Engine oils of different Manufacturers and brands can be mixed as long as the comply with the required engine oil quality and viscosity.
Use of engine oils for all petrol engines with only ACEA quality is prohibited, since it can cause engine damage under certain operating conditions.

Additional engine oil additives

The use of additional engine oil additives could cause damage and invalidate the warranty.

NOTE

In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emissions control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

Engine oil viscosity grades

The SAE viscosity grades gives information of the thickness of the oil. Multigrade oil is indicated by two figures, e.g. SAE 5W-30. The first figure, followed by a W, indicates the low temperature viscosity and the second figure the high temperature viscosity.
Cheking Oil Level ⇨ 244

Fluids And Lubricants ⇨ 269

Brake and Clutch Fluids

Over time, brake fluid absorbs moisture, which will reduce braking effectiveness.
The brake fluid should therefore be replaced at the specific interval.
Use only brake fluid approved for the vehicle. Consult a workshop.

Antifreeze Coolant

Use only antifreeze coolant approved for the vehicle. Consult a workshop.
The system is factory-filled with coolant designed for excellent corrosion protection and frost protection down to approx. –28 °C.
In cold regions with very low temperatures, the factory fluid coolant provides frost protection down to –37 °C. This concentration should be mantained all year round.
The use of additional coolant additives that intended to give additional corrosion protection or seal against minor leaks can cause function problems. Liability for consequences resulting from the use additional additives will be rejected.

Engine Compartment

⚠ WARNING

Work in the engine compartment

Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the cooling fan or in certain moving components - risk of strangulation and serious injury!

⚠ WARNING

The ignition system uses extremely high voltage. Do not touch.

⚠ WARNING

Electric versions: Never try to perform maintenance work on high voltage components yourself. You may be injured and the vehicle may be damaged. Service and repair of these high voltage components should only be performed by a trained service technician with proper knowledge and tools. Exposure to high voltage may cause shock, burns, and even death. The high voltage components in the vehicle can only be serviced by technicians with special training. High voltage components are identified by labels. Do not remove, open, take apart, or modify these components. High voltage cable or wiring has orange covering. Do not probe, tamper with, cut, or modify high voltage cable or wiring.

⚠ WARNING

Only perform engine compartment checks when the ignition is off.
The cooling fan may start operating even if the ignition is off.

⚠ CAUTION

Even small amounts of contamination to the liquids can cause damage to vehicle systems.
Do not allow contaminants to contact the fluids, reservoir caps, or dipsticks.

⚠ WARNING

Stop & Start / e-Auto mode

Before doing anything under the hood, you must switch off the ignition to avoid any risk of the engine restarting automatically.
Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the cooling fan or in certain moving components - risk of strangulation and serious injury!

⚠ WARNING

Electric motor

Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the cooling fan or in certain moving components - risk of strangulation and serious injury!

Before carrying out any work under the hood, you must switch off the ignition, check that the **READY** indicator light is off on the instrument panel and disconnect the nozzle from the charging connector if it is connected.

NOTE

The location of the interior bonnet release lever prevents the bonnet being opened when the left-hand front door is closed.

WARNING

When the engine is hot, handle the exterior safety catch and the bonnet stay with care (risk of burns), using the protected area.
When the bonnet is open, take care not to damage the safety catch.
Do not open the bonnet under very windy conditions.

WARNING

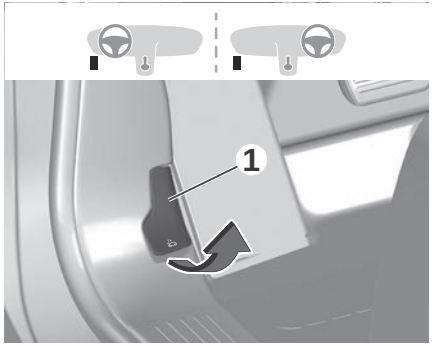
Cooling of the engine when stopped

The engine cooling fan may start after the engine has been switched off.

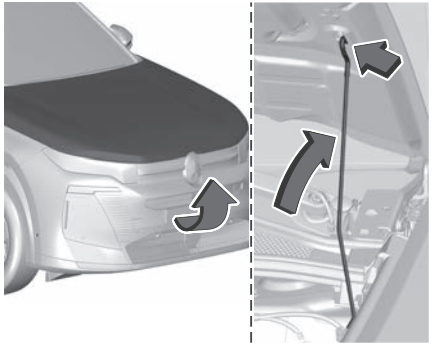
Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the fan!

Access to engine compartment

Opening



1. Open the driver's door (for left-hand drive versions) or the passenger door (for right-hand drive versions).
2. Pull once the interior release lever (1), located at the bottom of the door frame, towards you to unlock the hood.
3. Pull twice the interior release lever (1) towards you to unlock the safety catch.



4. Raise the hood completely.
5. Unclip the stay from its housing and place it in the support slot to hold the hood open.

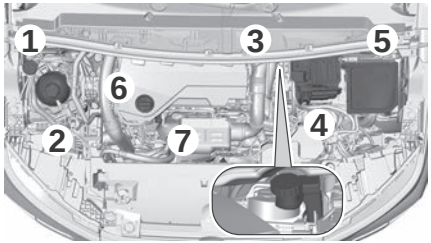
Closing

1. Lower the hood and release it near the end of its travel.
2. Check for positive locking of the hood.

⚠ CAUTION

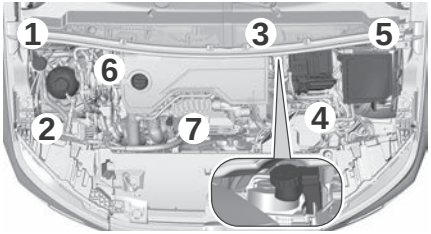
Do not press the bonnet into the latch to avoid dents.

ICE / PHEV engine



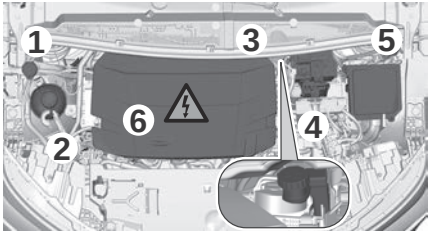
1 Screenwash fluid reservoir
2 Engine coolant reservoir
3 Brake fluid reservoir
4 Battery/Fuses
5 Fusebox
6 Engine oil filler cap
7 Engine oil dipstick

MHEV engine



1 Screenwash fluid reservoir
2 Engine coolant reservoir
3 Brake fluid reservoir
4 Battery/Fuses
5 Fusebox
6 Engine oil filler cap
7 Engine oil dipstick

BEV engine



1 Screenwash fluid reservoir
2 Engine coolant reservoir (level only)
3 Brake fluid reservoir
4 Battery/Fuses
5 Fusebox
6 400 V electrical circuit

For more information on the **Charging system**, refer to the corresponding section.

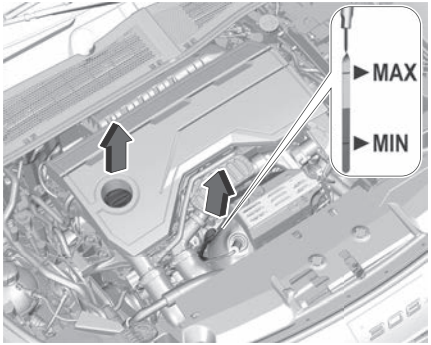
Checking Oil Level

Check the engine oil level manually on a regular basis to prevent damage to the engine. Ensure that the correct specification of engine oil is used.
The engine must be at operating temperature and switched off for at least five minutes.

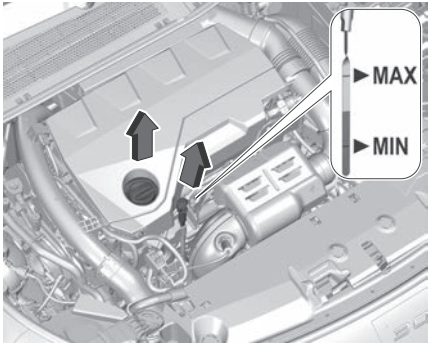
⚠ CAUTION

It is the owner's responsibility to maintain the proper level of an appropriate quality oil in the engine.

MHEV version

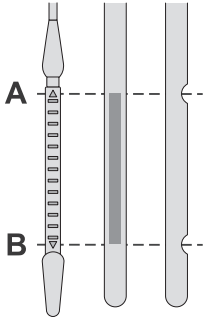


ICE / PHEV version



Different dipsticks are used depending on engine variant.
For the location of the dipstick, please refer to the illustration of the corresponding engine compartment.

1. Grasp the dipstick by its colored grip and pull it out completely.
2. Wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean, lint-free cloth.
3. Reinsert the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to visually check the oil level: the correct level is between marks **A (max)** and **B (min)**.



Do not start the engine if the level is:

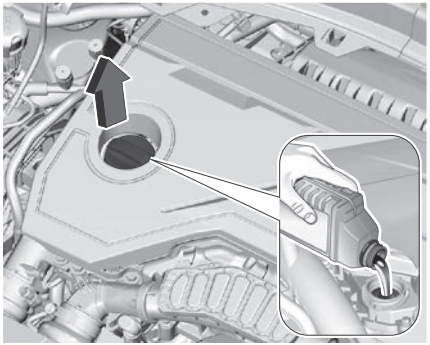
- above mark **A**: contact a dealer or qualified workshop.
- below mark **B**: top up the engine oil immediately.

⚠ WARNING

The dipstick must be pushed completely in to prevent oil from spilling onto the engine. Risk of fire inside the engine compartment.

When the engine oil level has dropped to the **MIN** mark, top up the engine oil.

We recommend the use of the same grade of engine oil that was used at last change.



The engine oil level must not exceed the **MAX** mark on the dipstick.

⚠ CAUTION

Overfilled engine oil must be drained or suctioned out. If the oil exceeds the maximum level, do not start the vehicle and contact a workshop.

Fit the cap on straight and tighten it.

WARNING

Oil grade

Before topping up or changing the engine oil, check that the oil is suitable for your engine and complies with the recommendations in the service schedule supplied with the vehicle (or available from your dealer or a qualified workshop).
Use of non-recommended oil may invalidate your warranty in the event of engine failure.

Topping up the engine oil level

For the location of the engine oil filler cap, please refer to the corresponding engine compartment illustration.

WARNING

Never remove the oil filler cap with the engine running. Risk of burns and splashes inside the engine compartment.

1. Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).
2. Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.
3. Top up the level if necessary.
4. After checking the level, carefully screw the oil filler cap back on and push the dipstick back into its tube up to the stop.

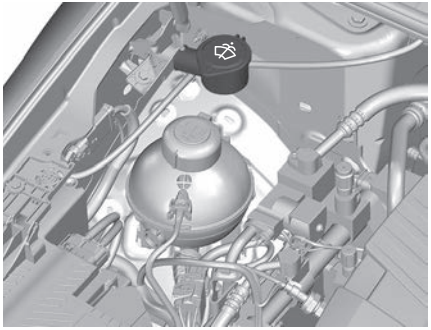
NOTE

The oil level indication displayed on the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on is not valid for 30 minutes following an addition of oil.

Fluids And Lubricants ⇨ 269

Adding Washer Fluid

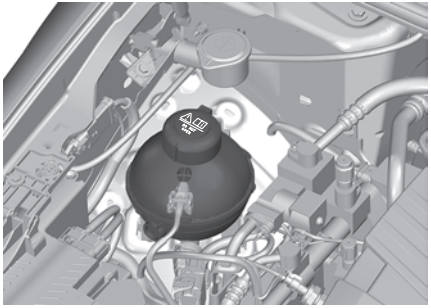
Fill with clean water mixed with a suitable quantity of approved windshield washer fluid which contains antifreeze.



CAUTION

Only washer fluid with a sufficient antifreeze concentration provides protection at low temperatures or a sudden drop in temperature.

Adding Coolant Fluid



BEV version

If the coolant level is at the **MIN** mark or below, seek the assistance of a workshop to have the engine coolant topped up.

CAUTION

Using the wrong engine coolant can cause severe damages to the high voltage battery. Only experienced mechanics are allowed to open the coolant reservoir and to top up coolant.

ICE / MHEV versions

The factory filled coolant provides freeze protection down to approx. -37 °C.

CAUTION

A too low coolant level can cause engine damage.

CAUTION

Only use approved antifreeze.

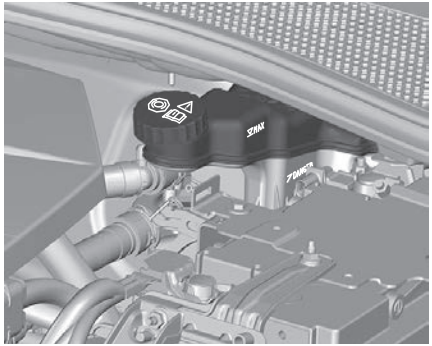
If the cooling system is cold, the coolant level should be above the **MIN** mark. Top up if the level is low.

WARNING

Allow the engine to cool before opening the cap. Carefully open the cap, relieving the pressure slowly.

To top up, use an equivalent mixture of released coolant concentrate mixed with clean tap water. If no coolant concentrate is available, use clean tap water. Install the cap tightly. Have the coolant concentration checked and have the cause of the coolant loss remedied by a workshop.

Checking Brake Fluid



The brake fluid level must be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks.

If fluid level is below **MIN** seek the assistance of a workshop.

WARNING

Brake fluid is poisonous and corrosive. Avoid contact with eyes, skin, fabrics and painted surfaces. In the event of accidental contact, immediately wash the affected parts with water and mild soap. Then rinse thoroughly. Call a doctor immediately if swallowed.

12 V Battery

The vehicle battery is maintenancefree provided that the driving profile allows sufficient charging of the battery.

Short-distance-driving and frequent engine starts can discharge the battery. Avoid the use of unnecessary electrical consumers.

Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.
Laying up the vehicle for more than four weeks can lead to battery discharge. Disconnect the clamp from the negative terminal of the vehicle battery.
Ensure the ignition is switched off before connecting or disconnecting the vehicle battery.

Replacing the vehicle battery

If necessary, replace the 12 V battery with another original battery with the same specifications. Follow the battery manufacturer's instructions for maintenance.

NOTE

Any deviation from the instructions given in this section may lead to temporary deactivation or disturbance of the Stop-Start system.

When the vehicle battery is being replaced, ensure that there are no open ventilation holes in the vicinity of the positive terminal.

If a ventilation hole is open in this area, it must be closed off with a dummy cap, and the ventilation in the vicinity of the negative terminal must be opened.
Ensure that the vehicle battery is always replaced by the same type of battery.
The vehicle battery has to be replaced by a workshop.

Check connections

Check regularly that the terminals are correctly tightened (versions without quick-release terminals) and that the connections are clean.

Charging the vehicle battery

WARNING

On vehicles with Stop & Start system, ensure that the charging potential does not exceed 14.6 V when using a battery charger.
Otherwise the vehicle battery may be damaged.

These batteries contain harmful substances (sulphuric acid and lead).
They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must never under any circumstances be discarded with household waste.
Dispose of used batteries at a designated collection point.

Symbols

The following safety symbols are visible over the 12 V battery:

No sparks or naked flames, no smoking.

Always protect your eyes. Explosive gases can cause blindness and injury.

Keep the vehicle's battery out of the reach of children.

The vehicle's battery contains sulfuric acid which can make you go blind or cause severe burns.

For more information, refer to the handbook.

Explosive gases can be present close to the battery.

Engine Washing

WARNING

Because of the presence of electrical equipment under the bonnet, it is strongly recommended that exposure to water (rain, washing, etc.) be limited.

Vehicle Maintenance

Wiper Blade Replacement

CAUTION

NEVER attempt to move the wipers manually. This can cause permanent damage to the mechanism.

WARNING

Take care not to hold the arms at the jet locations.
Do not touch the wiper blades - risk of irreparable deformation.
Do not release them while moving them.
Risk of damaging the windshield.

- Clean the windshield using washer fluid.

NOTE

Do not apply "Rain X" type water-repellent products.

Maintenance position

This maintenance position is used while cleaning or replacing the wiper blades. It can also be useful, in wintry weather (ice, snow), to release the wiper blades from the windshield.

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Within 60 seconds, pull the right control stalk towards you.

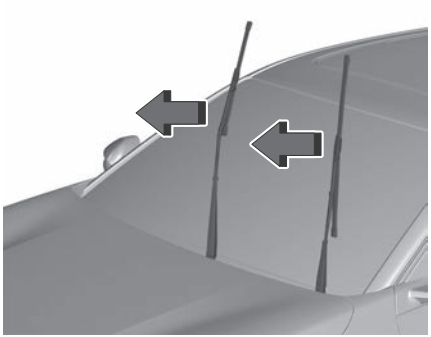
The wipers will move to a vertical position for easy access.

Removing/Refitting at the front

NOTE

To maintain the effectiveness of the flat wiper blades, it is advisable to:

- handle them with care
- clean them regularly using soapy water
- avoid using them to hold cardboard on the windshield
- replace them at the first signs of wear



CAUTION

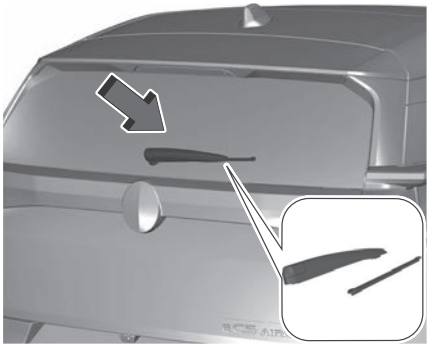
Do not allow the wiper arms to slam on the windshield. This can damage the blades and the windshield.

1. Disconnect the hydraulic quick connector of the arm from the filler neck of the worn wiper blade.
2. Rotate the worn wiper blade to the stop in relation to the arm axle.
3. Unclip the worn wiper blade closest to you and remove it.
4. Install the new wiper blade and clip it to the arm; a clicking sound indicates correct assembly.
5. Connect the hydraulic quick connector of the arm to the filler neck of the new wiper blade; a clicking sound indicates correct assembly.
6. Repeat the procedure for the other wiper blade.
7. Starting with the wiper blade closest to you, once again hold each arm by the rigid section, then guide it carefully onto the windshield.

To return the wipers to the normal position:

1. Gently place the wiper arms on the windshield.
2. Switch on the ignition.
3. Use the wiper control stalk.

Removing/Refitting at the rear



1. Hold the arm by the rigid section and raise it as far as possible.
2. Clean the rear screen using screenwash fluid.
3. Unclip the worn wiper blade and remove it.
4. Install the new wiper blade and clip it to the arm.
5. Once again hold the arm by the rigid section, then guide it carefully onto the rear screen.

WARNING

Take care not to use an incorrect position during fitting - risk of damage!

Engine Oil filter

Change the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.

Engine Air filter

Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving), **change it twice as often, if necessary**.

Passenger compartment filter

Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving), **change it twice as often, if necessary**.

NOTE

A clogged passenger compartment filter can adversely affect air conditioning system performance and generate undesirable odours.

Automatic gearbox

The transmission does not require any maintenance (no oil change)

Brake pads

Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.

Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

NOTE

After washing the vehicle, moisture, or in wintry conditions, ice can form on the brake discs and pads: braking efficiency may be reduced. Gently dab the brakes to dry and defrost them.

Brake disc wear

For information on checking brake disc wear, contact a dealer or qualified workshop.

Electric parking brake

This system does not require any routine servicing. However, in the event of a problem, do not hesitate to have the system checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

NOTE

For more information on the **Electric parking brake**, refer to the corresponding section.

Shock absorbers

It is not easy for drivers to detect when shock absorbers are worn. Nevertheless, the shock absorbers have a major impact on road holding and braking performance.

For safety and driving comfort, it is important to have them regularly checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Timing and accessory kits

The timing and accessory kits are used from the time the engine is started until it is switched off. It is normal for them to wear over time.

A faulty timing or accessory kit can damage the engine, rendering it unusable. Observe the recommended replacement frequency, stated in distance traveled or time elapsed, whichever is reached first.

Exhaust system

(ICE / MHEV / PHEV versions)
Adequate maintenance of the engine exhaust system represents the best protection against leaks of carbon monoxide into the passenger compartment.

WARNING

Exhaust emissions are very dangerous, and may be lethal. They contain carbon monoxide, a colourless, odourless gas which can cause fainting and poisoning if inhaled.

WARNING

The exhaust system may reach high temperatures and may cause a fire if the vehicle is parked on flammable material. Dry grass or leaves can also catch fire if they come into contact with the exhaust system. Do not park or use the vehicle in a place in which the exhaust system might come into contact with flammable material.

NOTE

Vehicles equipped with catalytic converter must be fuelled only with unleaded petrol. Leaded petrol would permanently damage the catalytic converter and eliminate its ability to reduce polluting emissions, seriously compromising the engine performance, which would be irreparably damaged. If the engine does not work correctly, especially if it starts irregularly or if there is a reduction of its performance, immediately go to a dealer or a qualified workshop. Prolonged and faulty operation of the engine may cause overheating of the converter and, as a consequence, possible damage to the converter and the vehicle.

Fuses

Fuses Box

WARNING

Changing a fuse

All work must be carried out only by a dealer or a qualified workshop.
The replacement of a fuse by a third party could cause a serious malfunction of the vehicle.

NOTE

Installing electrical accessories

The vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment.
Before fitting other electrical equipment or accessories to your vehicle, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

CAUTION

The Manufacturer accepts no responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing the vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied or not approved by it and not installed in accordance with its specifications, in particular when the combined power consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 mA current draw.

Bulb Replacement

Front lights

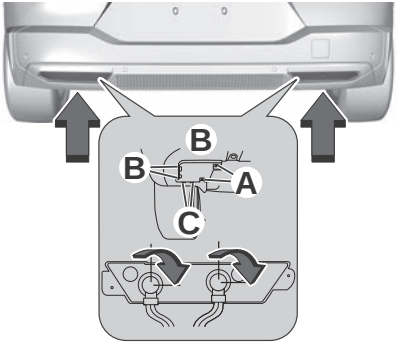
Front lights are designed with LEDs and cannot be changed.

WARNING

Light-emitting diodes (LEDs)

Do not touch the LED lamps - risk of electrocution!
If you need to replace this type of bulb, you must contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Reversing and rear fog lights



These lights can be changed from the inside of the rear bumper.

1. Using a Torx screwdriver, remove the 2 fastening screws **A** from the access panel located below the bumper.
2. Push the two lateral hooks **B** inwards using a flathead screwdriver to unclip the access panel.
3. Tilt the access panel by removing the two attachment hooks **C** and the bumper's lateral centering pin.
4. Twist the light holder a quarter-turn and remove it.
5. Twist the light a quarter-turn to remove and replace it.

NOTE

To facilitate access to the fog light support, begin by removing the reversing light support. To reinstall the access panel, insert the two attachment hooks **C** and the lateral centering pin in the bumper, and clip the two lateral hooks **B**.

NOTE

Reinstallation of the lights

Perform the disassembly operations in reverse order.

Tires and Wheels

Tire Safety Information

Tire safety information will cover aspects of the following information:

- Tire Markings
- Tire Identification Numbers
- Tire Terminology and Definitions
- Tire Pressures, and Tire Loading

Tire Markings - Designations

E.g. **225/60 R18 96H**

225	tire width (mm)
60	cross-section ratio (tire height to tire width) (%)
R	belt type: Radial
18	wheel diameter (inches)
96	load index e.g. 96 is equivalent to 710 kg
H	speed code letter

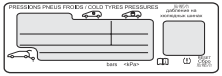
Speed code letter:

Q	up to 100 mph (160 km/h)
S	up to 112 mph (180 km/h)
T	up to 118 mph (190 km/h)
H	up to 130 mph (210 km/h)
V	up to 150 mph (240 km/h)
W	up to 168 mph (270 km/h)

Choose a tire appropriate for the maximum speed of the vehicle.
The maximum speed is achievable at curb weight with driver (75 kg) plus 125 kg payload. Optional equipment could reduce the maximum speed of the vehicle.

Tire And Loading Information Placard

The tire pressure information label on the inside of the driver's door indicates the original equipment tires and the corresponding tire pressures.



The tire pressure data refers to cold tires. It applies to summer and winter tires.
If you have driven for more than 10 minutes or more than 10 kilometres at over 50 km/h, add 0.3 bar to the values indicated on the label.
Always inflate the spare tIre to the pressure specified for full load.

⚠ WARNING

The driver is responsible for correct adjustment of tire pressure. If the pressure is too low, this can result in considerable tire warmup and internal damage, leading to tread separation and even to tire blow-out at high speeds.

⚠ WARNING

For specific tires the recommended tire pressure as shown in the tIre pressure table may exceed the maximum tire pressure as indicated on the tire. Never exceed the maximum tire pressure as indicated on the tire.

Winter Tires

Winter tires improve driving safety at temperatures below 7 °C and should therefore be fitted on all wheels.

In accordance with country-specific regulations, affix the speed sticker in the driver's field of view.
All tire sizes are permitted as winter tires.

Winter or 4-seasons tires can be identified by this symbol on their sidewalls.

Tire Pressure

Check the pressure of cold tires at least every 14 days and before any long journey.
Do not forget the spare wheel (where provided). This also applies to vehicles with Tire Pressure Monitoring System.
The tire pressure label indicates the unladen and laden tire inflation pressures. This label is affixed to the driver's door aperture.

⚠ WARNING

Always drive with each tire inflated to the recommended cold tire inflation pressure.

The tire pressure data refers to cold tires. It applies to summer and winter tires.
If you have driven for more than 10 minutes or more than 10 km (6 miles) at over 50 km/h (31 mph), add 0.3 bar (30 kPa) to the values indicated on the label.
The tire pressure depends on the temperature of the tire. During driving, tire temperature and pressure increase. The pressure increases by nearly 10 kPa for a 10 °C temperature increase. This must be considered when warm tires are checked.

Tire pressure values provided on the tire information label and tire pressure chart are valid for cold tires, which means at 20 °C.
Always inflate the spare tire to the pressure specified for full load.
Incorrect tire pressures will impair safety, vehicle handling, comfort and fuel economy and will increase tire wear.
Tire pressures differ depending on various options. For the correct tire pressure value, follow the procedure below:

- identify the engine identifier code
- identify the respective tire

The tire pressure tables show all possible tire combinations.
For the tires approved for your vehicle, refer to the EEC Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.
The driver is responsible for correct adjustment of tire pressure.

⚠ WARNING

Under-inflation increases energy consumption. Non-compliant tire pressures cause tires to wear prematurely and have an adverse effect on the vehicle's road holding - risk of accident.

⚠ WARNING

Over-inflation reduces a tire's ability to cushion shock. Objects on the road and potholes can cause damage that result in

tire failure. Over-inflated or under-inflated tires can affect vehicle handling and can fail suddenly, resulting in loss of vehicle control.

⚠ WARNING

Tire pressure must be checked with tires cold. Should it become necessary for whatever reason to check pressure with warm tires, do not reduce pressure even though it is higher than the prescribed value, but repeat the check when tires are cold.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly inflated tires are dangerous and can cause collisions.

⚠ WARNING

Unequal tire pressures can cause steering problems. You could lose control of your vehicle. Unequal tire pressures from one side of the vehicle to the other can cause the vehicle to drift to the right or left.

Tread Depth

Check tread depth at regular intervals.
For safety reasons, it is recommended that the tread depth of the tires on one axle should not vary by more than 2 mm.

The legally permissible minimum tread depth (1.6 mm) has been reached when the tread has worn down as far as one of the tread wear indicators (TWI). Their position is indicated by markings on the sidewall.
If there is more wear at the front than the rear, swap round front wheels and rear wheels periodically. Ensure that the direction of rotation of the wheels remains the same.
Tires age, even if they are not used. We recommend tire replacement every 6 years.

Allowed Tire and Rim Sizes

If tires of a different size than those fitted at the factory are used, it may be necessary to reprogramme the Tire Underinflation Detection System and make other vehicle modifications.
Using different size wheels and tires from those specified can affect the lifetime of tires, wheel rotation, ground clearance, the speedometer reading and have an adverse effect on road holding.

Fitting different tires on the front and rear axles can cause the ESC to mistime.
Have the label with tire pressures replaced.

⚠ WARNING

The use of unsuitable tires or wheels may lead to accidents and will invalidate the vehicle operating permit.

Directional Tires

Directional tires should be mounted so that they rotate in the correct direction. The proper rotation direction is indicated by a symbol (e.g. an arrow) on the sidewall.

Tire Chains

In wintry conditions, snow chains improve traction as well as the behavior of the vehicle when braking.
Use only chains designed to be fitted to the type of wheel fitted to the vehicle:

Original tire size	Chain type
225/60 R18	9 mm
225/55 R19	9 mm
235/55 R19	9 mm
235/50 R20	Polaire PSGB 140

For more information, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

WARNING

Damage may lead to tire blowout.

When fitting the tire chains follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the tire chains.
After having fitted the tire chains, stop the vehicle after having driven a short distance and make sure that the tire chains are correctly tightened.

WARNING

Snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels.
They must never be fitted to "space-saver" type spare wheels.

NOTE

Observe the legislation in force in your country relating to the use of snow chains and maximum authorised speeds.

Installation tips

1. To fit the snow chains during a journey, stop the vehicle on a flat surface at the side of the road.
2. Apply the parking brake and position any wheel chocks under the wheels to prevent movement of the vehicle.
3. Fit the snow chains following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.
4. Move off gently and drive for a few moments, without exceeding 31 mph (50 km/h).
5. Stop the vehicle and check that the snow chains are correctly tightened.

NOTE

It is strongly recommended that you practise fitting the snow chains on a level and dry surface before setting off.

WARNING

Avoid driving with snow chains on roads that have been cleared of snow to avoid damaging the vehicle's tires and the road surface. If the vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, check that no part of the chain or its fixings is in contact with the wheel rim.

Wheel Changing

Refer to "Jacking the vehicle and wheel changing" chapter in "In case of emergency" section.

Vehicle Storage

Long-time Storage

If the vehicle is to be stored for several months:

1. Wash the vehicle.
2. Have the wax in the engine compartment and underbody checked.
3. Clean and preserve the rubber seals.
4. Drain the washer fluid reservoir.
5. Check the coolant antifreeze and corrosion protection.
6. Adjust tire pressure to the value specified for full load.
7. Park the vehicle in a dry, well ventilated place. Engage first or engage **P**. Prevent the vehicle from rolling.
8. Do not apply the parking brake.
9. Open the hood, close all doors and lock the vehicle.

Long-time Storage Of Hybrid - Electric Vehicle

If the vehicle is to be stored for several months:

1. wash and wax the vehicle
2. have the wax in the engine compartment and underbody checked
3. clean and protect the shiny metal parts using special compounds available commercially
4. sprinkle talcum powder on the windshield and rear window wiper rubber blades and lift them off the glass
5. clean and preserve the rubber seals
6. cover the vehicle with a fabric or perforated plastic sheet, paying particular care not to damage the painted surface by dragging any dust that may have accumulated on it. Do not use compact plastic sheets which do not allow humidity to evaporate from the surface of the vehicle
7. disable the alarm system of the vehicle (where provided)

8. drain the washer fluid reservoir
9. check the coolant antifreeze and corrosion protection. Do not drain the cooling system
10. check the state of charge of the conventional battery every 30 days. The amount of charge of the high-voltage battery may gradually decrease when the vehicle is not used. Therefore, avoid long stays with a charge state close to zero. If possible, monitor the state of charge and prevent it from reaching excessively low levels. Follow these warnings even for longer stays of less than a month (a few weeks)
11. take the high-voltage battery to a charge level close to 100%
12. adjust tire pressure to the value specified for full load
13. operate the climate control system for at least 5 minutes, setting external air and with fan set to maximum speed
14. this operation will ensure appropriate lubrication for the system, thus minimising the possibility of damage to the compressor when the system is operated again
15. park the vehicle in a dry, well ventilated place and slightly open the windows. Engage first or engage **P**. Prevent the vehicle from rolling
16. do not apply the electric parking brake
17. open the hood, close all doors and lock the vehicle

Up to four weeks

Plug in the charging cable.

Four weeks to twelve months

1. Discharge the high-voltage battery until 30 percent remain on the battery range indicator (battery symbol) on the instrument cluster.
2. Do not plug in the charging cable.
3. Always store the vehicle in a place with temperatures between –10 °C and 30 °C.
4. Vehicle storage at extreme temperatures may cause damage to the high-voltage battery.
5. Remove the black negative (–) cable from the 12 V vehicle battery and attach a trickle charger to the vehicle battery terminals or keep the 12 V vehicle battery cables connected and trickle charge from the positive (+) and negative (–) terminals in the engine compartment.
6. Every three months, check the battery's state of charge. If the state of charge is below 30 percent, recharge the battery to 30 percent.

Putting back into operation

When the vehicle is to be put back into operation:

1. Connect the clight to the positive terminal of the vehicle battery in the engine compartment.
2. Initialize the power windows.
3. Check tire pressure.
4. Fill up the washer fluid reservoir.
5. Check the coolant level.
6. Fit the number plate if necessary.

For further information see propulsion types.

Bodywork-Exterior Care

WARNING

Never use a high-pressure jet wash in the engine compartment - risk of damaging the electrical components!
Do not wash the vehicle in bright sunshine or extremely cold conditions.

NOTE

When washing the vehicle in an automatic roller-brush car wash, be sure to lock the doors and, depending on version, move the electronic key away and deactivate the "hands-free" function (Hands-Free Tailgate Access).
When using a pressure washer, keep the jet nozzle at a minimum distance of 30 cm from the vehicle (particularly when cleaning areas containing chipped paint, sensors or seals).
Promptly clean up any stains containing chemicals liable to damage the vehicle's paintwork (including tree resin, bird droppings, insect secretions, pollen and tar).
Depending on the environment, clean the vehicle frequently to remove salty deposits (in coastal areas), soot (in industrial areas) and mud/salts (in wet or cold areas). These substances can be highly corrosive.
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop for advice on removing stubborn stains

requiring special products (such as tar or insect removers).
Preferably, have paint touch-ups performed by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

General Recommendations

Observe the following recommendations to avoid damaging the vehicle.

High Gloss Paint

WARNING

Do not use abrasive products, solvents, petrol or oil to clean the bodywork.
Never use an abrasive sponge to clean stubborn stains - risk of scratching the paintwork!
Do not apply polish in strong sunshine, or to plastic or rubber parts.

NOTE

Use a soft cloth and soapy water or a pH neutral product.
Gently wipe the bodywork with a clean microfibre cloth.
Apply polish with the vehicle clean and dry.
Comply with the instructions for use stated on the product.

Decals

(Depending on version)

WARNING

Do not use a high-pressure washer to clean the vehicle - risk of damaging or detaching the decals!

NOTE

Use a high-flow hose (temperature between 25 °C and 40 °C).
Place the jet of water perpendicular to the surface to be cleaned.
Rinse the vehicle with demineralised water.

Interior Care

WARNING

When washing the vehicle, never use a water hose or high-pressure jet to clean the interior.
Liquids carried in cups or other open containers can spill, presenting a risk of damage to the instruments and controls and the controls located on the centre console. Be vigilant!
To clean instrument panels, touch screens or other displays, wipe gently with a soft, dry cloth. Do not use products (e.g. alcohol, disinfectant) or soapy water directly on these surfaces - risk of damage!

General Recommendations

Observe the following recommendations to avoid damaging the vehicle.

Seat Belts Maintenance

Do not bleach, dye or clean the belts with chemical solvents or abrasive cleaners. This will weaken the fabric. Sun damage can also weaken the fabric.
If the belts need cleaning, use a mild soap solution or lukewarm water. Do not remove the belts from the vehicle to wash them. Dry with a soft cloth.
Replace the belts if they appear frayed or worn or if the buckles do not work properly.

WARNING

A frayed or torn seat belt could rip apart in a collision and leave you with no protection. Inspect the seat belt system periodically, checking for cuts, frays, or loose parts. Damaged parts must be replaced immediately. Do not disassemble or modify the seat belt system. If your vehicle is involved in a collision, or if you have questions regarding seat belt or retractor conditions, take your vehicle to an authorized FCA dealer or authorized FCA Certified Collision Care Program facility for inspection.

Plastic And Coated Parts

Clean interior plastic parts with a damp cloth (if possible made from microfiber), and a sol-

ution of water and neutral, nonabrasive detergent.
To clean oily or persistent stains, use specific products free from solvents and designed to maintain the original appearance and color of the components.
Remove any dust using a microfiber cloth, if necessary moistened with water. The use of paper tissues is not recommended as these may leave residues.

NOTE

Direct contact of air fresheners, insect repellents, suntan lotions, or hand sanitizers to the plastic, painted, or decorated surfaces of the interior may cause permanent damage. Wipe away immediately.

NOTE

Damage caused by these type of products may not be covered by your new vehicle limited Warranty.

Instrument Cluster And Displays

The lenses in front of the instruments in this vehicle are molded in clear plastic.
When cleaning the lenses, care must be taken to avoid scratching the plastic.
Clean with a wet soft cloth. A mild soap solution may be used, but do not use high alcohol content or abrasive cleaners. If soap is used, wipe clean with a clean damp cloth. Dry with a soft cloth.

NOTE

Never use alcohol, petrols and derivatives to clean the dashboard and instrument panel lens.

Glass Surfaces

All glass surfaces should be cleaned on a regular basis with any commercial household-type glass cleaner.
Do not use scrapers or other sharp instruments that may scratch the elements.
When cleaning the rear-view mirror, spray cleaner on the towel or cloth that you are using. Do not spray cleaner directly on the mirror.

NOTE

Never use an abrasive type cleaner. Use caution when cleaning the inside rear window equipped with electric defrosters or windows equipped with radio antennas.

Fabric parts

Remove dust with a soft brush or a vacuum cleaner.
It is advisable to use a moist brush on when cleaning non-fabric upholstery.
Rub the seats using a soft microfibre cloth moistened with a solution of water and neutral detergent.

Alcantara®

Alcantara® is an elegant and practical material which is very resistant and easy to maintain.

WARNING

Do not use printed cloths or printed absorbent paper.
Do not use steam-cleaning systems.

NOTE

Remove dust from the Alcantara® parts regularly with a dry cloth, soft brush or vacuum cleaner.
Clean the Alcantara® , without rubbing too vigorously, with a white cotton cloth which is slightly damp.

To find out which products and procedures to use on different types of stains, refer to the "**Textile - Stain removal**" section.

For more information, go to the Alcantara® trademark website: www.alcantara.com.

Leather Surfaces

(where provided)
Leather is a natural product. Appropriate regular care is essential for its durability.
It must be protected and nourished using a specific leather product, to keep it supple and preserve its original appearance.

WARNING

Do not use maintenance products which are not suitable for cleaning leather (e.g. solvent, detergent, petrol, pure alcohol).
Do not use bleaching or colour-removal products (e.g. perchloroethylene).
When cleaning items partly made from leather, take care not to damage the other materials with the specific leather product.

NOTE

Before cleaning greasy stains or liquids, quickly mop up any surplus.
Before cleaning, wipe off any residues liable to scuff the leather, using a cloth that has been dampened with demineralised water and thoroughly wrung out.
Clean the leather, without rubbing too vigorously, using a soft cloth moistened with soapy water or a pH-neutral product.
Dry with a soft, dry cloth.

Textile

The dashboard, door panels and seats may contain parts made of textile material.
Remove dust from the textile parts regularly with a dry cloth, soft brush or vacuum cleaner.
Rub down the textile parts once per year with a clean, damp cloth. After leaving overnight to dry, brush with a soft-bristled brush.

Maintenance

WARNING

Do not use aggressive cleaning products (e.g. alcohol, solvent or ammonia).
Do not use steam-cleaning systems - risk of affecting the adhesion of the fabrics!

NOTE

Remove dust from the textile parts regularly with a dry cloth, soft brush or vacuum cleaner.
Rub down the textile parts once per year with a clean, damp cloth. After leaving overnight to dry, brush with a soft-bristled brush.

Stain Removal

WARNING

Do not rub the stain or it may spread or you may cause the substance to penetrate the surface.

NOTE

Act quickly by reducing the stain from its edges inwards.
Remove as much substance or solids as possible using a spoon or spatula, and remove as much liquid as possible using absorbent paper.

NOTE

Product/Procedure to use depending on the type of stain:

- Grease, oil and ink: clean with a pH-neutral detergent.
- Vomit: clean with sparkling mineral water.
- Blood: spread flour over the stain and allow to dry; remove with a slightly damp cloth.
- Mud: allow to dry and then remove with a slightly damp cloth.
- Cake, chocolate, ice cream: clean with lukewarm water.
- Sugary and/or alcoholic drinks: clean with lukewarm water, or lemon juice if the stain is persistent.
- Hair gel, coffee, tomato sauce, vinegar: clean with lukewarm water and lemon juice.

For solid substances, then use a soft brush or vacuum cleaner.
For liquid substances, then use a damp microfibre cloth and then dry with another cloth.

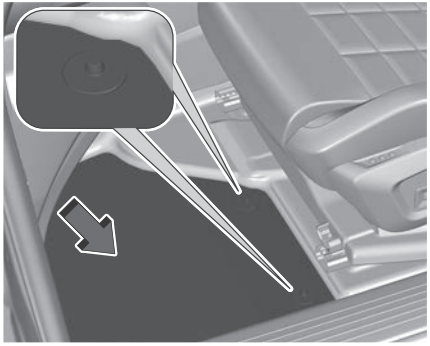
Floor Materials

(where provided)
Use the following guidelines for proper floor mat usage.

The original equipment floor mats were designed for your vehicle. If the floor mats need replacing, it is recommended that certified floor mats be purchased. Always check that the floor mats do not interfere with the pedals.
Use the floor mat with the correct side up. Do not turn it over.
Do not place anything on top of the driver side floor mat.
Use only a single floor mat on the driver side.

Inserting and removing the floor mats

The driver side floor mat is held in place by two retainers.



Inserting

To insert the floor mat:

1. move the seat backwards as far as possible
2. align slots in the mat with the retainers
3. push the mat to the floor

Removing

To remove the floor mat:

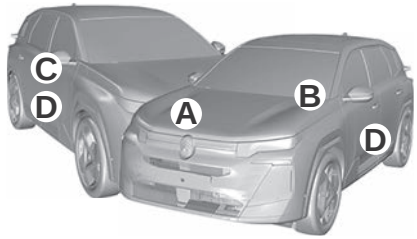
1. Move the seat backwards as far as possible.
2. Remove the mat.

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

Various visible markings for vehicle identification and vehicle search.



A. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), under the hood.

Stamped on the chassis.

B. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), on the dashboard.

Printed on an adhesive label visible through the windshield.

C. Manufacturer's label.

Affixed to the right-hand door.
Bears the following information:

- Manufacturer’s name.
- European whole vehicle type approval number.
- Vehicle Identification number (VIN).
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW).
- Gross train weight (GTW).
- Maximum weight on the front axle.
- Maximum weight on the rear axle.
- Vehicle emissions passport QR access code.

D. Tires/paint code label.

Affixed to the driver's door.
Bears the following information about the tires:

- Tire pressures, unladen and laden.
- Tire specification, made up of the dimensions and type as well as the load and speed indices.
- Spare tire inflation pressure.

Also indicates the paint color code.

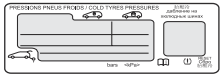
NOTE

The vehicle may be originally equipped with tyres with higher load and speed indices than those indicated on the label, without affecting tyre pressure (on cold tyres).
In the event of a change in the type of tyres, contact a dealer for the tyre fits approved for the vehicle.

Engine Identification

The technical data tables use the engine identifier code.
The engine data table additionally shows the engineering code.
Engine data .
To identify the respective engine, refer to the EEC Certificate of Conformity provided with this vehicle or other national registration documents.
The Certificate of Conformity shows the engine identifier code, other national publications may show the engineering code.
Check piston displacement and engine power to identify the respective engine.

Tire Information Label

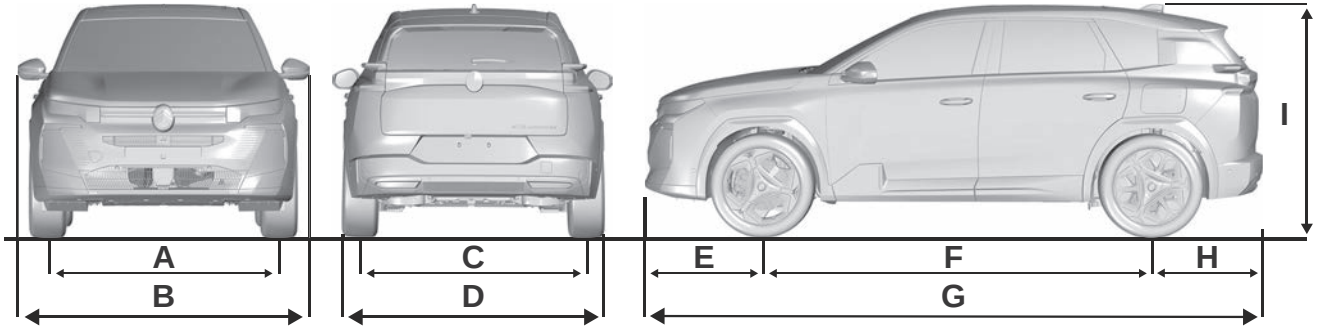


The tire pressure information label on the left door frame indicates the original equipment tires and the correspondent tire pressures.
The tire pressure data refers to cold tires. It applies to summer and winter tires.
Always inflate the spare tire to the pressure specified for full load.
Incorrect tire pressures will impair safety, vehicle handling, comfort and fuel economy and will increase tire wear.

Vehicle Data

Dimensions

These dimensions have been measured on an unladen vehicle.



A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I
1630	2108	1635	1870	950	2790	4650	910	1695

Engine Data

Engines

The engine characteristics are given in the vehicle's registration document, as well as in sales brochures.
Only the values available at the time of publication are presented in the tables.
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain missing values.

NOTE

The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, as defined by the Regulation EU 715/2007.

For more information, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Weights and towed loads

The weights and towed loads relating to the vehicle are indicated on the registration document, as well as in sales brochures.
These values are also indicated on the Manufacturer's plate or label.
For more information, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.
The GTW (Gross Train Weight) and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1,000 metres. The towed load value must be reduced by 10% for each additional 1,000 metres of altitude.
The maximum authorised nose weight corresponds to the weight permitted on the towball.

WARNING

When exterior temperatures are high, the vehicle performance may be limited in order to protect the engine. When the exterior temperature is higher than 37°C, reduce the towed weight.

WARNING

Towing even with a lightly loaded vehicle can adversely affect its road holding.
Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer.
When using a vehicle to tow, never exceed a speed of 62 mph (100 km/h) (observe the local legislation in force).

WARNING

For Hybrid (MHEV) models in high altitude conditions (> 2500 m asl) towing capacity is restricted as it may affect vehicle performance.

For more information on **Towing**, including their recommendation, refer to the corresponding section. ⇨ 235

Engines and towed loads - ICE

Engine	Turbo 180 Automatic
Code	EP6LTCM AT6III STTd 180hp
Model Code	KBDGH
Homologation Standard	€6
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) kg	600
Unbraked trailer (kg)	600
Max authorized nose weight (kg)	80
Cubic capacity (cc)	1,598
Max power EC standard (kW)	132kW / 300Nm
Fuel	Unleaded Gasoline

Engines and towed loads - MHEV

(*): depending on destination

Engine	Hybrid 145 hp Automatic	Hybrid 145 hp Automatic (export *)
Code	EB2LTDH2 eDCT6	
Model Code	KAHPY1	
Homologation standard	€6ebis	
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) kg	1000 (Aftersales installation) 1200 (Factory installation)	600
Unbraked trailer (kg)	750	600
Max authorized nose weight (kg)	80	
Gearbox / Engine	Electric dual-clutch automatic 6 speed	
Cubic capacity (cc)	1.199	
Max power EC standard (kW)	100 kW / 230Nm	
Fuel	Unleaded Gasoline	
Electric Motor		
Technology	Synchronous with permanent magnets	
Max power EC standard (kW)	15.6	
Traction Battery		
Technology	Lithium-Ion	
Voltage (Volts DC)	48	
Installed capacity (kWh)	0.9	
Combined power (kW CE/chCE)	107/145	

Engines and towed loads - PHEV

Engine	**Plug-In Hybrid 225 hp Automatic**
Code	EP6LTCHPD eDCT7
Model Code	KBDGK
Homologation standard	€6.e bis
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) kg	1550
Unbraked trailer (kg)	750
Max authorized nose weight (kg)	80
Gearbox / Engine	Electric dual-clutch automatic 7 speed
Cubic capacity (cc)	1.598
Max power EC standard (kW)	110kW / 300Nm
Fuel	Unleaded Gasoline
Electric Motor Technology	Synchronous with permanent magnets
Max power EC standard (kW)	92
Traction Battery Technology	Lithium-Ion
Voltage (Volts DC)	270-408
Installed capacity (kWh)	21.5
Combined power (kW CE/hp CE)	168/225
Domestic charging	**Mode 2**
Alternating current (AC) voltage Rating (A)	230 (single-phase) 8 or 16

Accelerated charging	Mode 3
Alternating current (AC) voltage Rating (A)	230 (single-phase or three-phase) 16 or 32

Engines and towed loads - BEV €6.e bis / €7

(*): depending on destination

Engine	ELECTRIC 210hp Comfort Range Automatic	ELECTRIC 230hp Long Range Automatic
Code	ZLC RGML 210hp	ZLC RGML 230hp
Model Code	KCZKZ	KCZKM
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) kg	1250/600(*)	1200
Unbraked trailer (kg)	750/600(*)	750
Max authorized nose weight (kg)	80	
Gearbox / Engine	Reductor	
Traction Battery		
Technology	Lithium-Ion	
Installed capacity (kWh)	78.9	100.7
Combined Power	157/210	170/230
Domestic charging	**Mode 2**	
Alternating current (AC) voltage Rating (A)	230 (single-phase) 8 or 16	
Accelerated charging	**Mode 3**	
Alternating current (AC) voltage Rating (A)	230 (single-phase or three-phase) 16 or 32	
Superfast charging	**Mode 4**	
Direct current (DC) voltage	400	

Fluids and Lubricants

The engine oil used on the vehicle has been carefully developed and tested to meet the requirements of the planned maintenance drawing.
Use only recommended lubricants to prolong engine operation and life.

WARNING

The use of products with specifications other than those indicated above could cause damage to the engine not covered by the warranty.

Wheels and Tires

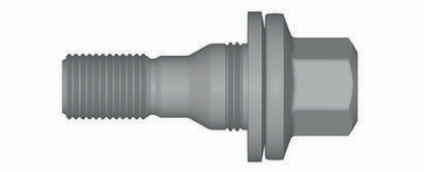
Your vehicle can be fitted with various wheel and tire sizes.
When changing worn tires, ensure that you select a replacement that is suitable for your vehicle.

Tightening Torques

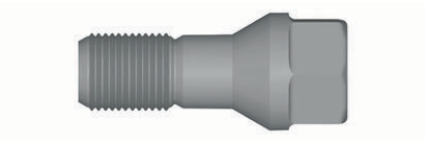
WARNING

Ensure to use always the correct wheel bolts if changing the wheels. When installing the spare wheel for temporary usage, the bolts for alloy wheel rims can also be used.

Depending on version, there are two sizes of bolt:



Tightening torque for M12 bolts is 115 Nm.



Tightening torque for M14 bolts is ca. 130 Nm.

CUSTOMER INFORMATION

Declaration of Conformity

This vehicle has radio equipments that transmit and / or receive radio waves subject to Directive 2014/53/EU.
The manufacturers of the radio equipments listed below declare conformity with Directive 2014/53/EU.
No regional restriction applies on putting the equipment into service regarding Article 10 § 10 Directive 2014/53/EU.

NOTE

The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:
https://service.citroen.com/ACddb/index.html

Radars

Robert Bosch GmbH

Robert-Bosch-Platz 1, 70839 Gerlingen-Schillerhöhe, Germany

- Operating Frequencies: 76.0 - 77.0 GHz
- Max power: 20,9 dBm | 21,4 dBm

Radio & Infotainment system

MARELLI EUROPE S.p.A

Viale A. Borletti 61/63, Corbetta, Italy

BT:

- Operating Frequencies: 2402 MHz to 2480 MHz
- Max power: 2.34 dBm

WiFi:

- Operating Frequencies: 5725 MHz to 5875 MHz
- Max power
  - 20 MHz BW: 5745 MHz → 12.86 dBm
  - 40 MHz BW: 5755 MHz → 12.48 dBm
  - 80 MHz BW: 5775 MHz → 11.84 dBm

Immobilizer

Aptiv Services Deutschland GmbH

Am Technologiepark 1 D–42119 Wuppertal, Germany

- Operating Frequencies: 125 kHz
- Max power: -18.97dBμA/m @10m

Telematic box

BSRF

Continental Automotive GmbH

Siemensstrasse 12, 93055 Regensburg, Germany

- Operating Frequencies:
  - FM: 87,5 - 108 MHZ
  - AM: 148,5 - 283,5 kHZ, 526,5 - 1606,5 kHz
  - DAB: 174 - 240 MHz
  - WIFI: 2,4GHz et 5GHz
  - LTE (1.4 MHz 3 MHz 5 MHz 10 MHz 15 MHz 20 MHz)
  - GNSS: 1559-1610 MHz
- Max power: GSM (33 dBm +/– 2 dB), LTE/WCDMA (23 dBm +/– 2 dB)

RTBM

FIH Co., Ltd No.4, Minsheng St., Tucheng Dist., 236 New Taipei City, Taiwan

Wi-Fi:

802.11b/g/n (2.4 GHz)

- Frequencies: 2412 – 2472 MHz
- Max power: 18.83 dBm

802.11a/n/ac (5 GHz)

- Frequencies: 5180 – 5240 MHz
- Max power: 15.99 dBm

SRD

- Frequencies: 5745 – 5825 MHz
- Max Power: 13.93 dBm

GSM 900

- Frequencies: 880–915 MHz (emitter) / 925–960 MHz (receiver)
- Max Power: 33 dBm (nominal value)

GSM 1800

- Frequencies: 1710–1785 MHz (emitter) / 1805–1880 MHz (receiver)
- Max Power: 30 dBm (nominal value)

WCDMA Band I

- Frequencies: 1920–1980 MHz (emitter) / 2110–2170 MHz (receiver)
- Max Power: 24 dBm (nominal value)

WCDMA Band VIII

- Frequencies: 880–915 MHz (emitter) / 925–960 MHz (receiver)
- Max Power: 24 dBm

LTE FDD Band 1

- Frequencies: 1920–1980 MHz (emitter) / 2110–2170 MHz (receiver)
- Max Power: 23 dBm

LTE FDD Band 3

- Frequencies: 1710–1785 MHz (emitter) / 1805–1880 MHz (receiver)
- Max Power: 23 dBm

LTE FDD Band 7

- Frequencies: 2500–2570 MHz (emitter) / 2620–2690 MHz (receiver)
- Max Power: 23 dBm

LTE FDD Band 8

- Frequencies: 880–915 MHz (emitter) / 925–960 MHz (receiver)
- Max Power: 23 dBm

LTE FDD Band 20

- Frequencies: 832–862 MHz (emitter) / 791–821 MHz (receiver)
- Max Power: 23 dBm

LTE FDD Band 28

- Frequencies: 703–748 MHz (emitter) / 758–803 MHz (receiver)
- Max Power: 23 dBm

Telecomand & telemetry

Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance

76, rue Auguste Perret 94046 Créteil - CEDEX France

- Operating Frequencies: 433,05...434,79MHz | 125kHz 2402...2480MHz76- 108 MHz
- Max power: 10 dBm /-6,85 dBm | 125kHz: -7,3 dBm

Radio Antenna

ASK Industrie SpA

C.P. 110 c/o U.P. RE2, 42121 Reggio Emilia, Italy

- Operating Frequencies: 76-108 MHz
- Max power: N/A

Wireless Charger

FORYOU MULTIMEDIA ELECTRONICS CO., LTD

No.1, North Shangxia Road, Dongjiang Hi-tech Industry Park 516005 HUIZHOU GUANGDONG PROVINCE P.R., China

- Operating Frequencies: 127.7 kHz
- Max power: 15W

Fuel Consumption And CO_2 Emissions

(ICE / MHEV / PHEV versions)
The fuel consumption and CO_2 emission figures declared by the manufacturer are determined on the basis of the type-approval tests laid down by the applicable standards in the country where the vehicle is registered.
Type of route, traffic, weather conditions, driving style, general condition of the vehicle, level of equipment/accessories, use of the climate control system, vehicle load, presence of roof rack, and other situations that negatively affect the aerodynamics or resistance will lead to different consumption values. Only after the first 3,000 km of driving will you establish more even fuel consumption.
To find the specific fuel consumption and CO_2 emission figures for this car, please refer to the data in the Certificate of Conformity, and the related documentation that accompanies the vehicle.

Disposal Prescriptions

(where present)
The Manufacturer has been committed for many years to safeguarding the environment through the constant improvement of its production processes and manufacturing products that are increasingly "eco-compatible". To grant customers the best possible service in terms of respecting environmental laws and in response to European Directive 2000/53/EC governing vehicles at the end of their life, the Manufacturer is offering its customers the chance to hand over their vehicle at the end of its life without incurring any additional costs. The European Directive sets out that when the vehicle is handed over, the last keeper or owner should not incur any expenses as a result of it having a zero or negative market value.
To hand your vehicle over at the end of its life without extra cost, contact one of our dealerships if you are purchasing another vehicle or a collection and scrapping centre authorised by the Manufacturer. These centres have been carefully chosen to offer high quality service for the collection, treatment and recycling of vehicles at their end of life, respecting the surrounding environment.
Similarly, to meet its obligations under European Directive 2006/66/EC on batteries, the Manufacturer requires you to comply with the national regulations on handling both low-voltage (12 V and 48 V) and high-voltage lithium ion batteries at all times.
This includes consigning vehicles complete with their batteries to one of the collection and demolition centers authorized by the Manufacturer to handle such batteries, and not disposing of them improperly, which could lead to personal injuries and/or harm to the environment.
You can find further information on these collection and scrapping centers either from a dealer or by calling the number in the Service Booklet or by consulting the websites of the various the Manufacturer brands.

REACH

Registration, Evaluation, Authorisation and Restriction of Chemicals (REACH) is a European Union regulation adopted to improve the protection of human health and the environment from the risks that can be posed by chemicals.

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy

Introduction

Electronic control units are installed in your vehicle. These control units process data received from the vehicle's sensors, for example, or data they generate themselves or exchange with each other. Some of these control units are required for the correct operation of your vehicle, some others assist you while driving (driving or manoeuvring aids), while others provide comfort or infotainment functions.
The following contains general information about how data is processed within the vehicle.
You will find additional information about the specific data which is downloaded, stored and transmitted to third parties and what it is used for in your vehicle under the keyword "Data protection". This information is directly associated with the references for the functions in question contained in the corresponding vehicle handbook. These are also available in the general terms of sale of the vehicle, in the general terms of sale of connected services, or online on brand website.

Personal reference

Each vehicle is identified by means of a unique chassis number. Further options, such as the-vehicle's number plate, make it possible to trace data on the keeper or driver of the vehicle.
The data generated or processed by control units may therefore be personal, or be made personal under certain conditions. Depending on what vehicle data is available, conclusions may be drawn on information such as your driving behavior, your location or the route you travel, or on your usage behavior.

Operating data in the vehicle

The control units process the data used for the operation of the vehicle.
This data includes, for example:

- Information about the state of the vehicle (e.g. speed, travel time, lateral acceleration, wheel rotation rate, fastened seat belts display).
- Environmental conditions (e.g. temperature, rain sensor, distance sensor).

As a general rule, this data is temporary, is not stored for longer than one operating cycle and is only used within the vehicle itself. The control units often record this data (including the vehicle's key). This function allows either the temporary or permanent storage of information about the state of the vehicle, stresses on components, servicing requirements, as well as events and technical errors.

Emergency Call Data Recording and Privacy

Data processing

All processing of personal information by the emergency call function complies with the framework for protection of personal information established by regulation 2016/679 (GDPR) and directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and the Council, and in particular, seeks to protect the vital interests of the data subject, in accordance with article 6.1, paragraph d) of regulation 2016/679.
The processing of personal information is strictly limited to the requirements of the emergency call function used with the European emergency call number.
The emergency call function is only able to collect and process the following data relating to the vehicle: chassis number, type (passenger vehicle or light commercial vehicle), fuel type or power source, three most recent locations and direction of travel, number of passengers and a timestamped log file recording technical data related to the system's operation.
The recipients of the processed data are the emergency call handling centers designated by the relevant national authorities in the territory in which they are located, enabling priority routing and handling of calls to the emergency number.

Data storage

Data contained in the system's memory is not accessible from outside the system until a call is made. The system is not traceable and is not continuously monitored in its normal operation mode.
The data in the system's internal memory is automatically and continuously erased. Only the vehicle's three most recent locations, necessary for the normal functioning of the system, are stored.
When an emergency call is triggered, the data log is stored for no more than 13 hours.

Access to data

You have the right to access the data and, if necessary, submit a request to rectify, erase or restrict the processing of any personal information not processed in accordance with the provisions of Regulation 2016/679 (GDPR).
Third parties to which data has been communicated shall be notified of any rectification, erasure or restriction carried out in accordance with the aforementioned directive, unless doing so would be impossible or require a disproportionate effort.
You also have the right to lodge a complaint with the relevant data protection authority.
If you want to claim your abovementioned rights please contact us per email at privacy-rights@mpsa.com.

For more information regarding our contact details please take a look at our Privacy & Cookies Policy on our website.

Technical data of the vehicle

Depending on the vehicle's equipment level, the data stored is as follows:

- Operating state of system components (e.g. filling level, tire pressures, battery charge status).
- Faults and malfunctions in important system components (e.g. lights, brakes).
- System reactions in specific driving situations (e.g. deployment of an airbag, triggering of stability control and braking systems).
- Information about events which have damaged the vehicle.
- For electric and rechargeable hybrid vehicles, the traction battery charge level and the estimated driving range.
- Cyber-security events (e.g. unexpected established connections with unknown systems, unexpected reboots, and any abnormal system configurations).
- Exact mileage or timestamp of recorded events (detection of internal malfunctions, activation of specific systems, etc.), allowing to locate them in time.
- Dynamic data recorded few seconds before and after specific driving events, such as accidents, collisions or activations of Advanced Driver Assistance Systems (ADAS): driving data (e.g. speed, acceleration, steering angle, engine speed, selected ratio on the gearbox, pedals pressure), and potential very low-resolution pictures of the

sight in front of the vehicle (only if ADAS Data Recorder (ADR) system is activated).

In particular circumstances (e.g. if the vehicle has detected a malfunction), it may be necessary to record data which would otherwise simply not be stored.

Maintenance and repair activities

When taking your vehicle in for servicing (e.g. repairs, maintenance), the stored operating data may be read along with the vehicle's identification number and used if necessary. The personnel working for the servicing network (e.g. garages, manufacturers) or third parties (e.g. roadside assistance agents) may read the vehicle's data. This also applies to work carried out under warranty and quality assurance measures.
This data is generally read via the OBD (On-Board Diagnostics) port fitted by law to the vehicle. It is used to report on the technical state of the vehicle or its components and facilitates the diagnosis of malfunctions, in compliance with warranty obligations and for quality improvement. This data, in particular the information relating to stress on components, technical events, operator errors and other malfunctions, is sent to the Manufacturer, if necessary, along with the vehicle's identification number. The Manufacturer's liability may also be engaged. The Manufacturer may also use the operating data taken from the vehicle for product recalls. This data may also be used to check the customer's warranty and any claims made under warranty.

Any malfunctions stored in the vehicle may be reset by an after-sales service company during servicing or repair work, or at your request.

ADAS Data Recorder (ADR) system

Depending on its level of equipment, your vehicle may be equipped with an ADAS Data Recorder system that continuously process pictures and driving data, and record them inside your vehicle when specific Advanced Driver Assistance Systems (ADAS) are triggered (e.g. Intelligent emergency braking assistance, interruption of a Semi-automatic lane changing, where applicable). This system aims to provide pieces of understanding for ADAS behaviour, by collecting data every time ADAS are triggered.
Concerned data is greyed low-resolution pictures of the sight in front of the vehicle and dynamic driving data (e.g. speed, acceleration, steering angle, brake pressure pedal, blinker status, accelerator pedal position), both sampled every seconds just before and just after the event. Exact mileage and timestamping of the event are also recorded. Resolution of stored pictures is too low to allow recognition of faces, to read license plates, or to interpret panels on the roadside.
All this stored information can only be extracted from your vehicle near an approved repairer workshop, via a special equipment connected by wire to the OBD port. This can be done upon a request on your side for ADAS explanation, or in the context of a legal investigation concerning your vehicle. This system only aims to provide explanatory context of ADAS activations. Only activation of specific ADAS systems can trigger it ; this system is never directly triggered by detection of accidents or collisions without ADAS activation. In case where ADAS are deactivated, ADR system will not record any data.

Event Data Recorder (EDR) system

In addition, depending on country of sale and upon legal obligations, your vehicle may also be equipped with an Event Data Recorder system that records data in case of accident or collision, whatever the activation status of your ADAS systems. Pursuant to the Regulation (EU) 2022/545, EDR system is a legal obligation inside Europe Market, and in other countries bent to UN Regulation No 160; its purpose is to freeze driving data when accidents or collisions occur.
Contrary to the ADR system above described, pictures of the scene are never recorded by EDR system. Data can only be read through OBD port via a special equipment that law enforcement agencies may use to analyze the context of an accident involving your vehicle. Except in exceptional cases, repairers do not own this equipment.

Comfort and infotainment functions

Comfort settings and personalised settings may be saved in the vehicle and modified or reinitialized at any time.
Depending on the vehicle's equipment level, this may include:

- Seat and steering wheel position settings.
- Chassis and air conditioning settings.
- Personalised settings such as the interior lighting.

You can enter your own data into the functions of your vehicle's audio and telematic system, as part of the selected functionalities. Depending on the vehicle's equipment level, this may include:

- Multimedia data such as music, videos or photos to be read by an integrated multimedia system.
- Address book data to be used with an integrated hands-free system or with an integrated navigation system.
- Entered destinations.
- Data regarding the use of online services.

This data for the comfort and infotainment functions may be stored locally in the vehicle or saved to a device that you have connected to the vehicle (e.g. smartphone, USB memory stick or MP3 player). Data that you have entered yourself may be deleted at any time.
This data may also be transmitted outside the vehicle at your request, particularly when using online services in line with the settings that you have selected.

Smartphone integration (e.g. Android Auto® or Apple® CarPlay®)

If your vehicle is equipped accordingly, you can connect your smartphone or another mobile device to the vehicle in order to operate it using the vehicle's integrated controls. Images and sounds from the smartphone can be transmitted through the audio and telematics system. Specific information is simultaneously sent to your smartphone. Depending on the type of integration, this includes data such as location, day/night mode and other general information about the vehicle. For more information, please refer to the user instructions for the vehicle or the audio and telematics system.
Integrating a smartphone allows you to use its applications, such as a navigation app or music player. No other integration between the smartphone and the vehicle is possible, in particular active access to vehicle data.
How the data is processed subsequently is determined by the supplier of the application being used. The ability the change settings depends on the application in question and on the operating system installed on your smartphone.

Online services - "Over-The-Air" connectivity

If your vehicle is connected to a wireless network, data can be exchanged between your vehicle and other systems.
Connection to a wireless network is made possible via a transmitter located in your vehicle or a mobile device that you have provided (e.g. smartphone). The online services can be used via this wireless connection. These include online services and applications (apps) provided to you by the Manufacturer or other suppliers.

Proprietary services

As regards the Manufacturer's online services, the corresponding functions are described by the Manufacturer in an appropriate medium (e.g. handbook, Manufacturer's website) and the information about data protection is provided. Personal data may be used for online services. The exchange of data for this purpose takes place over a secure connection, using for example the Manufacturer's dedicated computer systems. The collection, processing and use of personal data for the development of services are carried out solely on the basis of a legal authorization, for example in the case of a legal emergency call system, or a contractual agreement or else under a consent agreement.
You can activate or deactivate the services and functions (some may be chargeable) and, in some cases, the vehicle's entire connection to the wireless network. This does not include legally required functions and services such as an emergency communication system.

Third-party services

If you use online services provided by other (third-party) suppliers, these services are subject to the responsibility, the data protection and the terms and conditions of use of the supplier in question. The Manufacturer often has no influence over the content exchanged in this regard.
Please therefore ensure that you are aware of the nature, extent and purpose of the collection and use of personal data as part of the thirdparty services provided by the service provider in question.

Online services based on contractual agreements

Your vehicle may disclose and receive data by "Over-The-Air" connectivity to perform services explicitly requested by a service subscriber. During the subscription process, we

check by different means the legitimacy of the requestor considered as vehicle's owner to activate services on the vehicle.
For more details on those services, please ask the service subscriber to provide the relative Terms and Conditions accepted. You can find them from the Brand Mobile app or the Brand website, after being connected with a Stellantis account.

Protecting measures against cyber attacks

Depending to the model, your vehicle may be equipped with a system that detects cyber attack attempts or unexpected events for cybersecurity point of view . This system, when fitted inside the vehicle, is working for the entire life cycle of the vehicle.
When cybersecurity events are detected (e.g. unexpected established connections with unknown systems, unexpected reboots, and any abn ormal system configurations), log files are generated, temporally stored inside your vehicle and then sent to the Manufacturer's in fra structures by "Over-The-Air" connectivity. Those log files are analyzed by the Manufacturer's Security Operational Center (SOC) to define appropriate measures protecting vehicles from malicious interactions with electronical components. Such measures could be the deployment of software and firmware updates.
The purpose of this system is thus to enhance cybersecurity measures settled inside vehicles. It also directly participates to the securitization of your vehicle's connectivity and allows the correct performance of online services activated on your vehicle . Ways to exercise your Privacy rights to this processing are described within the European Connected Vehicles Privacy Policy of Stellantis (see below).

Applying legal Obligations and respective requirements

This list can change according to European regulations. Please consult online this document to be sure to have the up-to-date list of applying regulations in EU. Depending of the date of the Type Approval of the vehicle, some regulations cannot apply.
Generally, these legal obligations can disclose data independtly of the in-vehicle privacy settings.

eCall - Emergency Call

This function will be provided for the entire life cycle of the VEHICLE.
This function, where operational, is provided through the Public Emergency service of each country where you are driving. It doesn't matter where you bought your vehicle or where it is registered.
In the event of a significant impact or a serious accident recorded by the DEVICE on the VEHICLE, with consequent shutdown of the VEHICLE itself, a phone-call is automatically forwarded from the VEHICLE to the respective Public Emergency number (call to '112' inside Europe), together with the transmission of the minimum data needed for identification and location of the VEHICLE (i.e. your exact location, the time of the accident, your vehicle's identification number and direction of travel). This information is only transmitted from your vehicle in the event of a serious accident ; it allows the Public Emergency Services to assess and manage your situation. The Public Emergency Services will act according to local legislation and its own operating procedures. Inside Europe, the 112- based eCall service is a public service of general interest and should therefore be accessible free of charge to all consumers.
According to Regulation (EU) 2015/758, this system is mandatory for all new types of vehicle approved for manufacture after 31 March 2018.
The eCall system is only activated if your vehicle is involved in a serious accident. The rest of the time the system remains inactive. This means that when you are simply driving your vehicle, no permanent tracking (registering your car's position or monitoring your driving) or transmission of data takes place on behalf of this regulatory service.

OBFCM - On-Board Fuel Consumption Meter

This SERVICE is provided for 15 years after the vehicule is fisrtly put into circulation.
In accordance to Article 9 of Implementing Regulation (EU) 2021/392 ("OBFCM"), this regulatory service allows the European Environment Agency (EEA) to collect vehicle data related to usage (such as VIN, total distance travelled, total fuel consumed, total grid energy into battery when applicable).
These data are used by EEA to monitor in real usage the fuel and energy consumption and the CO2 emission of the new vehicles, in an anonymized and aggregated way.
As mentioned in OBFCM regulation, the CUSTOMER can refuse the collection and transmission of vehicle's data for regulatory OBFCM purpose. This can be done by contacting Cus-

tomer Care Center (contact information available on the brand website available for your country).

SLI - Speed Limit Information

This function will be provided for the entire life cycle of the VEHICLE, only for vehicles sold inside the Europe Market.
Pursuant to the Regulation (EU) 2018/858 on the approval and market surveillance of motor vehicles and their trailers, and of systems, components and separate technical units intended for such vehicles dated 30 May 2018, as amended by the Regulation (EU) 2019/2144 dated 27 November 2019 and the Commission Delegated Regulation (EU) 2021/1958 dated 23 June 2021 (together the "GSR V2 Regulations"), car manufacturers are required to equip new vehicles sold in Europe with various systems aiming at guaranteeing the overall safety of such vehicles.
As per Article 6 of the Regulation (EU) 2019/2144, such systems must include an "intelligent speed assistance" system (hereinafter "ISA") that provides the applicable speed limit to the driver for at least 90% of the total distance and for at least 80% of the distance driven on each of the three road types (urban roads and streets, non-urban roads, and motorways/expressways/dual carriageways).
SLI function provides the driver with the applicable speed limit on the road where driver travels. SLI function aims to improve the safety by allowing the vehicle to display in real time applicable speed limit, even when external conditions doesn't not permit it (e.g. weather, sign hidden by another vehicle). The applicable speed limit is retrieved from the front camera of the vehicle and maybe completed through Over-The-Air communication system to improve the reliability of information according to the vehicle definition. To get valid speed limit information, the vehicle's current position is sent via the telematics unit and is immediately deleted after processing. Tracking of the vehicle position is not possible at any time. This is not impacted by the privacy settings of the vehicle.
As required by the "GSR V2 Regulations", this SLI feature is activated by default at key on, but can be partially deactivated at every time by the user of the vehicle, given that the driver may cut the audible warning function from the vehicle's settings available from the central touch screen. This will not impact the visual warning function that will stay active and may still require Over-The-Air data transmission of current vehicle's position for accurate speed limit detection. Depending on the model of your vehicle, it may be possible to also fully cut the SLI function (i.e. to stop speed limit detection and speed limit warning function) from the central touch screen, and thus cut the data transmission for the current trip.

Mileage disclosure to Car-Pass association

(Only for vehicles registered in Belgium)
This disclosure is active in Belgium only, as an answer to a Belgium law in order to prevent vehicle mileage fraud (Belgium law of 28th november 2018, applicable from 01/01/2020). It is provided lifetime, as long as Car-Pass association requests the data.
It consists in providing 4 times a year the mileage of any vehicle registered in Belgium to Car-Pass, an association delegated by belgian authorities to collect and control this data. This mileage is collected over-the-air by Stellantis if another connected service already uses it. This data is transmitted to Car-Pass association, upon request of this organism. For more information, please refer to the Car-Pass privacy policy (https://www.car-pass.be/en/privacy-policy).

Data Use - Product Quality Improvement

You acknowledge and agree that to improve the quality of the products produced by STELLANTIS AUTO SAS as a car maker, your Vehicle Data (as defined in the Stellantis Privacy Policy for connected services, see below) – excluding the geolocation of the vehicle – are transferred to the car maker for the purpose of anomalies avoidance, aggregated data analysis for product improvement or creation of new products.
Further information on this, and ways to exercise your Privacy rights to this processing, are described in the Stellantis Privacy Policy for connected services (see below).

European Connected Vehicles Privacy Policy of Stellantis

The Privacy Policy for Connected Vehicles ("Privacy Policy") applies to the Personal Data we process about users of the connected services through our Vehicle, our Websites or Application who have signed the General Conditions as a Customer or who are authorized by a Customer to access and use the connected services.
This Privacy Policy is drafted pursuant Article 13 of the EU Regulation 679/2016 and will help

you understand better how we handle your information.
In this document, you will find some examples of how we process Personal Data, and Definitions referring to more detailed explanations (at the end this Privacy Policy). If you would like any clarifications regarding this Privacy Policy or how your data are processed, please send your request to: dataprotectionofficer@stellantis.com This document is available on brand websites, in the section dedicated to connected services.
It is also available at the following link: https://connected-vehicles-privacy.stellantis.com/

Event Data Recorders

(Depending on country of sale)
This vehicle is fitted with an accident data recording system, also called Event Data Recorder (EDR).
This system gathers and records certain vehicle data over a short period (a few seconds) before, during and after an event such as an accident or collision.
In order to gain a better understanding of the circumstances surrounding the event, this system records how the vehicle's various systems are operating at the time of the event, including:

- Any deployment of a restraint system (e.g. airbag, seat belt).
- The status of the seat belts of all the occupants (fastened/unfastened).
- The contact or intensity of pressure exerted on the pedal(s) engaged by the driver.
- The speed of the vehicle.
- The status of some driving and manoeuvring aids systems.

The following are not recorded by the system:

- Data on normal driving conditions, in other words data not directly related to the event.
- Personal data on the driver and any other occupants.
- The geographical location of the vehicle at the time of the event.

The reading of data recorded by the system requires the following:

- Access to the interior of the vehicle or to the system.

And

- Special equipment that can be purchased from the manufacturer BOSCH (www.BoschCDRTool.com).

Aside from the vehicle Manufacturer, other parties such as law enforcement agencies may access this data in order to analyse the event.
Reactivate the system as soon as the level of grip permits.

Radio Frequency Identification (RFID)

RFID technology is used in some vehicles for functions such as tire pressure monitoring and immobiliser.
It is also used in connection with conveniences such as radio remote controls for door locking / unlocking and starting.
RFID technology in STELLANTIS vehicles does not use or record personal information or link with any other STELLANTIS system containing personal information.

Euro 7 Emissions Data Sharing

The vehicle is compliant with the European Euro 7 emissions standards regulations.
As part of this standard, battery durability and onboard monitoring data sent Over The Air to Stellantis servers are shared with the European Commission for study.
The driver may also opt to share the following elements :

- Onboard fuel consumption meter data
- Context data

INDEX

A

Access to engine compartment 243
Active Emergency Braking 132
Active Emergency Braking (AEB) 181
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) 172
Adaptive headlight lighting 56
Adding Coolant Fluid 246
Adding Washer Fluid 246
Adjusting head restraints 26
Adjusting seat 29, 52
Adjusting the lumbar support 29
Adjusting the seat angle 29
Adjusting the time 120
Advanced Traction Control 141
Advice on driving 163
Airbag
    deactivation 37
Airbags 35
    curtain 37
    front 36
    lateral 36
Allowed Tire and Rim Sizes 254
Anti-lock Braking System
(ABS)/Electronic Brake Force
Distribution (EBFD) 186
Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR)/
Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) 185
Applications 96, 107
Armrest
    rear 63
Assist And SOS 218
Assistance call 109
Assistance Call 220
Audible Pedestrian Warning System . 128
Audio streaming
    Bluetooth 118
Automatic Emergency Call (eCall) . . . 220
Automatic light control 54

B

Battery Electric Vehicle 7
Battery preconditioning 156
Battery, remote control 14
BEV engine (checking levels) 244
Blind 62
Blind Spots Monitoring (BSM) 186
Blue warning and indicator lights 85
Bluetooth . . . . . .
    hands-free 113
    phone 113
Bodywork-Exterior Care 256
Brake and Clutch Fluids 242
Brake discs 162
Brake fluid 240
Braking 132
Bulb Replacement 251

C

Catalytic converter 142
Central locking 15
Charger
    wireless 65
Charging Another Vehicle 233
Charging cable (Electric) 68
Checking Brake Fluid 247
Checking Fluid Levels 239
Checking Oil Level 244
Child lock 18
Child seats 39
    ISOFIX 41
Children 39
Children (safety) 18
Closing the doors 12
Collision Risk Alert 180
Connection
    Bluetooth 112
Connectivity 112, 113
Control
    emergency door 15
Cruise Control 170
Customer Information 1, 270
Customization 104

D

Dashboard Instruments And Control . 1, 69
Date
    setting 120
Deadlocking 12
Declaration of Conformity 270
Defrosting 26
Demisting 26
Dimensions 262
Display, head-up 52
Disposal Prescriptions 272
Drive Assist Plus 177

Drive Assist Plus 2.0 178
Driver Attention Warning by Front View Camera 206
Driver Attention Warning by timer . . 206
Driver Drowsiness and Distraction with Driver Monitoring Camera 206
Driving 163
Driving positions (storing) 52

E

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) . . . 185
Emergency Braking Assistance (EBA) . 186
Emergency Call (eCall) 218
Emergency Call Data Recording and Privacy 273
End-Of-Life Vehicle Disposal 239
Energy economy mode 128
Energy recovery 132
Engine Compartment 242
Engine coolant 240
Engine Identification 261
Engine Washing 248
Event Data Recorders 278
Exhaust filter 142
Exhaust system (maintenance) 250

F

Fabric parts 258
Fittings
  front 64
  rear 65
Fittings, trunk 67
Floor
  adjustable 67
  trunk 67
Floor, trunk, adjustable 67
Fluids and Lubricants 269
Folding the rear seats 32
Frequency
  radio 117
Front lights (replacement) 251
Front Parking Sensors 202
Fuel 142
Fuel Consumption And CO_2 Emissions 271
Fuel level gauge 74
Fuses 251

G

Gear indicator 74
Gearbox malfunction 137
Glove box 63
Green warning and indicator lights . . . 84
Grey warning and indicator lights 85

H

Hands-free access 21
Hands-free tailgate 21
Hazard Warning Lights 218
Head restraints
  front 26
  rear 27
Head-up display 97
Headlamps, automatic dipping 55
Headlamps, main beam 55
Heated and ventilated seats 30, 31
Heated steering wheel 49
Heated windshield 24
High gloss paint 257
Hill Assist Descent Control (HDC) . . . 208
Hill Start Assist (HSA) 209
Horn 48
Hybrid 48 V Vehicle (MHEV) 6

I

ICE / PHEV engine (checking levels) . 244
Ignition 124
Ignition on 124
In Case of Emergency 1, 218
In-Crash Braking (ICB) 183
Information displayed on the instrument panel 71
Instrument Cluster 72
Instrument Panel 69
Interior Care 257
ISOFIX mountings 41, 48

J

Jacking the Vehicle and Wheel Changing 221
Jump Starting 229

K

Key 10
Keyless Entry and Starting 124
Kit
  hands-free 113

L

Labels, identification 148
Lane Departure Warning (LDW) 188
Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) 189
Lane Positioning Assist (LPA) 193
Leather Surfaces (cleaning) 258
LEDs - Light-emitting diodes 53
Light-emitting diodes - LEDs 53
Lighting 60

Lighting *(continued)*
interior 61
trunk 68
welcome 60
lights with Full LED technology 53
Load reduction mode 128
Locking from the inside 15
Locking the doors 15
Locking, automatic 16
Lumbar 29

M

Maintenance and Vehicle Care 1, 238
Manual Emergency Call 219
Massage function 31
Massage multi-point 31
MHEV engine (checking levels) 244
Mirrors
door 26
Motorized tailgate 19
Mountings
ISOFIX 41, 48

N

Net
luggage retaining 67

O

Odometer 74
On-board tools 68
Opening the doors 12
Orange warning and indicator lights . . 80

P

Parking Sensors 201
Periodic Checks 239
phone 106
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle 7
Plug&Charge 156
Port
USB 64
Profiles 101
Protecting children 39

Q

Quick-Release Battery Clamp 234

R

Radio 116–118
Radio Frequency Identification
(RFID) 278
REACH 272
Rear Cross Traffic Alert 200
Rear Parking Sensors 201
Rear Vision Camera (RVC) 203
Recommended Fluids,
Lubricants, and Parts 241
Regenerative braking
(deceleration by engine braking) 132
Remote control 10, 15
Removing the mat 67
Resetting the trip 75
Reversing and rear fog lights
(replacement) 252
Roof bars 158

S

Safety
children 39
Scheduled Servicing 239
Seat belts 33
Seat Belts Maintenance 257
Seats
electric 29
heated 30
Seats, heated 31
Semi-Automatic Lane Change (SALC) . 195
Smartphone 65, 114, 115, 118
Spare wheel 222
Speed limiter 168
Speedometer 74
Spotlights
side 60
Starting & Operating 1, 123
Starting and Stopping The Engine 123
Starting Using Another Vehicle
Battery 230
Station
radio 116
Steering wheel 49
Steering wheel (adjustment) 49
Stopping the Engine 124
Storage 68
Storage box 68
Storage wells 67, 68
Storing driving positions 52
Stowing rings 67
Sunroof
panoramic 62
Surround Vision 198

T

Tail lights 53
Temperature pre-conditioning (ICE) . . . 94
Temperature pre-conditioning
(PHEV or BEV) 94
Time
setting 120

Tire Chains 254
Tire Information Label 261
Tire Markings - Designations 252
Tire Pressure 253
Tire Pressure Monitoring
System (TPMS) 215
Tire Repair Kit 226
Tire Repair Toolkit 226
Tires and Wheels 252
Top Tether (fixing) 41, 48
Touch screen 106
Towing 160, 235
Towing another vehicle 237
Towing the vehicle 236
Traction battery 146
Traffic Sign Assist (TSA) 214
Tread Depth 254
Trip computer 74
Trip Planner 77

U

Unlocking 11, 12
Unlocking from the inside 15
Unlocking the doors 15
Unlocking the tailgate 11, 12
Unlocking the trunk 11, 12
Updating the time 120

V

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy . . 272
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) . .261
Vehicle Maintenance 248
Vehicle Storage 255
Vehicle to Load (V2L) 157
Very Cold Climate Covers 238

W

Warning light
driver's seat belt not fastened . . . 33
Warning Lights, Indicators, and
Messages 78
Warning Triangle 220
Warning Triangle Kit 220
Welcome function 52
Welcome lighting 60
Wheel Changing Toolkit 221
Wheel Installation 225
Wheel Removal 223
Windshield washer fluid 241
Winter Tires 253
Wiper Blade Replacement 248
Wrong Pedal Prevention (WPP) 184

Recycled materials/End-of-Life Vehicles
The Manufacturer declares, in accordance with the provisions of European legislation (Directive 2000/53) and The End-of-Life Vehicles (Producer Responsibility) (Amendment) Regulation 2010 No.1094, that it achieves the objectives set by these legislations and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.

No part of this document may be reproduced or translated without written permission from the Manufacturer.

Automobiles CITROËN,

société par actions simplifiée au capital social de 159.000.000 euros dont le siège social est situé **43 rue Jean-Pierre**

TIMBAUD, 78300 POISSY, FRANCE, et immatriculée auprès du RCS de Versailles sous le numéro 642 050 199.

Printed in the EU
09/2026

Driving innovation for tomorrow.

For over 50 years, **TotalEnergies and Stellantis have shared a common vision of performance, innovation, and mobility for the future.**

This long-standing partnership is built on close technical collaboration, from product design to after-sales service across official networks. By combining their expertise, the two companies have developed cutting-edge lubrication technologies tailored to the evolving needs of Citroën powertrains.

The co-branded **Quartz Mopar** and **Quartz EV3R Mopar** ranges reflect this shared expertise. Specifically designed and **approved by Citroën**, they include **high-performance engine oils** covering every Citroën powertrain. Each formulation helps keep engines clean, reduce wear, and support fuel efficiency, ensuring smooth operation mile after mile, even under the most demanding conditions.

We're taking innovation further with **Quartz EV3R Mopar,** which introduces the **3R approach (Reduce, Reuse, Regenerate)** using regenerated base oils and a recyclable bottle, while delivering the same performance as standard Quartz oils, with a lower impact compared to our conventional products.

Your authorized Citroën repairer will recommend the right oil for your model and service schedule. Available and **recommended within Citroën authorized after-sales networks,** Quartz Mopar offers confidence, durability, and proven technology backed by decades of partnership.

CITROËN PREFERS TotalEnergies

CITROËN | TotalEnergies

OFFICIAL PARTNERS

CC5ACBO2609en-1